

THE COMPLEAT BODY OF THE ART MILITARY:

Exactly compiled, and gradually compos'd for the
Foot, in the best refined manner, according to the practise
of the *Modern Times*.

Divided into Three BOOKS.

The First, containing the *Postures* of the *Pike* and
Musket, with their *Conformities*, and the *Dignities* of *Ranks* and *Files* :

Their manner of joyning to the compleating of a *Body* : their
severall *Distances*, *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Counter-*
marches, *Wheelings*, and *Firings*.

With diverse *Experiments* upon single *Files*.

The Second, comprehending twelve *Exercises*.

viz. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Three with } 24 \\ \text{Three with } 32 \\ \text{Three with } 64 \\ \text{Three with } 144 \end{array} \right\} \text{Men.}$

The Third, setting forth the drawing up and exercising
of *Regiments* after the manner of *Private Companies*, with the forming
Brigades, and *Armies*, the placing of *Cannon* and *Artillery*,
according to the practise of severall *Nations*, *Armies*,
and *Commanders* in Chief.

Together with the duties of all private *Souldiers* and *Officers* in a
Regiment, from a *Sentinell* to a *Colonel*.

As also the duties of the *Military Watches*.

Lastly, directions for ordering *Regiments* or *Private Companies*
to *Funerall Occasions*.

Illustrated with Varietie of *Figures* of *Battail*, very profitable and
delightfull for all *Noble* and *Heroick Spirits*, in a fuller manner
then hath been heretofore published.

By RICHARD ELTON, Serjeant Major.

Cant. 3. 8. *They all handled the Sword, and are expert in War.*

L O N D O N :

Printed by ROBERT LEYBOURN, in *Monkswell*
Street neer *Creeplegate*, M D C L.



*If Rome onto Her conquering Ceasars raise
Rich Obelisks, to crowne thy deathles Praise,
What Monument to Thee must Albion reare?
To shew Thy Motion in a brighter Sphere?
This Art's too dull to doet us only done
Best by Thy Selfe, so light's the World the Sunne
Wee may admire thy Face, the Sculptor's Art;
But Wee are extasie'd at th' inward Part.
WS Fuit*

John Dronchont Sculp. Lon

COMPLET

MILITARY

and generally

the

the

the



The

the

the

the

the

the

the

To THE
MIRROUR of CHIVALRY,
And Honour of all
MARTIAL DISCIPLINE,
The most Victorious

Thomas Lord Fairfax

HIS
EXCELLENCIE,
CAPTAIN GENERAL
of all MILITARY FORCES for the
PARLIAMENT
OF
ENGLAND.

All Health and Happinesse, here
and hereafter.

Most Eminent and Illustrious

S I R.

May it please Your Excellencie,



*He Glory of all Arts is Action, the Honour of all
Action is Vertue, the Crown of all Vertues is
Perfection: the Excellencie whereof, (accord-
ing to the perfection of Humanity) is so essenti-
all in your Excellencie, that you are become, at
once, the Wonder, and the Honour of Europe:
Neither can that immortall Fame of Yours be
conceal'd from the rest of the habitable World,
who shall from age to age record, and from An-
tiquity to Infantry relate those matchlesse Vi-*

*ctories and unimitable Achievements which the Bounty and Blessing of Hea-
ven hath enrich'd your Hand, and beautifi'd your Name withall. In all whose
Honourable and succesfull Undertakings, I had an aim at no greater happi-
ness;*

The Epistle Dedicatory.

ness, then to have been the least Part in so Noble an Employment under your Excellencie, towards the perfecting of the Welfare and Happinesse of this Kingdom and Common-wealth, had not the Military affairs of this Honourable Metropolis unavoidably engaged and obliged me to attend the service of their own Militia.

And therein My Lord, Phave spared neither Diligence nor Study that might conduce to the great Work of Arms, then in Embrio, now in Perfection, excepting only Opposition and Envie, which the greatest Honours never yet were free from: A part of which Perfection hath always flowed from the industry of the Officers, and practice of the Students of that Warlike Academy, wherein, although I have not (as a Member thereof) with such dexterity as Cadmus sent out well experienc'd Souldiers in a Day, yet have I not sitten so idle, as Lepidus, and wish'd to be warm'd more from the Sun than my own Labours; of which the effects are now upon the publike Test, but more formidably under your Excellencies censure: to whose Patronage and Protection I have presumed to devoted the Eldest Son and First-born of all my forepast Studies, Practise and employment in the gradation of Military affairs, for the space of a double Apprentiship in that noble Science. All the following sheets, which relate to that Heroick Subject, such as they are, and in such a dress as now they have put on, submissively and primarily, present themselves with all their worth and beauty, (if any be discernable within them) unto Your Excellencie, as to their tutelat Angel, and most Orthodox Warriour, that either Pole can boast of.

In confidence therefore, of your Excellencies native Candor towards all Ingenuity (and more especially That, wherein your Own transcendent, and unparalleled Honours are more perspicuously and really delineated, than all the vain and empty Glory of the Dull and Phlegmatick Pretenders to Chivalry can Map or Landskip by the effeminate hand of Flattery) this late abortive, in full shape, due proportion, and (if Truth deceive me not) in just Maturity, hath broken from the Wombe of my fourteen years endeavours to see the Light, both of the censorious and judicious World, and in that Light it cannot but live; if your Excellencies goodness shall vouchsafe to foster it, and must not die, except your displeasure please to wound it. And whether this shall live or die: I shall not further aspire at any loftier pitch of Honour, than to have Commission, to subscribe my self

Your Excellencies

most humbly devoted Servant,

Richard Elton.





The Right Honourable, the judicious and grave
Trustees and Guardians of the Militia of the
 Honourable City of L O N D O N.

The Lord Major, *Isaac Pennington*, Sir *John Wolla-*
ston Knight; *Thomas Atkins*, *John Fowke*, *Wil-*
liam Gibs, *Thomas Root*, *Christopher Racke*, *Rom-*
land Wilson, Aldermen of the City of London;
 Major Generall *Philip Skippon*, Collonel *Francis*
West, Lieutenant of the Tower, *Col. John Venn*,
Col. Edmund Harvey, *Francis Allen*, Major *Ri-*
chard Salway, *Gregory Clement*, *Col. Owen Rom*,
Col. Robert Tichborne, *Col. Matthew Shephard*,
Col. William Underwood, *William Wyberd*, *John*
Deathicke, *John Strange*, *Daniel Tayler*, *Col. Ri-*
chard Turner, *Col. Nathaniel Camfield*, Lieut. Col.
Doyley; Master *Maurice Getbin*, Captain *Nath:*
Lacy, Major *Edmund Waring*, *Col. Robert Man-*
waring, *Col. John Heyes*, *Thomas Arnold*, *Samuell*
Moyer, *Thomas Noell*, *Stephen Eastwick*, *Richard*
Shute, *Mark Hildersly*, *James Russell*, *Tempest Mil-*
ner, Captain *Blackwell senior*, *John Pocock*.

Right Honourable, Honourable; and ever to be honour'd Heroes:

WHOSE Honors joyntly, and severally are all sprung more from your just
 deserts, than ambitious desires; whose provident industry for this
 Citie and Kingdoms security, shall more eternize your Names
 unto Posterity, than your magnificent opulencie can make you after
 Death survive, and flourish in your hopefull issue. Since it al-
 ways seem'd good in your Eyes, (even from my first initiation into your Mili-
 tary Service, (more out of an in-nate humanity of yours, wherewith your Ho-

The Epistle Dedicatory.

nours abound, than from any merits of mine own, which I acknowledge but mean) still to number Me for one and the same, both in degree and service, in your Noble and Martiall Employments, notwithstanding the many changes occasioned by the necessity of our Times, when so many erratick stars have shot from their Hemisphere, yet that you have been ever pleased, to continue and fix me in the same Constant Orbe, wherein I first moved as Serjeant Major, under my Honorable Col. John Belamy sometimes a deserving Member of your Honorable Society; and as if all this unusuall Bounty and Honour had been yet too litile, since you were further pleased, after a deliberate and serious perusall of this ensuing Tract, The Compleat body of Military Art, to compleat me so much more your Servant by obligation, in approving and commending both my name and labours to the Press, thereby to make me more eminent, if not more usefull to the world. If I say after all these liberall variety of your Honours favours, I should pretermitt them as ingratefull, or neglect them as forgetfull; I might deservedly be rendered stigmatiz'd unto Futurity, with an indeleble brand of infamy. But I have neither so slightly studied your Honours, nor so easily read over my self, as to make so high a Breach upon Humanity or Ethicks. Accept therefore (Right Honorable and the rest) this oblation and sacrifice of my Gratitude with as much aquanimity, as it adressed it self unto you with humility. It hath but newly kist the triumphant Hand of our victorious Cæsar, the very Prince and Master of War, from whose glorious Tent, it hath taken flight, to rest within your warlike walls, where it was begotten, born, and bred, and where it shall (spight of Envy) dwell, and inherit as legitimate (if your Honours deign to harbour it) till Trophies lie forgotten, and Time shall be no more, what remains is only my daily Orizon for all your Honours happinesse, with the subscrib'd Attest of my faithfull duty in the Progresse of your Military service, to which I stand in duty and conscience obliged, and shall (God willing) perform to the utmost faculties and endeavours of

Your Honours

most strictly engaged Servant,

Richard Elton.




To the truly valiant, and expertly accomplish'd Officers and Commanders in warlike Affairs, his fellow Souldiers of the Honourable *Exercise*, and Military Meeting in that Martiall

A R E A adjoining to Christ-Church
L O N D O N.

Major *John Haynes*, Captain *William Johnson*,
Captain *Henry Potter*, Master *Richard Hobby*,
Captain *John Hynde*, with the rest of those worthy Leaders and Souldiers of that our Society,
Respect and Greeting.

Honour'd S I R S, and my much endeared Friends :

T is not my lowest happiness, nor my meanest Honor, that one and the same Climate owns our Nativities, one and the same City allow'd our Freedoms, one and the same Society honours our Employment, and I hope one and the same affection shall ever unite our Relations. When I cast up the revolution of time wherein we have exercised together, and for so many yeares contemplate your free and forward choise to honour me in the primary places of Direction and Discipline, but more especially that remarkable honour of your respect and favour, in the unanimous Election of me to be your Commander in Chief, upon one of your grand and publike Days of your drawing forth into the Champaigne, where your severall Exercises were the sole Object of that Days admiration, and the subject of future Times applause. I must of necessity conclude my self your Debtor, beyond the hope of satisfaction. Nor can the knowing world but confess, that even in your private Academy, as able and as learned Souldiers have commenc'd renowned Commanders, (excepting the two publique Gardens Artillery, and Military) as in any warlike *Gymnasium*, that this our *Island* can report off for her own; yea, and to whose valour and discretion she owes as much for her honour, and her safety. My earnest desires are, that your Resolves, and Exercises in this Art, may never be retarded, but heightened to that glorious pitch, that you may be able to send forth knowing Souldiers for all honorable and law full Engagements of war, whether Forreign or Domestick. Towards which I humbly offer here my talent, which comes unto you as the latest Emiffary from the honorable *Militia*, to whom it hath but now prostrated it's service; and the best Orator of my grateful acknowledgmt of your many and undeserved favours towards me, for which I shall, in the most inviolable bonds of friendship, ever expresse my self

Your observant Servant R. E.



To the impartial and judicious

READER.

IF upon the first view of the Frontispiece or Title, thou mayst haply lay by the Book, as having already perused variety of Authors relating to the same subject, and apply that of the Wise man, There is no new thing under the Sun, I must reply with the Phylosopher with reverence to the Preacher, and say, that *Ars longa, vita brevis*, and that all the expert and learned in this art have written before, and what succession shall dictate to the Ages to come, will be too little to leave nothing new to perfect it, so long as there are those *Ratiocinia plurima*, which the same wisest King complains off, those many strange stratagems forged in the heart, and anvil'd in the Brain of man to bring his ambitious and illicite Designs about: and so long as there are his new inventions to offend, there must be our new preventions to defend that Right He would abridge us off. The sad and heavy truth of these productions, our own times have given us testimonies large enough off, and those have partly occasioned the first conception of this Child of War, but the importunity of friends have now mid-wiv'd it into the world, lest if it should have come forth a Post-humall piece, after the Death of the Parent, it might not perhaps have been born with perfect symmetrie, and due proportion in all the limbs of it's Body; as it is now shap'd, it is in thy hand to breed up for thy own service: and I may modestly say, it will read thee some new Lectures, that thou wilt confesse have hardly yet been heard in the School of War, nor ever taught in our Age but by

Thy well wishing and well meaning

Friend

Richard Elton.



To the Author.

HAd thy *Compendium* seen the light when first
 Our *English* Nation Foes began to thirst
 After the heart-blood of our Liberty,
 To prick it's vitall veine; our misery
 Had been increast by it, so far as Art,
 With Resolution joyn'd, could play it's part.
 Hadst thou led forth this Warriour at that time
 Thou hadst been guilty of this very crime,
 Of joyning nerves and sinew's to the Arme,
 Of those who sought this Nation so great harme.
 What strength's a number without discipline?
 And in what volumes more then this of thine?
 Happy we were in that Obscurity
 Of this thy Tract; but not that from the eye
 Of *England's* friends 'twas hid: might there have been,
 A view of it on this side of the Screen;
 What aid should we have had? yet fiercer blowes
 To strik this Screen a side: we may suppose
 The Quairrell would have changed; who should see
Elton's Compendium, have th' immunity,
 And franchize of it's use, well we might
 Fight to enjoy, this that doth teach to fight.
 He that shall look on thy Conformities
 Of *Ranks* and *Files*, the severall Dignities;
 How these compos'd as Members do compleat;
 A *Marshall-Body*, fashions it so neat,
 As that each part is fixt in it's proper place,
 And not *Chaos* together; but a face
 Of distance, order's seen; he would soon say
 The like's not extant at this very day;
 And well may I sound forth the very same,
 Who have beheld the book, to which the name
 Of *Elton's* set; It's for thy lasting prayse
 Which will survive the ancientst of thy days;
 And for the honour of this Commonweal,
 That it hath bred one who by wound can heal,
 That's skilfull to destroy, and thereby saves,
 Our life of *Freedom*, keep it from the Graves,
 The Enemies have digged; that it's Memory
 (When therein laid) might not be seen in Story.
 I Face about thy *Facings* to behold;
 And face again, when once I do unfold

The work of others, to thy gallant Mode,
 And there my thoughts do rally: for there is show'd
 Such *Wheelings*, *Donblings*, *Firings*, that report,
 So loud the worth of no man in that sort.
 As these do thine: Thy *File-experiments*,
 Are pleasurable, and breeds discontents,
 In none, but those, who'd be superlative,
 In *Martiall Art*: let them forbear to strive
 Thee to excell: For who can go beyond
 Perfection? thereat every man must stand
 And exercise his *Genius* got so far.
 Among the *Planets* let us fix this Star
 Of *Military Art*, and round about
Twelve places *Exercises*: Then *Mars* look out
 With glorious *Splendor*, and in blood would wade,
 For to maintain the rest are retrograde.
 Ye men *Strologically*, if ye would view,
 These *Signes* below, ye must speak it as true
Astrology; that those above are bright,
 But *Mars* array'd in these of greatest light;
 And wonder not to see a Man of War,
 Of so much beauty as to want a scar
 In Discipline; Order is the shield
 Keep off advantages, often win the Field
 As well as *Valour*: who can suffer rout
 That's on thy side? let him but face about
 That fears to be o'recome, and well observe
 Thy *Stations*, *Motions*, eye where thy *Reserve*
 Doth stand, where Intervals are made
 Where Cannons play: and he may drive a Trade
 Of buying Courage; and by these Figures cast
 On which side Conquest will triumph at last.
 And if in Battell life is dispossess'd
 Of it's possession, (house of *Clay* the best)
 By entry of force, tenure arbitrary
 Thou hast *Mars* cloth'd in *Sable Military*;
 For to attend thy forced Funerall,
 This is the sequel of thy manly fall;
Elton I'll leave thee at the very Grave,
 But living: and when dead thou wilt sure have
 Breath in the Body of this work, a Gaile
 Unto posterity thy worth to saile.

Collonell John Backstead.

An Ogdocostick on his much esteemed Friend the AUTHOR.

Barriff did bravely, *Barriff's* dead, yet lives;
His *Worth'nill Work*, his *Name* a being gives.
Excelling *Elton*, this of *thine* is such,
That after Ages shall applaud as much
Thy fame; this thy *Renowned Theory*,
Will teach a *Practique*, raise thy *Memory*
When thou art dead, and lend thy *Living Name*
A Room i'th *Golden Kalender* of Fame.
What thou hast here with *Skilfull Study* done,
I'th *Basis* once by *Barriff* was begun,
Onely begun, he fram'd a *Preparation*.
I saw it when it was in *Agitation*.
And surely had e're this attain'd it's *Birth*,
Had not *he* been translated from the *Earth*.
How new are thy *Designs*? How full of *Worth*?
How well approv'd? with what *Rare Art* set forth?
Th' *Ingenious Reader* that shall over-look,
And view, with single-sighted *Eye* thy *Book*,
Must say, that *Writers* all of th' *Art* of *War*,
Of thee, both *Foreign*, and *Domestique*, far
Come short. Well may that *Body* be compleat,
Where such a *Genuine Genius* has his *Seat*.
This *Art* thou hast compiled to exact,
So gradually compos'd throughout thy *Treatise*,
That well, the compleat *Body* of that *Art*,
It's styl'd, where every *Member*, and each part
Of all *Three Books*, in manner best refin'd,
On him looks lovely. That to read's inclin'd.
Far bee't, ô far from me, the thought to slight
Th' *Offensive*, or more just *Defensive* light.
Bequeath'd to us by *Souldier's* head, or hand,
Though born with us, or sprang from *Foreign Land*.
Yea, or the *knowing Skill* of those that *Thrive*
In *Mars*; his *Methods*, and do now *Survive*.
I much commend them all, *Praise* worthy men;
Yet thee extoll must most of all my *Pen*.
Plenty of *Postures*, and many *Motions*,
Various *Figures*, and *Delightfull Notions*.
Of these large *Volumes*, I have seen; but who
Such *Regimentall Forms* as *thine* can show?

Nachivell, Arkham, Hexham, Weymouth, Ward,
Alton, Bingham, Roberts, Cruso, Gerrard,
And divers other, honour'd *Sons of War*,
Their famous, learn'd *Treatises* extant are;
Where we may read rare *Castra-metations*
With deep *Sirategemick Demonstrations*
Of the *Persians, Thebans, and Athenians*,
Of *Lacedemons, and Fabians*,
With grave *Grecian, and Italian Writers*,
Brave *Roman, and Macedonian Fighters*,
Accomplish'd *Achievements of Illyrians*
Actings of th' *Asians, and Europeans*,
Models of *Marching, and levying Forces*,
Incamping, Trailing, Drilling Discourses
Of both *English-and, Low-countrey Spirits*,
Whose *victorious valour, Honour merits*;
Bellona's Bleeding Battails, day and night
Both *Ancient and Modern* I might recite,
With *Distances, Doublings, Wheelings, Facings*,
And *Front, Rear, Wings, Midst*, and other placings:
Though with *Minerva*, mighty *Mars* conspire,
With their conjoynd *Cunning, Craft, and Ire*,
Where's thy *Peer, Martiall, or Military*,
Private *Practiser* or *Artillery*?
Thine *Initiation*, yet is fresh in *Mind*,
When by thy selfe, thou wast first Assign'd
For *Christ-Church meetings*, and entertain'd
Friendly. Which is weekly still maintained
Thy little then, since so much acquired
Knowledge of *Arms*, is far and neer admird.
What though the *Ignoramus Doltishman* does bid,
Do scoffe, or *Momus* spit what *Spice* he can,
It matters not; here's no conceited froth,
Tis *Solid Substance*, and *Experience* both,
True *Discipline* display'd no *Painted Puffes*,
No *Empty, Taped, or Bumbasted Stuffs*.
Heroicks all that love the *Martiall way*,
These *Expert Exercises* read, then say,
Doubtlesse you will for you shall finde it this,
Elton thou dost Excell *Elton* Adam.

JOHN HAYNE.

Serjeant Major.

Collonell John Backsted.

Ad amicum charissimum Richardum Elton, Subchiliarchum,
in hoc suo opere præclaro.

MArtius hèn, nimium vere fuit Anglia Campus,
Et non una, rubet, ferralibus Allia fastis,
Sic ut desleret nostros, vel Hibernia Casus.
Decolor erubuit Thamesis, vitreosque cruore
Mutavit fluctus, caruerunt arva Colonis;
Non aliter Cadmi pubes, simul edita sulcis
Emicuit, stringunt gladios & pectora ferro:
Donec quæ cunas dederat, dat terra sepulchrum.
Ergò quid obductum jam recrudescere vulnus
Quid male sopitus juvat, hèn, renovare favillas.
Et licet infidum & fallax, turbare serenum.
At non ista tibi mens est, qui nempe venena
Describit, succos, & adhuc ignota novercis
Gramina, non ideo facit, ut Locusta perita
Disceret hinc stamen properata obrumpere vitæ
Palmatas alii irabens, sectasque curules,
Electi candoris equos, & nominis arum
Facient, at noster, quanto præstantior Author
Ipso victor ovans, ducit, de Marte triumphos
Pila Latinorum cedant, Grajæque Sarissæ,
Gesæque Gallorum, Rostrato Belga covino,
Nec fidas, nec Maure tuis phætræte sagittis,
Exemplar petat hinc, ambit quicumque Trophæa.
Non posthac dubius, nunc victoria pennis
Cui faveat, totus jactantior explicet alas
Certa, ille, qui te sequente, se addicere parti.

Ovans. posuit & Composuit,
Henricus Potter. DUX.

Eidem Ejusdem.

WHat make we thronging out Encomiums here
Before thy Book, racking the Readers ear
To gloss thy Work, for we can do no more,
Let him read thee, read thy Poetick store
There, he shall know thee better, then Poësie
Can render thee, or the choicest fancie
Reach too, though dropt from *Homer's* learned quill,
Or thee by culminate *Peruassus* Hill
There, both the *Scipio's*, were they here agen
Might discipline their valours, and their men
Of War, by a new method teach to spare
More, the Conquering *Cæsar* now in War:
There the bold *Macedon* might learn to gain
An other World, and keep it with less pain
Let *Europe* rise, and learn to war by thee,
They'd make the World in time one Monarchy.
If Poets, that the *Acts* of Heroes sing
Be crown'd with Bays, let them the Lawrell bring
And wreath thy Temples; this thy Work will tell
The World, Thou hast done best, though many well.

To the warthy Author his honor'd friend Serjeant Major Richard Elton.

TO give thee prayse according to thy skill,
I want both *Virgils* verse and *Homers* quill.
Experimentall knowledge of thine art,
Commands my *Muse* to sacrifice her part
To thy *Compendious* Body : so compleat,
It may be term'd a *Lezbian* squires feat.
Such sure defence was ne're in *Ajax* shield,
As *Mars* and *Pallas* met in *Eltons* field.
Heroick art, indeed; that doth unite
In one, a number numberlesse to fight
As if one hand did guide them all; nay more:
Ne'r were such *Principles* in Print before.
The mighty *Whale* hath not so nimble motion,
As many smaller fishes in the Ocean :
But many times would brush against a rock,
And break himselfe in pieces by some knock :
Wer't not for th' little *Musculus* his friend,
That swims before and safely him attends.
A multitude that put on spear and shield,
If want this *Musculus* must loose the field :
But *Musculus* their friend, their eies, their guide,
Thou keep'st them safe, though rocks on every side:
That shew'st them *Distances* both broad and long,
Facings and *Doublings* in our English tongue.
Thy *Counter-marches*, and thy *Wheelings* are
Fit for the mighty King of *Swedens* War.
Thy experiments with *single files* descry;
Mars and *Minerva* joyned dexterously.
But when thy many *Maniples* I see,
Drawn from on *Cobors*, in thy four times three
Composed *Exercices*, private Companies
In regimentall forms, placing *Artilleries*,
Cannons both great and small; denominations;
With the prime *Artists* of their severall nations
Duties how private *Souldiers* may excell,
Though Iain *Perdu*, or set as *Sentinell*,
Minors and *Majors* too, do not refuse
To learn your duties; oh ! that 'twere in use
Amongst all *Souldiers* : *Lust* should make no man bleed,
Would day nee'r saw so tragicall a deed.
Variety of figures when we mark,
The *Romane* writers surely were it'h dark.
But thou enlightenest them and all the earth,
By forming sundry *Stars* in this new birth.
The *Heathens* God of War, which heretofore
(How er'e great *Greece*, and *Rome* did him adore.)
But an apprentice was: so short of thee
The master of their trade, and now made free.
Fame blow aloud from every *Marshall* heart,
Here's one impales a Kingdome; by his art
Teacheth what's *Modern*, and of ancient dayes
Make him a garland of your greenest Bayes,
Adorn'd with richest trophies: quickly too;
For he deserves a deeper dy then blue.
Elton Telon thy name shall never dy,
Tis *Anagram'd* in *Souldiers* memory.

John Hinde, Captain.

In honorem RICHARDI ELTONIS.

SI vir sit quisquam militaris, doctus, & acer,
Hic ELTON certo carmina cerne mea.
Qui res conjungit varias, concordia libri,
Ut justo belli fulmine Turca fleat.

Respice RICHARDI Xisti certamina belli
ELTONIS; studio te colit, ornat, amat.
Munera fac igitur capias hac fronte remissa
Carmina, quin meritis inferiora tuis.

Johannes Hinde Captain.

To his Honored Friend the worthy Anthour.

AN Army without rule a tumult is,
Great Powers have come to nought because of this.
But (Friend) hee'l see who doth thy labour read
Confusion methodiz'd, and ordered.
And he that studies thee, in thee shall finde
A martiall hand, rull'd by a peacefull minde.
Thy Book doth teach the use of Arms and then
Thy example how to lay them down again.
War is good Physick, but tis no good diet:
'Tis the best art to study to be quiet.
And in a safe wel-grounded peace to rest
Of all the Postures in thy Book's the best.

The good Centurion.

THere is a Fort impregnable, a Tower
Whose top's in Heaven, which neither force nor power
Can scale or undermine, within's no guilt
It's wall'd with brasse, and on a Rock tis built:
Time cannot starve, nor treason make it yield:
Good conscience is a Feast, and Faith's a Shield.
Hee's the best Souldier who hath learn'd this art
To keep with diligence his life, his heart.

William Clark Captain.

For his intimate and worthy Friend the Author
Major, *Richard Elton*.

Should *Art* with *Valour* strive, 'twere hard to say,
Which of the twain should bear the bell away;
But both conjoyn'd succeeding consequence:
Some makes discovery of eithers *Excellence*
Art under-valued: by *power* or *will*
Craves *valour*; its assistant conforming still
To *Reason*, *Judgment*, *Experience*, and *Skill*.

Where *Valour* breaking forth, to its ut-moſt length
Unſupplied of *Judgment*, *Skill*, or *Strength*:
Is tearm'd *Fool-hardineſs*; and oft recants
The lack of that which ſhould ſupply its wants
Thy *Book* my deereſt *Friend* (both comprehends)
Valour being taught by *Art*, *Art* force extends
To *Reason*, *Judgment*; and *Heroick* Ends.

Lo, in one *Volume*, here thou doſt explain
What *Germany*, *Italy*, *Netherlands* or *Spain*
Can render us; and to our doors haſt brought
What many thouſands have ſo dearly ſought:
Nay, without flattery thou doſt out-vye
In this thy *Body* of th' *Art Military*
The exacteſt method, yet produc't to th' eye,

Not underval'ing thoſe whoſe love and merit
By private acts declare a publick ſpirit;
Whoſe ſtudy, charge, delight and induſtry
Are the ſupporters of arms art, deny
From whence as from the Ocean doth flow
Thoſe Rivolets that make us perfect grow
In this rare art to encounter with the fo.

Then ere I leave thee, give me leave to ſay
To any he that ſhall thy *book* ſurvey
Love, *Art* and *Valour*; center in thy breaſt
Love, *Art*-commands; and *art* obeys *Love's* Heſt:
Valour attending both; who can deny
But *Eltons* Work may to poſterity
The name of *Elton* keep in memory.

Ex animo tuo, Armis & Artibus bellacibus, bene-
cupiens utriusque Horti Stratiotici & Militaris Officia-
lium unus,

Johannes Hunnings.

For his much respected Friend, and old fellow
Souldier, Major RICHARD ELTON.

E*Ncomiums* cannot add unto the *praise*,
Of those that much deserve, their Works will *rayse*
Themselves a *Name*, as this *great Work* of *thine*,
(With no small pains) the which thou makest to shine,
Renowned Elton ; loe in *thee* I finde
Bellona's Casket opened, and the minde
That *Mars* himself enjoy'd, for what *thou* know'st
That others may obtain ; therefore let all
Who do desire to learn *Rules* *Martall*
Peruse this *Complet body*, where they'll finde
That which delights the *Fancy*, please the *Minde*
In *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Wheelings*, with their *Distance*
Both *Open*, *Close*, to us, *he* gives assistance
He doth direct new *Figures* for to *rayse*
(*Preceding* times knew not, but these our days)
New *Forms* of *Battal* shown, with each their *Firings*
With *Rules* to guide in *Onsets* and *Retirings* :
Thus have we *Elton's* skill here brought to light
Which none can it obscure, no, not dark night
Of *Envies* rage, can blur what he hath done,
But *he* shall shine as glorious as the *Sun*.

Thomas Walker Captain.

To my honoured Friend, Major
Richard Elton.

YOur Book needs not my *Plaudit*, it to sell,
It is enough, if but your name it tell :
Who sees its Front, and doth it understand,
Must needs condemn himself or prayse your hand.
More could I say and would, but more to say
Were to light candles to the Sun-shine day :
For such as read and do it not advance
Of *Envy* do it or of *Ignorance*.

John Brett Captain.

To the Authour his much valued Friend,
Major Richard Elton.

Let them that undertake to prayse a book,
Nor on the Title, but the matter look,
To ground their judgment on: For to commend
The Work, because th' Author is our Friend
Is an obsequious flattery, and doth yield
Some savour of the Court, none of the Field
From depth of knowledge, then, we ought to rayse
The high expressions of deserved prayse
But then, with equall knowledge if we can
Judge and declare the merits of a man,
The envious will say, when we have shown
The Authors worth, we publicate our own:
But let those *Mom's* talk. This work of yours
(Heroick *ELTON*) all assaults endures,
And all convinceth of *Detractions* part;
And shortly will the Ignorant convert;
And make them Souldiers too: so sweet and plain
Your *Demonstrations* are that they will gain
Myriads of men now to bear *arms*, that bore
Nothing but onely shapes of men before
Of Cock-brained *Militasters* store there are
That do pretend skill in the book of War:
Can *Military Discipline* expels
In words of art, and windy flourishes;
Big looks and language lowder than the *Drum*:
As knowing more than your *Compendium*,
When silly Vapours, they nere read or saw
More than the Statutes of the Martiall Law
Such, now, must cast the feathers of their pride;
And here (if docible) be edified
Here's the true art of *Arms*. *Jehovah* grant
That, as 'tis like we shall no Souldiers want
The Practise of it onely may extend
To settle Right and Peace. That's Wars true end.

Abraham Stanion Captain.

To

To the worthy Authour of the Art Military.

T'Was said of old, that *arms* do silence *Laws*
And learning, by their rude illiterate awes:
The Proverb lyes, for courting in one sheet,
The Souldier and the Scholler here do meet;
The Sword and Pen: *Mars* doe's himselfe commesse
Doct^r of *War*; and doe's not more incense,
Then teach to fight; and by his learned *Bands*
An *Arcopagus* midst of *Athens* stands;
And by a new found happy union
Parnassus, and the *Campaigne* are made one,
Whence quickly tutor'd from that sacred Rise:
The Souldier may descend and exercise.
Till now we did but butcher *Victories*,
And were but sloven *Death*-men; whilst our eyes
Were wanting to our hands, we fell upon
A Miscellaneous Execution:
So that it griev'd the slain, that they must die
Without a method, and disorderly:
But now we have attain'd the handsome skill,
By order, method, and by rule to kill;
From which we owe the beauties of our death,
The features of our wounds to you, whose breath
Formed into this, your polemick word:
Makes you th' *Amantius* of the Sword.
And as when *Cadmus* Serpents teeth did sow,
A crop of armed men from thence did grow:
So from this learned issue of your brains
We may behold to spring: well order'd *Trains*
Of exact *Myrmidons*: and as at the sound
Of *Orpheus* harp, all the unwieldy round
Of *Lions*, *Bears*, and *Tygers*, learn't to meet
Well order'd measures with obedient feet;
Such is your book, at whose most sober word
The hand, the foot, the Musket, Pike, and sword:
Those livelesse lumps of steel, do act, and use
Obediently the Motions you infuse.
We read the *Persian* chivalry was such,
As *trache* Elephants in a slender touch;
Of bridling art, most orderly to storm
Liking their strengths like bears into a form.
So the rude multitude, whose strength would be
A ruine to themselves, through Anarchy,
Bad Masters, but good servants are made good
By you, most regularly to let blood.
Order's the soul of things: then souldiers are
The body; but your book the soul of *War*.
Mars thus conjoyned with *Phœbus* (some may fear) *Hor. mil. Mene.*
(Sans Thunderbolts) will transcend *Jupiter*.

Sam. Jervis Captain.

To my Ingenious Friend, Major
RICHARD ELTON.

Rich fems best prayse Themselves; 'tis understood
The Bush is useles where the Wine is good.
How do they erre, who with their looser Rime
Prophane thy Prose, and with the adulterate Lime
Of wit creēt, some Parapet, or Port
To raise their Fancie equall to Thy Fort.
This Crime's collaterall mine; who strive to raise
And mix my Ivy with thy glorious Bays
Whose Branches in thy learned Book do spread
Themselves in Garlands to impale Thine Head.
How durst I then draw one Excentrique Line
Or thus Intrench upon this Work of Thine?
This Work of Thine; whose well composed Page
Shall strike amazement in the amulous Age
Such as their Captive judgements shall surprize
And force their eares do Homage to their eyes.
Imperious Style! which can at once advance
Our towring thoughts; and strike them in a Trance.
How happily hast Thou Improv'd thy Parts
Who art Proficient both in Arms and Arts!
Mars and Minerva who are counted two
Divided essences both joyn in You,
Whiles Practick and the Theorick Arts appear
In You their Center, and their proper Sphear.
But stay! Thy Prayse (Dear Friend) needs heer no more
Than Gold in Peru, or a Map on shore.
They that would know thee better, let us look
Upon these Leaves, and read Thee in Thy Book.

William Short Captain.

To

To his ever honoured Friend, Major
RICHARD ELTON.

Many have fanci'd to themselves, that this
Is the Worlds leaden age, and think it is
Far worse with all mens wits, then with the time
That they live in, but cleerly from this crime
Thou hast redeem'd us, no man ever writ
• Better of Martiall Discipline, for it
Thou rightly hast display'd, in th' *Compleat Body*
Of th' famous and renown'd *Art Military*.
Here did I finde, that which did please me better,
Then could another *Indie's*, every letter
To me's an Orient Pearl, and all thy words
Are silver Mines, in short thy book affords
So vast a treasure, that I dare fore-tell;
It will long flourish without parallel.

The postures of the Pike and Musket, thou
Dost teach with their conformities, and how
The dignities of Ranks and Files, must be
Stated, in giving each his due, degree
Of Martiall Honour, with their sev'ral Motions
As Facings, Doublings, Wheelings, and quaint Notions
Of Firings, who ever yet did see
Such Motions (*ELTON*) as are done by thee
It caus'd my admiration when I found,
How thy luxuriant wit, disdain'd bound,
Did vary it's Experiments, upon
A single File, hence I went viewing on
To thy twelve *Exercises*, thy setting forth
The drawing up of Reg'ments, (a thing of worth
Neer to be rightly valu'd) forming *Brigades*,
Placing artillery, with other aides
To Martiall Discipline, but heer's too much
To out-vie all our ancients had but such
Brave rules been taught *Achilles*, sure less far
Then twice five years had end'd the *Trojan War*.

William Johnson Captain.

To

To his much honored and ever renowned Friend
Richard Elton, Serjeant Major.

Anagram { *RICHARDUS ELTON,*
I HELD ARTS CROWN.

Distich. { *To honour Art, and eke my Name renown,*
Mars condescends to say, I held Arts Crown.
Acrostichon.

R ich in thy *Art*, brave *ELTON*, lo thy *Fame*
I s crown'd above to eternize thy *Name* :
C an this thy *Work* be carped at? let none
H ave such a Thought; (tis *Momus* carps alone :)
A way, away, let *Silence* be the word,
R ead, ere thou censure; this *Work* doth afford
D elight and *Skill* even to the knowingst men,
U nto the weaker sort, lo here thy *Pen*
S uch *Rules* lays down, in *Battail*, and *Retreat*,
E ach one is made (as this thy *Work*) compleat.
L eave then thy *Work*, with us; now thou hast done :
T he *Fame* thereof doth crown thee *Mars* his Son.
O f all that merit worth, or *Art* would gain,
N one holds the *Crown*, but *Elton*, by his pain.

John Walker Lieutenant.

To his much honor'd friend Serjeant Major *Richard Elton*.

I F Authors ancient, and of modern days,
Justly by us deserved have much prayse;
Who of the *Military art* have writ;
And for to honour them it was thought fit.
Then much more thou (brave *Elton*) who hast shew'd,
Such skill in these thy labours; as yet none
E're saw before: for hereby men may learn,
A skillfull *Artist*, rightly to discern:
Here thou hast taught us how to use alike,
The Postures of the *Musket* and the *Pike* :
How every man his place may truly know,
And how of Files a Body great doth grow.
But why do I endeavour for to show,
Thy worth, my pen to do it is too slow :
I only can admire thee, and will leave it;
To some brave *English Homers* pens to do it.
Then *Fame* by them, thy glory loude shall raise,
And trumpet out thy just deserved prayse,
That so the World, may at no time forgit,
How by thy worth thou hast advantag'd it.

Richard Hobby.

On the COMPLEAT BODY of the ART MILITARY: compos'd
by my Good Friend Major RICHARD ELTON.

I Was no Poet born; nor ere could mount
the *Muses* sacred Hill; or reach their Fount,
o swoop thereof: and come a Poet thence.
Prithee, my *Genius* then, tell me, from whence
is it, I have this my new whiffling *Gale*
for *Meterizing*? it is hence? men faile *
seldome of such a *Trade-winde*, when they passe
the Point of *Mars*'s, or, *Bellona*'s place?
Or, can't one tho he would, endight so nigh
(*) *Marshall Verses*, but he shall *versifie*?

The *Influence* came from that *pure breath* that bid
thee write; and, from the *fertile blasts* that did
blow from that *Quarter* of the World, where those
of Good Deserts, are Honour'd, not with *Prose*:
but *measur'd, scanned lines*; and, *Voices* that
can tune it, and their *Numbers* modulate.
Where it is held a *crime*, to talk about
Meriting Works, and not to *Rhyme-it-out*.
'Tis thence, Go forward now, and *Warble* forth
this *Book's* rich *Contents*: and therein is 's worth.

The *Pike's*, and *Musket's Postures*, with their (b) *Use*:
and necessary *Motions* which conduce
as *Media's* to attain them: Those *Ways* best,
most ready, *safe, short, easie, comeliest*.
(c) The *Pikes*, and *Musketiers* conformity
in *Posturing*. *Places of Dignity*,
ordained so, that all the *parts* are deck'd
with men of *equall worth*, and *like respect*.
And to *en-body* them; the *joyning Files*
flank-wise, (effecting *Ranks*) the *Band* compiles.

Due *Distances*, whereby just *PARALLEL*
Rank keeps to *Rank*, and *File* to *File*: as well
when they do *Ops, Close, Move*; as when they *Stand*,
and save their *Even-ning, Straightning Post-command*.
Faceings no more, nor fewer than you see
th'in-ner, and out-ter *Sides*, and *Angles* bee.
Lengthning, or *Strengthening Doubling Files*, or *Ranks*;
Battell, Front, Rear, both; one, or both the *Flanks*.
(d) *Daunce-like Counter-Marches, Wheelings* (e) *precise*.
Fierings that *SERVE* to *MASTER* Enemies.

Practice on Single Files: and *bodyed*
four severall Numbers, each is three times *Led*.

The *Drawing-up*, and *Exercising* due
to *Regiments*. The *Forming Brigades* too,
and *Armies*: *Placing* their *Artillery*.
Duties of all the *Private Souldiery*,
and *Officers* to *Colonels*. The *Charge*
of *Military Watches*: and, their large
Commission. Then, to *order Companies*,
and *Regiments* at *Funerall Obsequies*.

These all are but the *Heads* (of such things, as
our *Major ELTON* in his *Volumne*, has
Completely Bodied;) sent to *invite*
(like *Writs* of *Chear*) a *Souldiers appetite*,
to a large *Banquet*; where, thou maist suffice
thy greatest *Lust* after such *Exercise*:
Where all the *Flowers* of other *Gardens, Fields*,
and *Meddows*, are; and, that whereby it yeilds
a *Perfect Florilegium* of the *Art*
unto our view, *He doth the Rest impart*.

* Seldom have *Archetypes* of this Nature been
perused by any, but who have been *impuls'd*
to put to their *Approbation*, or *Commendatory*
Verses. Witnesse the Books of *Sir Thomas Kelly, Ward, Barriſſ*, and not a few more.

(a) *Files* call'd by *Grecians, Στρίγες*; by *Romans*,
VERSUS. Possibly from an old fashion of
writing, the Words of a *Keyse* (not to the
side of, but) under one another.

(b) How much, concerning the right *Handling*
& true *Use* of (that famously *face'd* full engine
for *Arrows*) the *Bow*, was laid down in that
Book, spoken of *2 Sam. 11. 18*, I ken
not. But, *Bows* and *Arrows* would be of special
Service in the hands of our meely *defensive*
Picquiers. For, by these *Feathery weapons* they
might annoy those, who by *fiery ones* (too
directing *destructive Bullets* against *subjective*
Stand) have shamefully laid low abundance
of *Proper men*. And I remember, I have read
(in the *Book* call'd *Londons Artillery*) of some
sights, where *Archers* have put *Gun men* to flight.
(c) A Metonymie so generally approved, that the
Name *Picquiers* (or, *Pike men*) is rarely heard
given to them; though those who carry *Mus-*
quets, are commonly call'd *Mousquetiers*.

* I speak freely. To bid the *Company*, after
every *Motion*, to *even Ranks*, and *streighten*
Files, speaks no lesse than the *Commander*
extream *fonds*. Or, them very *unward*. Me
thinks, they are *Shameing Words*.

(d) We read of (*Ἰππὸν ὀφρῶν*, *Salatio*
Pyrrhica) A *Daunce* in order of *Battell*, taught
by *Pyrrhus* to his *Souldiers* (*Plin. lib. 2. cap. 16.*)
Without doubt the *Motions* were not unlike
those at the *Corran*, *Laconic*, *Macedonian* *Evo-*
lutions. Yet, I can't but think that in those days
they were more *nimble* at them than in these;
and did 'm *Galiard-like*, frolickly. From the
Noise (which *durante motions*, their *Armes*
made;) the *Dance* was epithet'd *Bellisrepa*.

(e) *Wheelings* are the most *Nice Motions* of all;
and (if they may be so express'd) *Sollicitous Co-*
agitations. That *Angular man* who is as the
Hinge of the *Motion*, moving so much slower
than the other (*Corner*) end of the same *Rank*
to which, he ever and anon casts an eye; as it
hath a larger compass to fetch, than he; The
intermediat men being in like manner obse-
quious; And the *Followers* (in *Files*) accurately
pacing after their *Leaders*.

(c) II Chron. xiii. 3. I King. xx. 14.

fb. vi. 2. & viii. 2. were Ordered by that Great
The Figure of their Game which is most



THE COMPLEAT BODY OF THE ART MILITARY:

The First Book.

CHAP. I.

A discourse of the Postures, and the handling of Arms.



That will be a compleat Souldier, must first begin to learn the use of his *Arms*, laying that down in his thoughts for his first foundation. But this hath beene the neglect of many in our times, who have strived to know high thoughts in the *Art Military*, before they can well performe their *Postures*. Therefore, my advice shall be unto all such that desire to thrive in this *Art*, that they will not *soar* too high; but first learn the *A, B, C*, thereof, after which they may proceed by degrees to pronounce to the Souldier with boldnesse their proficiencie therein. He therefore that with safety, ease, and delight desireth to handle his *Arms*, must set times apart frequently to practise himselfe therein. And here I cannot but much blame the Officers of our *Trained Bands in London*, of two great neglects: the first, in making men *File-leaders* either out of respect, or favour they bear unto them; or else because one man hath a better *Bust* coat than another: I speake not this to encourage any man to come slovenly habited when he shall march forth with his *Captain*, but rather advise all Souldiers to fit themselves with the best array they can, and could wish all the *Sergeants* in drawing up their *Files*, to pitch upon such Gentlemen to be *File-leaders*, as may take charge of his *File*, and shall be able, willing, and ready upon all convenient times, to instruct and teach his *File* in all their *Postures*, and neat handling of their *Arms*, which if carefully observed, they would reap the benefit of much ease to themselves and the private Souldiers: readinesse in the performance of the *Postures* would much redound to the honour of the *Captain* that shall lead them. But for the farther satisfaction of the ingenious Souldier that shall enquire what *Posture* is, I shall briefly resolve them thus.

Posture, as I conceive, is a *garbe* or *figure* that a man stands in, in the handling of his *Arms*; which he useth for the better grace and becoming of them. What *Posture* is.

There are severall motions belonging to each *Posture*, which some call *Postures*, but they much deceive themselves, as shall appear clearly unto them (by the survey) as they shall be set down in order. And first, we will begin to set down the *Postures* of the *Pike*.

CHAP. II.

Severall reasons why the Pike is the more honourable Arms.

First I shall begin to set down the *postures* of the *Pike*, before the *postures* of the *Musket*, for these reasons following, as conceiving: First, They are the more honourable *Arms*, in respect the *Colours* flying upon the head of them, and upon the drawing up of the Company there is the most properest place for the *Captain* to be, either upon a *Stand* or upon a *March*, provided he have ground sufficient to *March* them all abreast. If upon a *Stand*, the *Captain* shall have occasion to engage against an *Enemy*, either his *Officers* may repair unto him upon the head of the *Pikes*, there to receive directions. And if the *Captain* shall cause the *Serjeants* to draw off part or all the *Muskettiers* from the Body of *Pikes* to fire against the enemy, the *Gentlemen* of the *Pikes* in the mean time stands undauntedly to undergoe all the cruell shot of the *Cannon* from the contrary part for to preserve their *Colours*, who are likewise a place of *Rendezvous* for the *Muskettiers* to repair unto when they shall retreat from fight. Farther, it hath been the ambition of many *Gentlemen*, both in *Holland*, *France*, and in these our late unhappy Wars in *England*, to trail *Pikes* with severall *Commanders* whom they shall thinke fit. And lastly, to conclude all, that the *Pike* is the more honourable *Arms*, it is so in respect of its antiquity, for there hath been the use of the *Pike* and *Spear*, many hundred years before there was any knowledge of the *Musket*, as in many *Histories* you shall finde. And so for present, I wil conclude this discourse of the *Pike*, desiring the *Muskettiers* to have a favourable censure of me: for I intend not by it to perswade all *Souldiers* to the handling of the *Pike*, and none to be *Muskettiers*, for that cannot be, I should rather advise all *Captains* that have occasion to raise their Companies to have two thirds of *Muskettiers*, and but one of *Pikes*: that is to say, if they should have 18 *Files*, to cause twelve of them to carry *Muskets*, and the other six *Files* *Pikes*. And in my judgement they shall performe the better service unto any Nation where they shall be employ'd; and I shall farther desire the *Souldiers* (especially those that be of low stature) to handle and take delight in the use of the *Musket*; for it is an exceeding great honour to him so to handle his *Musket*, as that he doth it with ease and in a comely manner, and he that shall become expert therein; I have often observed this commendation to follow him, by the report of others; Such a one is a good *Muskettier*, and an able *Souldier*; concluding thereby, he that will take the pains to be a good *Muskettier* certainly cannot be idle, but hath gained something more to make him capable of such praise. To conclude, I shall desire the *Gentlemen* of the *Pikes*, and the *Gentlemen* of the *Muskettiers* to goe hand in hand in love like dear brothers, and neither of them to envie each other, and in so doing, God will give a blessing to all their undertakings. But now, fearing I have dwelt too long upon this discourse of the *Arms*, I shall next proceed to set down, first the *postures* of the *Pike*, then the *postures* of the *Musket*, with all the words of command tending to their *Motions*, after collect them in order in a brief way, and then set forth unto you the equality of number that the one *Arms* hath with the other, in the *postures* as followeth.

CHAP. III.

The Postures of the Pike.

THE *Pike* lying on the ground, the first word of command will be, stand to your *Arms*.

Handle your *Pike* }
 Raise up your *Pike* } to your { Open Order,
 } Close Order.

Charge with the But end of the *Pike*, at the inside of the right foot, your *Pike* in the left hand, drawing your *Sword* over your left arm.

Charge to the { Front
 { Right } Flank, { Order your *Pikes*, and put
 { Left } up your *Swords*.
 { Reer,

This way of charging to the *Horse*, I have set down, as being practised somtimes amongst
 us

us in our private meetings, but I conceive it to be of little use to receive a desperate charge of the *Horse*, for by these charges the Souldiers are in so lame and weak a posture, that the *Horse* cannot choose if they come on with a full career, but beare the *Pikes* and *Pike-men* down to the ground: Therefore in my opinion the best way of opposing the *Horse charge* is that which we learned of our ever honoured Captain, Major Henry Tillet, in the *Military Garden*; which was, *Files* closing to the midst to their closest Order, insomuch that there was not above half a foot intervall of ground between *File* and *File*, the *Pikes* *Per-ring*, and after closing their *Ranks* forwards so close, that they locked themselves one within another, and then charged on. Which in my judgement is so secure a way from routing, that it is impossible for any Body of *Horse* to enter therein: and farther, to my best remembrance, I never could meet with any Souldier that hath been abroad upon any service that ever saw any charging of the *Pikes* at the *Foot*, therefore I will further proceed.

From Order	Advance, Shoulder, Port, Comport, Cheek, Trail,	Your Pike.	Order as you were.	From the Shoulder charge to the	Front, Right, Left, Reere,	Shoulder as you were.
From your Order	Front, Right, Left, Reere,	Order as you were.		Port your Pikes, Comport your Pikes,	Cheek, Trail	your Pikes as you were
Advance your Pike.	Shoulder, Port, Comport, Cheek, Trail	Your Pike.	Advance as you were.	From the Comport Charge to the	Front, Right, Left, Reer,	Comport as you were.
From your Advance charge to the	Front, Right, Left, Reer,	Advance as you were.		Cheek your Pikes.	Trail your Pikes,	Cheek as you were.
Shoulder your Pike.	Port, Comport, Cheek, Trail	Your Pike.	Shoulder as you were.	From the Cheek charge to the	Front, Right, Left, Reer,	Cheek as you were.
				Trail your Pikes, from your Trail charge to the	Front, Right, Left, Reer.	Trail as you were.
				Order your Pikes, Lay down your Pikes.		

Here is to be observed by this Method an endeavouring to performe all the postures of the *Pike*, from each particular posture, only shortning it by degrees, leaving out what was before commanded untill we come unto the *Trail*. Yet notwithstanding I spared not the charges, but have shewn them from every posture, in their due order. Next followeth the postures of the *Musket*, wherein, in answerable esse to the *Pike*, I shall lay them down in full, and afterwards contract them in a shorter way.

CHAP. IV.

The Postures of the Musket.

THE *Musket* lying on the ground, the first word of command will be, as to the *Pike*.

Stand to your Arms,	}	{	Take up your Rest,
Take up your Bandsliers,			Put the string of your Rest about your left wrist.
Put on your Bandsliers.			
Take up your Match,	}	{	Take up your Musket,
Place your Match,			Rest your Musket.

Here the Souldier may perform the *Saluting Posture*, if he shall finde any occasion so to doe, for the honouring of his friend, or any Gentleman of worth.

{ Poyse your Musket,
Shoulder your Musket,
{ Un-shoulder your Musket and Poyse,
Joyn your Rest to the outside of your Musket.

{ Open
Cleere
Prime
Shut } your pan.

{ Cast off your loose Corns,
Blow off your loose corns, and bring about
your Musket to the left side.
{ Trail your Rest,
Ballance your Musket in your left hand.

{ Finde out your Charge,
Open your Charge,
Charge with powder.

{ Draw forth your Scouring-stick,
Turn and shorten him to an Inch.
Charge with Bullet.

{ Put your Scouring-stick into your Musket
Ram home your Charge.

{ Withdraw your Scouring-stick,
Turn, and shorten him to a handfull,
Return your Scouring-stick.

{ Bring forward your Musket and Rest,
Poyse your Musket & recover your Rest.
Joyn your Rest to the outside of your Musket.

{ Draw forth your Match,
Blow your Cole.

{ Cock } Your Match.
Fit

{ Guard your Pan,
Blow the ashes from your Cole.

{ Open your Pan,
Present upon your Rest,
Give fire breft high.

{ Dismount your Musket, joyning the Rest
to the outside of your Musket.
Un-cock, and return your Match.

{ Cleere your Pan,
Shut your Pan.

{ Poyse your Musket,
Rest your Musket.

{ Take your Musket off the Rest, and set
the Butt end to the ground,
Lay down your Musket,
Lay down your Match.

{ Take your Rest into your right hand,
cleering the firing from your left
wrist,
Lay down your Rest.

{ Take off your Bandiliers.
Lay down your Bandiliers.

Here endeth the *Postures* of the Musket, from the taking of them up from the ground, to make ready, and the proceeding in them to the laying of them down again. Now if the Souldier will take his Rest into his right hand, for to be a support and help to him in his march; he must observe the following words of command.

{ Lay your right hand upon the Butt end of your Musket,
Lay your left arme over your Musket.

{ Shift your match between the fingers of your right hand,
Take your Rest into your right hand, cleering the firing from your left wrist.
Return your match, and take your Rest into your right hand, 'twill cause
you to be in a fit capacity for to march.

CHAP. V.

The Postures and charges of the Pike, to be performed in a shorter way,
all things acted in order, and nothing done twice.

THE Pike lying on the ground, the first word of Command will be,

{ Stand to your Arms,
Handle your Arms.

The Musket being shouldered, you may proceed in these words of command, to recover the Rest into the right hand.

Raise up your *Pikes* } to your { Open Order,
 } Order,
 } close Order.

From your close Order } Front
 charge to the Horse. } Right
 } Left
 } Reer } Recover your *Pikes*, and put up your *Swords*,

Advance } your *Pikes*, } Charge to the Front.
 Port }

Shoulder your *Pikes*, } Charge to the right.
 Comport your *Pikes*, } Charge to the left.

Cheeke } your *Pikes*, } Charge to the Reer.
 Trail }

After lay the narrow end of the *Pike* to the ground, face about to the left to your first Front, and move forward with the *Butt end* of your *Pike* on your right side in your *Funerall Posture*. After face about to the right, raise up your *Pike*, face then again to your first Front, you may lay down the *Pike* to the ground and march from your *Arms*, having ended all the *Postures* and *Charges* in their due courses. And here Fellow Souldier, whoever thou art, thou maist perceive that there are no more then eight *Postures* of the *Pike*, and four *Charges*, that is to say, to the Front, Reer, and both Flanks. There are some would fain have another *Posture* added to these, which they call the *Lazie Posture*, which sometimes I have perceived upon a stand, that then the *Pike-man* lets slip his *Pike* from the *shoulder*, untill the *Butt end* rest upon the ground, then laying his right arme over it, he stands in an il-favour'd *lazie way*. Such *Postures* as these are not fit to be ranged among the former; but rather to be condemned, in regard the Souldier will be apt enough to finde out such *Postures* as these of himselfe, if not prevented by the discretion of the carefull Officers; for upon a stand the Souldiers properest *Posture* is to Order his *Pike*. And thus much in brieffe concerning the *Postures* of the *Pike*.

CHAP. VI.

The Postures of the Musket collected in a brieffe way.

According to my former promise I shall endeavour to give the best satisfaction I can to the *Muskettiers*, as well as to the *Pikes*, that there is an answerableness of number in the proper *Postures* of the *Musket* to them of the *Pike*: and they are eight (as I conceive) and may be proceeded on in order from the taking up, to the laying down of the *Musket*, and nothing acted twice: the words of command for the *Postures* followeth,

The *Musket* lying on the ground, the words of command will be as afore.

{ Stand to your *Arms*,
 { Handle your *Arms*.

Now you are to take notice that in taking up the *Bandiliers*, putting them on, taking up the *Rest*, putting the *string* about the left wrist, the taking up of the *Match*, placing of it, the taking up of the *Musket*, these, or the like are no *Postures*, but motions to the first *Posture*. Therefore I will proceed upon them all in order as they lie, leaving out the words of command tending to the Motions.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Order your <i>Musket</i> , | 6 Trail your <i>Rest</i> , and ballance your |
| 2 Rest your <i>Musket</i> , | <i>Musket</i> on the left side with the bar- |
| 3 Poyle your <i>Musket</i> , | rell downwards, |
| 4 Shoulder your <i>Musket</i> , | 7 Recover your <i>Musket</i> , and performe |
| 5 Ballance your <i>Musket</i> and <i>Rest</i> on the | your <i>Sentinell Posture</i> . |
| right with the barrell upwards, | 8 Fro this performe your <i>Funerall Posture</i> . |

This being ended, a man may recover his *Musket*, and *Rest*, that knows how to perform this last *Posture*, without bringing him again upon the *Rest*, and may lay down his *Armes* again, observing the former Rule, where the *Postures* of the *Musket* are set down at large.

CHAP. VII.

There is also a conformity of Posture with the Musket, to those of the Pike, and Words of Command to be given, as may in many things be received by both Arms.

THe *Musket* and *Pike* lying on the ground, these words of Command may properly be employed to both; That is to say,

Stand to your *Arms*.

Handle your *Arms*.

The *Bur-end* of the *Musket* standing, or resting on the ground, at the out side of the right foot, is conformable to the *Pike* ordered.

The *Musket* poised; to the *Pike* advanced.

The *Musket* shouldered; to the *Pike* shouldered.

The *Musket* porting; to the *Pike* porting.

The *Musket* reverst; (as in the Funerall *Posture*) to the *Pike* trailing.

The *Musket* rested, to the *Pike* checked; which is his proper *Sentinell Posture*.

The *Musket* presented; to the *Pike* charged.

As for the *Motions* of *Posture*, which conduce to the *loading*, and *priming* of the *Musket*, as to *cast about*, *trail*, *recover*, and the like, they are all included in that generall Word of Command, properly to the *Muskettiers* belonging, which is to *make ready*.

Now, me thinks, I hear some ingenious Souldier begin to aske me, what are the use of these *Postures* so fully laid down by you? To whom I shall be so courteous, as to satisfy them, according to my former Method, beginning with the *Pike*, as followeth.

CHAP. VIII.

The use of the Postures of the Pike.

The use of Ordering the Pike.

THe *Pike* being ordered is the proper *Posture* of a Souldier upon a stand, which he ought even to minde upon any such occasion, so to make use of it. And I have likewise seen in many places, in the day time, this *Posture* to be used by the Souldier standing *Sentinell*.

The use of advancing the Pike.

The *Pike* advanced, is usefull for the Souldier upon a *Troop*, when they are to *march* swiftly, either for the relieving of some *Court of Guard*, or to repair to their place of *Rendezvous*, or upon some suddain approaching to an Enemy, to make a *Charge*: for then he will be in a fit capacity to clap down quickly his *Pike*, upon the breast of the Enemy. It is likewise very usefull in the time of exercise: to the *half-files*, and *bringers up*, upon any doubling to the Front, for then they are alwayes to be advanced, in respect of a longer march in their doublings, then those that *double Ranks and Files*; but having doubled, they must always conform in *Posture* to the part doubled.

The use of Porting.

The use of *Porting* was invented for the ease of the *Rear half-Files*, upon a *Charge*; for the *Front half-Files* are only for to *charge*; the *Rear half-Files* in the meantime are to *port*. It is likewise very usefull at such times when the Souldiers are marching through a *Gate*, or *Sally-Port*; from whence I conceive it doth derive its name *porting*.

The use of Shouldering.

The use of *shouldering* the *Pike*, is only properest upon the *March*, and in some kinde very usefull upon a Stand in time of Fight; provided they are at convenient distance from the Enemy. For it much preserveth the *Pikes*, and *Pikemen*, from the danger of the *shot*, the *bullets* then gliding off from their *Arms*; which if they stood at such times, either *ordered*, or *advanced*; the *bullets* would make such a clattering amongst the *Pikes*, that what with breaking of them, and the *shivers* flying from them, may much endanger the Souldiers which shall carry them.

The

The *comporting* of the *Pike* is only usefull to the Souldier marching up a *hill*, for if then he should be *shouldered*, the *But-end* of the *Pike* would always be touching of the *ground*, to hinder him in his *March*; and much endanger his fellow-souldiers that shall come after him. Neither can he *march advanced*; for if there should be any winde, it would be ready to blow him down. Therefore as above, that which is most commodious for the Souldiers marching up a *hill*, is to *comport his Pike*.

The use of
Comporting.

The *trailing* of the *Pike* is seldome used, but when the Souldier shall *march* straight forward through a *Wood*, the *File-leader* before he enters in, *trails* his *Pike*, and consequently all the rest in his *File*: then *sloping down*, they take up the *But-end* of their *Leaders Pikes*, which they may easily gripe with their own in their right hands, and after *march* forward through the *busling leaves* in a *straight line*, every *file* single by himselfe, but as neare each other as possible they can *march* for more securitie sake; that when they are cleare, they may finde each other, and be in a condition to *rally* up againe, as occasion shall require. The *trailing* of the *Pike*, may also be of excellent use in a *Trench*, that at such time when they shall have intelligence, where the Enemy are preparing to make a *Breach*, they may then move forwards unto that place undiscovered, and may defend the same.

The use of
Trailing.

The *checking* of the *Pike*, is the proper *Sentinell posture*, and then to be used.

The use of
Checking.

CHAP. IX.

The use of the Postures of the Musket.

I Conceive it will not be materiall to go over every *posture* of the *Musket*, to describe the use of them, in respect the greater part of them hath conformity to the *Pike*. Those that shall remaine, and of the chiefeest consequence, I shall not be wanting to satisfie the Souldier in.

The *ballancing* the *Musket*, and *Rest*, on the right side with the *Barrell* upward is one of the chiefeest *Postures* belonging to the *Musket*; from thence he begins to make ready, as to *open*, *cleare*, and *prime* the *paw*, all being *motions* to this *Posture*.

To *traille* the *Rest*, and *Balance*, the *Musket* on the left side, with the *barrell* downward, is a *Posture* likewise of as great consequence; for there are severall *motions*, belonging also to this *Posture*, as to finde out the *charge*, to *open* it, to *charge* with *powder*, to take *bullet* out of the *bag* and to *charge* with *bullet*, with divers other *motions* before you can recover your *Musket* and *Rest* againe.

The use of
ballancing the
Musket on the
right side.

The use of
ballancing the
Musket on the
left side.

How a Muskietier shall performe the Sentinell Posture.

The *Sentinell Posture* is to be performed after this manner; first, the *Musket* is to be *laded* with *powder*, and *bullet*, afterwards he is to *cock* his *match*, and to stand with his *paw* guarded, his *Musket* being upon the *Rest*, untill such time that he is relieved; but as concerning him, I shall more fully set forth his duty, treating upon the duty of the *Sentinell*.

CHAP. X.

The manner and way to do the Funerall Posture.

NExt followeth to shew how to do the *Funerall Posture*, the properest and the best way to begin this *Posture*, is when the *Musket* is *rested*, and is to be performed after this manner. You must first *slip up* your *Musket* upon the *Rest*, so high, untill the *Fork* of the *Rest* be within a handfull of the *cock*; after you must bring your right hand under the *barrell* of the *Musket*, close to the *Fork* of the *Rest*, and then lift him off, and after cast your *Rest* backward, *trailing* him on the left side, and bring your *Musket* under your left arme, with the *barrell* downwards, bearing the *But-end* upward, with your two fore-fingers, and your thumb, holding off the *paw*, and that with the left hand. Now if you begin to be weary in the *March*, by reason of the weight of the *Musket*; you may to ease your selfe, bring your right hand backward, and there take hold of the *Musket*, keeping still your left hand in it's first place, untill you shall reduce him to the *Rest* againe.

The

The reducement of the Musket from the Funerall Posture.

First, raise up your *Musket* a litle, with your two fingers, & thumb, of the left hand, as you formerly held him, then turn the *Musket* untill you perceive the *barrell* to be upward; after lay your right hand upon the *barrell*, much about the *laxie* *Fin*, and then taking him, bring him up forward on the out-side of the *Rest*, recover your *Rest*, fall back with the right legge, you may with ease bring your *Musket* again upon the *Rest* as at first. This *Posture* being so seldome used, makes the Souldier much to seek in performance of the same; but he that takes pleasure in handling of the *Musket*, and shall exercise himselfe therein, cannot chuse but finde it very easie, and much delightfull to him. And I know no *Posture* more becoming a *Muskettier* then this, if it be neat, and well performed by him. And here I shall conclude, and end discoursing of the *Postures*.

C H A P. X I.

The Souldiers desire to know every perticuler place of Dignity, as they stand in Rank and File.

THe Souldier now having obtained some pretty knowledge, skill, and ready aptnesse in the managing and performing the *Postures*, begins to look about himself, what next is needfull for to fasten upon, to make a further progresse in this Art. And straight he meets with some that *whispers* to him, that it were a gallant thing to know the *Dignity* of a *File*, true and rightly stated; to which he answers, but where can it be found, the opinions of Souldiers are so various, and differing therein, that none knows wherefor to attaine it. My *Captains* eye (saith he) is upon me, because I do the *Postures* well, which causeth the *Serjeants* to make me a *File-leader*, and that I know to be the chiefeft, and first place of Honour in the *File*, the second place to be the *Bringer up*, the third, the *half File-leader*; the fourth, the *Bringer up* of the *Front half-Files*. Thus far, no Souldier of any known judgment can deny; but now a days our *Files* being drawn up six deep, makes me altogether ignorant of the honour of the *Rest*; Neither know I the *Dignity* of a *File* eight, or ten deep, which still in some places they do reteine, drawing them up so deep. If my ambition were but now fully satisfied herein, I should in time come for to know the *Dignity* of the *Captains*, as they are drawn up all in a *Regiment*; by which Rule, I am informed they walk. And in my judgment, there cannot be a truer stating the *Dignity* of a *Rank* and *File*, then that which shall conforme to the *Dignities* of the *Captaines*, as they are drawn up a *Brest* all in a *Regiment*. Now, for as much, as many *Regiments*, consist of severall Numbers of *Captaines*, and Companies in them; as some six Companies, others eight; some greater, as ten, and twelve Companies. It is expedient therefore not only for my selfe, but for every Souldier that will be truly knowing to be resolved herein concerning those severall numbers, and as occasion shall alter to any other; they may informe themselves by these how to fit their purpose. And therefore, not to keep the apt and forward Souldier longer in suspence, but that he may proceed, I shall amongst the rest, declare my thoughts therein, and set it forth unto their view, everhoping from my fellow-souldiers a favourable censure of my good meaning to them, and to my Countrey, for to imploy that little talent, which lately my endeavours hath obtained to do them service. And shall forthwith set down unto them four Tables of *Dignity*, both of *Ranks*, and *Files*, which shall be first of twelve a *Brest*, and twelve deep. Secondly, ten a *Brest*, and ten deep. Thirdly, eight a *Brest*, and eight deep. And lastly, six a *Brest*, and six deep; wherein every ingenious Souldier shall easily know his perticuler place of honour and dignity, both in *Rank* and *File*, wherein he stands.

The Table being thus set forth into the Souldiers view; as is before express'd, methinks, I hear some say: Sir, we like the drawing forth and the manner of your Table very well, we see clearly there the particular places how every man stands in his dignity both in Rank and File according to your severall Figures; but we beseech you, Sir, be so favourable as to make us understand it by a farther demonstration of the same, and be pleas'd out of your courteous nature to explain your selfe a little farther therein; and to afford us some reasons to confirm and back the same, that it may clearly appear to our judgements the truth thereof, and that we may sit down and rest our selves with fullest satisfaction therein. To Answer, me thinks, it should be strange to make deniall here to the modest desire of any ingenious Souldier, and cleere repugnant to my wonted custome; and therefore without any more delay, I shall farther let them know.

111 The places of Dignity 12 in Rank.

2	11	5	8	10	3	4	9	6	7	12	1
The place of Dignity 10 in Rank.											
2	9	5	8	10	3	4	7	6	10	1	
The place of Dignity 8 in Rank.											
2	5	8	10	4	7	6	1				
The place of Dignity 6 in Rank.											
2	5	3	4	6	1						
The place of Dignity 4 in Rank.											
2	4										
The place of Dignity 3 in Rank.											
2	3										
The place of Dignity 2 in Rank.											
2	2										

The places of Dignity 12 deep.

The places of Dignity 10 deep.

The places of Dignity 8 deep.

The places of Dignity 6 deep.

The places of Dignity 4 deep.

The places of Dignity 3 deep.

The places of Dignity 2 deep.

CHAP. XII.

Reasons for the places of dignity both in Rank and File, for the first foure in a File eight deep.

THAT which gives most life for the true explaining of the former table is, to shew the severall places of honour and dignitie of the Captains, how they are drawn up a breft all in a Regiment. Be pleas'd therefore to goe along with me, and you shall understand that the *Colonel* hath the first place of honour, as being Commander in chiefe, whose Company stands upon the right, which makes the figure (1) The second place of honour in the Regiment is the *Lieutenant Colonel*, whose Company is drawn up upon the left, as being the outmost there, and is described by the figure (2) The third place of honour is the *Majors* Company, which is drawn up upon the right of the left halfe *Ranks*, whose place is described by the figure (3) The fourth place of honour is the eldest *Captains* Company, which is drawn up upon the left of the right halfe *Ranks*, and is set forth by the figure (4) And now we have proceeded thus far, we will make *Att* and begin to examine whether we have rightly hitherto proceeded, or no, therefore, for the more cleering and understanding herein, you must take notice it is the discretion of every knowing Commander so to aime and stae his Battail, as that he makes his Front equivalent in worth, strength, and dignity to that of the Rear, and with equall proportion of number, and in like manner so to order his right halfe *Ranks* as that they may carry an equall ballance in worth, number and dignity with the left halfe *Ranks*. Now therefore to begin to make some triall or experiment herein by examining the first worth with the fourth, and that will make the number (5) and then put to triall the second worth and third, and you shall easily discern it to carry the same proportion of number. So that it may appear clearly in the judgement of any discreet Souldier a true and equall proportion, the Front with the Rear, the right halfe *Ranks* suitable to the left halfe *Ranks*, and that both in number, honour and dignity.

Having thus far entred into the discourse, it remains to describe and shew the reasons of the other four of their places and dignity as they stand.

C

CHAP.

CHAP XIII.

Reasons of the place of the second foure as they stand in Rank and File, the File being eight deep.

NOW for the further resolution herein, there is to be taken notice of, that the generall drawing up of *Regiments*, when they consist of so few Companies as 6, or 7, is commonly in two grand Divisions, that is to say, two bodies or two stands of *Pikes*, which are flanked with *Muskettiers*. Therefore you may observe the discretion of the *Major* who commonly is appointed to draw up the *Regiments*, doth so order the places of the *Captains*, that they may aptly fall into their due places of Honour, upon a *stand* and upon a *march*; and doth so order their Dignities as before is expressed, as to make both the Front, Reer, right and left half *Ranks*, equall in Number, Strength, and Dignity. And, therefore, he draws up the third and fourth *Captain* between the *Colonels* Company and the eldest *Captain*, which makes their number (13:) and in like manner he draws the second *Captain*, and the youngest *Captain* betweene the *Lieutenant Colonels* Company and the *Majors*, whose number likewise carries equall proportion to be (13.) Now if you please to examine the whole number of the right halfe *Ranks*, and that makes (18:) maketriall likewise of the left halfe *Ranks*, in casting up of his account; and you shall finde the same proportion of number as is cleerly set forth within the Table, both of *Ranks* and *Files*, for as the honour of every Souldier stands in the *Rank*, you will finde the same to stand so in the *File*.

CHAP. XIV.

Other Reasons to cleere it further to the Souldier.

TO give you farther satisfaction, and Reasons for the placing of the second foure, in respect it is contrary to the Rule and Judgement of some Souldiers: therefore farther observe with me this; When a *Regiment* is drawn up in the true Order of a *Regiment* all way; there is as before expressed, two Bodies, or *Stand*s of *Pikes*, flanked with *Muskettiers*; and it is the Office of every *Major* to give forth in writing notes of paper unto every *Captain*, and *Lieutenant*, where their place shall be upon a *Stand*, and where upon a *March*, that he may with more readinesse know where to lead, and wheretofall in, or to bring up, as occasion shall require. Now, for as much, that it hath been the practise here in *England*, and in most Countries also besides, as I have been informed by very able knowing Souldiers; that the first place of Honour that is appointed out unto the *Captains*; is first unto the eldest; who alwayes leads the *Colonels Colours*, or first grand Division of *Pikes*; which is the greatest Honour that can be appointed out unto the *Captains*, and therefore most properest and due to him as being Eldest. If so, as that it is then generally granted, that the leading of the *Colonels Colours*, or the first Body, or *Stand* of *Pikes* in the *Colonels* Grand Division, is the first and chiefest place of Honour amongst the *Captains*; Why then, certainly, I must conclude the second *Captain*, which carries the Number (5) would be infinitely wronged, and injured, if he were denied, and not brought into the left halfe *Ranks*, for there he aptly stands to fall in, to lead the *Lieutenant Colonels Colours*, on the second Body, or *Stand* of *Pikes*, which is the second place of Honour. Now having resolved, that it is cleerly the due, and Right for the second *Captains* place, to lead the second Body of *Pikes*; we must then, of necessity, bring in the youngest *Captain* into the left halfe *Ranks* likewise; who carries the Number (8) and that will make up an equall proportion, as before expressed to the third and fourth *Captains*; carrying with them the figures (6 and 7) which are drawn up in the right halfe *Rank*.

CHAP. XV.

Reasons given for the last Table of every perticuler Place of Honour, and Dignity, as they stand.

I CONceive, what formerly hath been expressed of the middle Table, may give full resolution of the perticuler places of Honour, and Dignity, as they stand both in *Rank* and *File*. It further now remains to speak somewhat of the rest, and therefore, I shall go down-ward, cleering still the first four places of Honour, which being rightly understood

derstood, the rest will naturally fall into the capacity of any ingenious Souldier. Therefore further pray observe with me this again in examining of the sutableness, and equall proportion of Worth, and number of the first and fourth Worth, carrying unto that of the second and third. And thus far you may rest, and satisfie your selfe therein. We have therefore now no more to place, and settle, but the fifth, and sixth Worth, and then our work in this Table will be quickly finished. Therefore of necessity, as formerly expressed, we must bring in the fifth Worth, into the left halfe *Ranks*, as being the second *Captaine*; whose proper place as I said before, is to lead the *Lieutenant Colonels* Colours, or the second Body; or *Stand of Pikes*. He being there thus fixed, we have no more to place, but the sixth Worth, which is the last, or youngest *Captain*; and we have no other place to bring him in, but between the first and fourth Worth, or if you will have it more cleere, between the *Colonel*, and eldest *Captain*. But, here by the way, I am like to meet with some Objector, that will say, Sir, What's become of your equall proportion here? Your right halfe *Ranks*, with your left, as you have so formerly stated them; your right halfe *Ranks* carrieth, or exceedeth one more in number then your left halfe *Ranks* doth; and where we finde the greater number, we must conclude the lesser dignity, and if so, Why do you not rather contrive it on the left, then upon the right? To which I answer first, that in raising up of Companies into a *Regiment*, those that are the *Field Officers* by right should have the most men, and greater Companies, then the private *Captains* have; therefore if you will observe in the stating of this Dignity of a *Rank* six a Brest, you will finde in the left halfe *Ranke*, two *Field Officers*, whose Companies are the greater then any private *Captains*; certainly, they must needs countervaille with any number of men with the right halfe *Ranks*, for although the *Colonels* Company is, or ought ever to be the greatest, yet there is no more *Field Officers*, but himselfe in his Division. And again, secondly, where there cannot be an equall dividing of number, (as here you will finde it of six a Brest, or six deep) but that there will fall out some odd, either on the right halfe *Ranks*, or on the left, and likewise the same either in the Front half *Files*, or Rear-half-*Files*, as by example in the triall you will easily finde, by casting up the whole number, as they stand a Brest, and they will fall out to be (21:) divide this number into two parts, and you cannot but must cast the odd either on the right, or on the left. Therefore, to conclude, since that there is a great possibility that there will be an equality of number of men in the left half *Ranks*, sutable to that of the right, where there shall fall out an odd number, that you cannot cast it into the left half *Ranks*, but that you must remove the fifth Worth; in this extremity I say you may not do it, but rather place it on the right. For the *Major* having no certain place to march in a *Regiment*, it is the proper place of the second *Captain* to walke along with the *Lieutenant Colonel*, taking his due palce of honour in his division, as the first shall do by marching with his *Colonel*; and thus much shall suffice to be spoken of the last Table.

CHAP. XVI.

Reasons likewise to be given for the Table, 12 a Brest, and 12 deep.

FOras much as formerly hath been spoken, that it is the discretion of every Commander so to order his men, as to make an equall *ballance* throughout the battell, that his Front carry with it an equall proportion of Worth, Number, and Dignity; with that of the Reer: and likewise so to Reer, and order his right half *Rank*, or right *Flank*, sutable with that of the left. The next way then to receive further satisfaction herein, is by an examination thereof as it lies, and is set open to view.

2: 11: 5: 8: 10: 3: | 4: 9: 6: 7: 12: 1:

39.

39.

Compare now the Worth and Dignity of the right half *Ranks*, and you shall quickly perceive to carry a like proportion of number and worth with the left. To make it a little more clear unto those that shall desire to be more satisfied herein, you may take notice, and

observe a true qualification throughout the whole *Rank*. As first, begin with the *Colonel*, who is the best and chiefest man of honour in the *Regiment*; and next to him is placed the ninth or youngest *Captain*, to qualify his dignity and make his number (13,) the *Lieutenant Colonel* being the second man of honour, hath placed to him the *eighth*, which qualifies him in like manner to the *Colonel*, and makes his number (13.) Next come we to the *Major*, and next to him is placed the seventh *Captain*, which makes him futable with the rest in his figure and qualification, and to bear the number (13.) After we are to speak of the eldest *Captain*, who hath the sixth *Captain* joyned unto him, and makes his number (13.) And so comparing all the rest, dividing them by two's, they will stand as followeth.

2: 11:	5: 8:	10: 3:	4: 9:	6: 7:	12: 1:
13	13	13	13	13	13
39			39		

Thus much, I conceive, may give a right understanding to any coming on Souldier, of the true and right stating of a *Rank* twelve abreast, being a thing very needfull for to know, in respect that there are many *Regiments* which doe consist of twelve Companies; and when in course; as in the sequell of this Book, when as I shall shew the manner of drawing up of twelve Companies; there will a little more light appear unto them to their farther knowledge of the same. But thus much for the present, as concerning a *Rank* twelve abreast; and now I shall come to speak or to touch a little of a *Rank* ten abreast, and a *File* ten deep.

CHAP. XVII.

Brief reasons to be given of the Dignity of places of a Rank ten abreast, and of a File ten deep.

WHat hath been formerly declared concerning a *Rank* twelve abreast as before shewed by every particular place of honour, as they stand with the reasons for the same, it may give a cleer understanding by the same rule to finde the Dignity of places ten abreast. For walking by the same way and rule of examination, and you will finde them to carry by dividing by two's, being added to the four first places of honour, and they will carry futable proportions, as underneath is set forth.

2: 9:	5:	8: 3:	4: 7:	6:	10: 1:
11:	11:	11:	11:		
27:			28:		

But for as much that in this *Range* of ten abreast there will fall out some odd, we must then of necessity sake, place it upon the right, and not on the left, for the reasons as formerly for a *File* six deep declared. I might now here conclude with other flourishing Tables which might be little profitable unto the Souldier, though holding out discourse more fuller in an *Arithmetical* way. But I have no desire to fill this subject with plenty of unprofitable words and frothie flourishes, but rather driving really in a Souldierly way, to make all things both plain and easie to every courteous Reader that shall be pleased for to peruse the same. And therefore, here for present, I shall conclude, what more might here be spoken by dignities of *Ranks* and *Files*, leaving what shall remain untill such time in course I shall again meet with them by the way in drawing up of *Regiments*.

CHAP. XVIII.

What Distance is, and the reasons for the first beginning of the same, with all their severall uses.

HAVING thus now passed over severall reasons, and with as much brevity as I could, to satisfie the longing desire of the young Souldiers request of every particular place of honour as they stand in dignity both in *Rank* and *File*: Which being passed over, the next will follow by course, before we come to joine the *Files* into

a *Body* to satisfie the Souldier of each particular *distance* with the severall reasons and uses of the same : for next to the *Postures* it is the first thing, or part of the *Military* exercise, and most necessary for the Souldier to be knowing in, and to be exercised in. Yet I must confesse no Commander is so tied up or limited in the exercising of his men at all times to begin with *Distances*, first, so as to shew them all throughout; but neverthelesse, in all and every one of the *Motions* in the exercising of a *Body*, care must be taken that the Souldier have his proper *Distance* for performance of the same. Neither can any *Leader* exercise his men, but first he must command them to some *Distance* suitable to what he will begin. As some I have seen begin their Exercises with *Faceings*, some other with *Doublings*; others with *Counter marches* and with *Wheelings*. Yet, neverthelesse, whoever they be that will so begin, as I said before, must command his Souldiers to some *Distance*, which may be proper for the same. But for my own part, my purpose is to goe throughout all parts of the *Military* Exercise of Foot, and therefore will go on in order as they lie; and first, as most properest, I shall begin with *Distances*, to shew them all throughout, and what the nature of them be.

Distance therefore really considered in it selfe, is no *Motion*, but there are severall motions to the attaining of each particular *Distance* both in length and depth. Therefore, briefly thus : *Distance* is a place or intervall of ground between every particular *File* and *File*, and betwixt every *Rank* and *Rank* as they stand, and attained by the severall motions of *Ranks* and *Files*, and consisting of severall proportions of ground, as easily may be understood by their severall words of command as they follow.

CHAP. XIX.

The severall sorts of Distances which are fit and proper for the Souldier to be exercised in.

{	C	{	Which is both in Rank and File	{	Half a foot,	}
					One foot and a half,	
					Three foot,	
					Six foot,	
					Twelve foot,	
					Twenty four foot.	

Having thus set down every *Distance* with their severall proportions of ground, I shall next proceed unto the words of command to the opening of the *Ranks* and *Files* from their closest Order, and after satisfie the Souldier with the reasons, and the uses of every particular *Distance*, as they go along in order.

CHAP. XX.

Words of Command for the opening of Ranks and Files to all their Distances, with their closings again.

THe Commander craving silence, and that they be commanded to close *Ranks* and *Files* to their closest Order, the words of command for *Distances* are as followeth.

Files open to the right to your close	{	Order,
Ranks open backward to your close		
Files open to the left to your	{	Order,
Ranks open backward to your		
Files open to the right and left to your	{	open Order,
Ranks open backward to your		
Files open to the left to your	{	double Distance,
Ranks open backward to your		
Files open from the midst to twice	{	double Distance.
Ranks open backward to twice		

The *Ranks* and *Files* being thus opened unto their twice double *Distance*, from their closest order, I conceive it to be a more Souldierly like way in the opening and closing of *Files*, that the discretion of the Commander do vary, and alter the hand in the commanding of them, then always from every *Distance* to tie himself to any perticular hand; as to open to the right, and close to the right. But as concerning the opening of *Ranks*, the properest way in my judgement is to open them always to the Reer, in respect it is performed with more facility: For every *Rank* from the first takes his due *Distance*, as he is commanded, without any further trouble; or to a haffe facing to the right, by taking it from the Reer, if from that place they shall be opened; and so likewise it were a great deal better in the closing of *Ranks*, to close them forwards, in respect it is for the more conveniency of their closing, then to the Reer. For then, again, they must perform a half facing, which is not only handsome, but troublesome to the Souldier. All that can be said for to maintain it, (as I conceive, in opening *Ranks*, forwards) is because they have not room in the Reer, which seldom happens so in any Exercise, if discreetly ordered by him that leads them. As for closing of the *Ranks* backwards, I cannot conceive any solid reasons to confirme the same, and therefore will passe over it, and come to close out *Ranks* and *Files*, to such *Distance*, from whence they first were opened.

Files close to the right and left, inward to } double distance.
Ranks close forwards, to }

Files close to the right to your open } Order.
Ranks close forwards to your open }

Files close into the midst to your } Order.
Ranks close forwards to your }

Files close to the left to your close } Order.
Ranks close forwards to your close }

Files close to the right to your closest } Order.
Ranks close forwards to your closest }

Concerning the Words of Command for *Distances*, in the openings and closings of *Ranks*, and *Files*, what before is set down, may be sufficient for any Souldier to use in time of his exercise. But now it will be expected to give some reasons for every one of these, to shew them in their proper uses.

CHAP. XXI.

The use of each perticular Distance, and at what time to be used.

W Herefore, first note, that your *Distance* of closest Order, is of chiefest use unto the *Pike*, in these perticulars; as first, charging against the Horse, for that the *Ranks* then clapping in their left legs, behind their Leaders right, locking themselves so firme and stedfast, one within another, which 'twere impossible for any Body of Horse to enter in amongst them. Secondly, it is of excellent use for to maintain a *breach*, and to keep out an Enemy. Thirdly, it is very usefull to both arms at such time, when a Commander hath any thing of consequence to discover unto his Company, which he may have many occasions so to do; as before his Exercise, to advise them to silence, to observe their words of command, and their directions; and when they are to fight against an Enemy, to perswade, and keep them off from fear, by assuring them good reasons of hopes of overcoming. These, or such like speeches, manytimes a *Captain* may have just occasion to expresse himselfe unto his Company, and being at so close a *Distance*, they may more aptly hear his words, and obey his Commands. But here now, by the way, too much preaching upon the head of a Company concerning matters of Exercise, is too much a dulling of the Souldier, who rather would fall into action, then so to be confounded with much talking.

Close order may be of very good use also, for most things which hath been spoken of the closest order; only here the Souldier hath a little more liberty in the handling of his arms

arms, by being at a wider *Distance*. This *Distance* also is of good use, before *wheelings*, because many times upon their moving, they are apt to file out to their proper *Distance* of order, which they always should be at in their *wheelings*, where note, if first they were at order, they would file out to wider *Distance*.

Order is the *Distance* which the Souldier doth fight upon, and is to be used skirmishing against an Enemy; it is also usefull at such time, when the *Drum* shall beat a *Troop*, and that the Souldiers are marching to relieve some Court of *Guard*, or making some expedition against an Enemy, for then they are in a fit capacity of *Distance*, for to fight. It is also very usefull, and to be observed upon *facings*, for all *intire doubling*s, and for *wheelings*; Order likewise in *File*, and open order in *Rank*, is to be used at such time when the *Drum*, shall beat a march, and the Body upon their moving, or marching.

Open order is the *Distance* proper for all *doublings* of *Ranks* and *Files*, by the half-*Files* or by the *Bringers up*, wherein they have *intervals* of ground, sufficient to move in. It is also a very proper *Distance* for *facings*, and ever to be observed in time of *Common-marches*.

It is the properest *distance* for the *Ranks* to be in upon a *March*, but the *Files* are then, to be at order, as is before exprest.

The use of *double Distance* is to be observed at such times when the Souldiers shall stand, or happen to be in some eminent danger of the *Cannon* shot, from the Enemy; for standing then so *thinne*, they may be much preserved from danger; it is likewise very good for *Inversion*, and *Conversion*.

You may take notice of these briefe directions, in openings of *Ranks* and *Files*, when the *Files* are commanded to open to the right, the left hand *File* stands, and all the *Files* take their *Distance* from the left, observing always in the Motions of *Files*, their *Leaders*, and to move altogether along with them. If it be an opening of *Files* to the left, then contrary wayes, the right hand *File* stands, and they take their *Distance* from the right. So likewise for closings unto what hand soever they be commanded to close, the out-most *File* is to stand, the rest are to move and close to that. In opening or closing of *Ranks*, the first *Rank* is always to stand, the rest are to move either opening or closing, according as is commanded, always observing in their motions their right-hand-men, and moving altogether.

CHAP. XXII.

Directions of the way and manner of drawing up a private Company.

THe *Postures* being formerly described forth, the dignity of places in a *File*, and words of Command made known unto the Souldier for their severall *Distances*. It next followeth to shew the joyning of *Files*, and drawing up a Company; where first pray minde at such times when the *Drums* are beating about the *Quarters*, and in severall places makes *Proclamation*, (as by order from their *Captain*.) for all Gentlemen Souldiers that are under his Command, to repair unto his *Rendezvous*, unto such a place, and at such an hour; then it must be the immediate care of every Officer under his Command, punctually at that hour and place, thither to repair, for the more encouraging of the Souldiers as they shall come in, and not to stir themselves from thence, without some order from their *Captain*, for fear of giving bad examples unto others. And when they shall perceive some considerable number of men to come in, the *Sergeants* then may take advice with their *Lieutenant* and *Ensigne*, which of them they will appoint out to draw forth the *Muskettiers*, and which the *Pikes*, and whom they shall make the right hand *File-leader* of the *Muskettiers*, and who shall be the left; and again, who shall be the *Leader* of the right hand *File* of *Pikes*, and who shall be the left. For these four, being such remarkable places of Honour unto the knowing Souldier, that special care must be had in placing deserving men, to be there. Now it is, or ought to be the discretion of every *Lieutenant*, and *Ensigne*, (as being Commission-Officers) to resolve the *Sergeants* herein, that they may with more alacrity go on to draw the rest up between; and so to order unto each of them their perticuler duties, as to carry equall paines in drawing forth the *Files*. Therefore in respect, that for the most part in every Company, they have three *Sergeants*, two of them ought to take charge in drawing forth the *Muskettiers*, (being helpt by the advice of their *Lieutenant*.) and the other to draw forth the *Files* of *Pikes*, being assisted

affitted in Counsell by their *Ensignes*: for at such times the Officers ought not to be idle and to stand gazing upon each other, but every one according to his particular place and relation, should be very active and assisting to each other. In the drawing up the Company, the properest way will be then, as you may understand, in perfecting up a Company; to draw them forth into *Files*, and to make them six deep; as being our custome here in *England*, and farther to have care in choosing able Souldiers to be *File-leaders*, who having spent some time and pains in their *Files* in shewing them their *Postures*, they may be called to joyne into a Body.

For farther direction herein unto the *Sergeants* (whose proper place it doth belong unto) to observe this order in drawing up their *Files*, that they may ingrosse the *Files* into one Body by themselves, and the *Muskettiers* into another, and not to flank the *Pikes* until such time they shall perceive that in both Arms they are compleat. There are likewise severall places of honour that the *Sergeants* ought to take notice of, and to be informed of placing of men of worth and desert in both Armes, that is to say, in the Body of *Pikes*, and of the *Muskettiers*, which underneath by figures I shall set forth for farther satisfaction therein.

2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1
P P P P	P P P P	M M M M M M M M	M M M M M M M M				
P P P P	P P P P	M M M M M M M M	M M M M M M M M				
P P P P	P P P P	M M M M M M M M	M M M M M M M M				
P P P P	P P P P	M M M M M M M M	M M M M M M M M				
P P P P	P P P P	M M M M M M M M	M M M M M M M M				

Here I have set down the manner how the *Sergeants* should draw up their *Files* in each armes a part by themselves, and have figured forth unto them the foure chiefe places of honour in both armes. It concerns them therefore very much to minde and have regard to these particular places, and to order such men of worth there, which may be well deserving of the same, and those Gentlemen whom they shall thinke fit after to be worthy of *File-leaders* places, they are to draw them up between the figure (1) and the figure (4,) and between the figure (3) and the figure (2) and that rule to observe in both armes, and to be carefull to place good Souldiers in the *Rear*, and such who may be able Souldiers for *Halfe-file-leaders*, because there may be much occasion by doublings to bring them up for to assist the *Front*.

Thus much, I do confesse, may be sufficient for the present to give directions to the *Sergeants* for drawing up the *Files* and joyning them together. Next after I have shewn how to flank their *Pikes* with *Muskettiers*, I will set forth unto them and the *Drums*, where their places are upon a *stand*, and where to be upon a *march*.

Next followeth to flank the *band* of *Pikes* with the *Muskettiers*; command the Gentlemen of the *Pikes* to face to the right, and left half-ranks of *Muskettiers* to Face to the left, and then to march and interchange ground, facing after to their leaders, and closing *Files* inward to order, they will stand as underneath is set forth.

	C	
S 1	E	4 S
M M M M M M M M D D	P P P P P P P P D D	M M M M M M M M M M
M M M M M M M M	P P P P P P P P	M M M M M M M M
M M M M M M M M	P P P P P P P P	M M M M M M M M
M M M M M M M M	P P P P P P P P	M M M M M M M M
M M M M M M M M	P P P P P P P P	M M M M M M M M
M M M M M M M M	P P P P P P P P	M M M M M M M M
S 3	L	2 S

If it should happen as sometimes it doth, for a Company to be very large, as in a *Collo-nels*, why then they may have just cause to have foure *Sergeants* as I have thus placed them. But here again it will be expected of diverse Souldiers to shew some reasons for the placing

cing of the *Serjeants* being thus drawn up and upon a *stand*, which I shall endeavour fully for to doe, after I have set down where their places are upon the *march*. Now before we shall come to treat of the Company upon their long *march*, the *Captain* perceiving for his most conveniencie of marching in the fire or in a lane, that it will be convenient to divide his *Muskettiers* into equall divisions for their *march*, and therefore, according to this number here set down; they may be divided into four divisions, that is to say, two to march in the *Van* and two in the *Reer*, and two divisions of *Pikes*. But before they are moving, it is the *Serjeants* duty to come unto the *Captain*, to be informed from him where their proper places are to *march*, and what divisions each of them shall lead, and likewise to the *Drums*, to know their places where to beat upon the *march*. To answer to them all in the first place, the *Captain* ought to give directions to his youngest *Serjeant* to lead the second division of *Muskettiers* in the *Van*; the first division of *Pikes* being led by the *Ensigne*, he commands the second for to be led by his second *Serjeant*, and after orders or appoints the eldest *Serjeant* to lead the first division of *Muskettiers* of the *Reer-guard*, and the third *Serjeant* to lead the last division of *Muskettiers*, the *Lieutenant* bringing up the *Reer* and *Drums* commanded to fall in behinde the two first Ranks of each division, and to beat between the second Rank and fourth.

Having thus stated to them all their proper places, next it will be convenient for the *Captain* to command them to shoulder their Arms, both *Pikes* and *Muskettiers*, and the Officers and *Drums* taking all their places as before directed, they may begin to move and draw forth into a long March as followeth.

CHAP. XXIII.

*Severall reasons given for the placing of the Serjeants
after this manner:*

When a Body is drawn up in manner as before expressed; the *Captain* being Commander in chiefe, his discretion is to ballance the Officers as neer as he can with equall dignity and worth, his *Front* proportionally with the *Reer*. To which purpose he takes unto himselfe the youngest *Serjeant*, and places him on the right *Angle* in the *Front*, whereby he may be there ready to march down into the Body or elsewhere, according unto the discretion of the *Captain* to fulfill his commands, as also to stand there as a Spectator of the *Captains* actions, and an assistant which may be much improvement to him. And in like manner he commands the third *Serjeant* to the left *Angle* in the *Reer*; as being the second youngest, and may be a help unto his *Lieutenant* there, as the fourth is to him in the *Front*. The eldest *Serjeant*, he orders to the left *Angle*, in the *Front*, as being the most honourable place for him, being there ready to lead upon a march the *Van* of the *Reer-Guard*; & the second *Serjeant* he is appointed to stand on the right *Angle* of the *Reer*, to make them equall in dignity unto the *Front*. Now if you please to examine the dignity of the *Serjeants*, in the first place, as the first *Serjeant*, and the fourth, making the number (5) and after take a view of the second place, or *Reer*, and there you shall observe that the second *Serjeant*, and third, may every way ballance themselves, to be equivalent in the worth, with the first, and fourth, carrying with them a like the same number. So that it is cleerly evident, that the *Serjeants* are rightly stated in number, and dignity, the *Front* proportionably with the *Reer*, in the judgement of any knowing Soldier. Something more may be spoken of the second *Serjeants* place, which you may take notice in his *March*, to lead the second Division of *Pikes*, which is the most honourablest place of leading, that is appointed

C
MMMM
MMMM
D
MMMM
MMMM
MMMM
MMMM

4 S
MMMM
MMMM
MMMM
MMMM
MMMM
MMMM

E
PPPP
PPPP
D
PPPP
PPPP
PPPP
PPPP

2 S
PPPP
PPPP
PPPP
PPPP
PPPP
PPPP

1 S
MMMM
MMMM
D
MMMM
MMMM
MMMM
MMMM

3 S
MMMM
MMMM
MMMM
MMMM
MMMM
MMMM

D

forth

I.

forth unto the *Serjeants*, the first only excepted, and upon a *Stand*, when they shall lead up their *Divisions*, every *Serjeant* is to betake him unto his place, as they were at first placed, and to continue there untill such time they shall receive further order from their *Captain*. Thus much, I conceive, may give satisfaction unto the discreet Souldier, in these particulars, leaving them liberty to judge according unto their own best thoughts, while we endeavour to draw up our *Divisions* all a *Brest* again, and to make some description of a *Body*.

The *Captain* upon his *March* having attained some convenient place to draw up his Company, makes *Alt*, and commands the *Serjeants* to lead up their *Divisions*, upon the left, and causes the *Muskettiers* to open from the *Pikes*, making sufficient *intervals* for the *Drums*, to beat two a *Brest*, even with the *Front*, the first two between the right hand *File* leader of *Pikes*, and the *Muskettiers* upon the right, the second two *Drums* doing the like, upon the left. And always the *Captain* ought to march his Company after this manner all a *Brest*, provide he have ground sufficient for the same. And being far more gracefull so to do, then to march them stragling upon a long *March*, for it doth represent in some kinde the manner of marching of a *Regiment*, and at such times the *Serjeants* are to march upon the *Angles* as is before described, moving to and again, sometimes upon the *Flanks*, and causing the Souldiers to keep their Distance of order in *File*, and open order in *Rank*, and to march all even a *Brest*, and after to return again unto their places.

CHAP. XXIV.

Before I come to make description of a Body, I shall shew some further Reasons of the Serjeants places of lesser Companies, with the placing of the Drums.

IT happens many times, some Companies falls not out so large, as is before set forth, and that they have but three *Serjeants*, and therefore it would be known, when that they have but one *Division* of *Muskettiers* in the *Van*, two *Divisions* of *Pikes*, and one *Division* of *Muskettiers*, in the *Reer*, which is the *Reer-Guard*, where then the placing of these three *Serjeants*, and three *Drums*, shall be upon their long *March*, and where to be marching all a *Brest*. To which, I answer, in the first place, the youngest *Serjeant* is always to attend the *Captain*, and having no *Division* to lead, he is to be upon the right *Angle* of the *Front*, there expecting his *Captain's* pleasure and commands; and the second *Serjeant* is to lead the second *Division* of *Pikes*, and the eldest *Serjeant* to lead the last *Division* of *Muskettiers*, or the *Reer Guard*, here are their places upon the long *March*.

But when they are drawn up, and so march even a *Brest*, the youngest *Serjeants* place, as is before exprest, is to march upon the right *Angle* in the *Front*, and the eldest upon the left, the second *Serjeant* is to march in the right *Angle* in the *Reer*. They having their places thus stated, are to move sometimes up and down upon the *Flanks*, in their marching, causing the Souldiers to keep their due distance of order in *File*, and open order in *Rank*, and to march even a *Brest*, and after they may return unto their places again.

But here, me thinks, I meet with some Objector by the way, who saith, the eldest is much wronged herein; for that it is his proper place to be upon the right; that when *Forlorns* are drawn off against an *Enemy*, he is there ready first to lead them on, claiming it as his due, to give the first on-set, and therefore far more honour for him to be on the right, then on the left, and the youngest *Serjeant*, rather to be placed on the left, then on the right; as for the second *Serjeants* place, 'tis fit he should be in the *Reer*, to assist the *Lieutenant* there, he having none but he, to help him, if any occasion should require. To which, I answer, that it is the youngest *Serjeants* place to be upon the right *Angle*, either upon a *Stand*, or upon a *March*, and not the eldest; for these reasons following. The youngest *Serjeant* is not placed there for any honour that it is to him, for he hath no *Division* at all to lead upon the *March*, (except the Company be very great) and if so, he is placed so neer the *Captain*, to be serviceable to him to carry, and convey his pleasures unto all the rest of the Officers. As for the leading of the *Van-guard*, upon the *March*, the *Captain* takes that place unto himselfe; and it is far more honour unto the eldest *Serjeant* to be a Leader of the *Reer-Guard*, or entirely the left-*Flank*, then to lead a *Sub-division* of *Pikes*. And besides that, it is properest for his place to be upon the left, when they

they are all drawn up upon a *Brest*, for these two reasons; as first, he is thereupon in a readinesse, to take his due place, upon the sub-dividing on the long March; and again, upon a *Stand*, when they are all drawn up, and ready to engage against an Enemy, and the *Forlorn* to be drawn forth, equally alike from both *Flanks*, he is then as ready in the Front to execute his *Captains* Commands; the youngest *Serjeant*, being likewise sent to besomewhat helpfull to him, and attending after for further order from his *Captain*, to send him reliefe by the second *Serjeant*, as occasion shall require. So that in my judgement, take it either upon the long March, or others, when drawn all up even a *Brest*, all things are so stated, for his due honour and place, that he hath no reason to complain, nor any of the rest, having all their due, and proper places, which doth belong unto them.

As for the placing of the *Drums*, upon the long march, Every Division ought to have his *Drum* to fall between such Ranks, as before express; excepting only the second Division of *Pikes*, which may be excused, when they are to beat a March, as being all drawn up, they are to fall in two, to beat even a *Brest*, upon the right, and one, upon the left, as is before set down. If it should chance further in a Company, to be so small to have but three Divisions, that is to say, one Division of *Muskettiers*, in the *Van*, the Body of *Pikes* in the middle, and another Division of *Muskettiers*, to bring up the *Rear-Guard*; and having but two *Serjeants*, and two *Drums*; the youngest *Serjeants* place, will be as before mentioned, upon the right in the Front, and the eldest *Serjeant* upon the left, and to take his place to lead the last Division of *Muskettiers*, upon the long March; and the first *Drum* to beat in the first Division of *Muskettiers*, and the second to beat, and to march along amongst the *Pikes*. I have a little more enlarged my selfe in this discourse of placing of the *Serjeants*, then I at first intended; but meeting many times with severall Souldiers, desiring satisfaction in every one of these particulars, I shall perhaps undergo here the hard censure of some, for this my tedious discourse; but to such others which desires to be knowing herein, I hope will have a more favourable opinion of my good meaning unto them. And here I shall conclude for the present, concerning the peticular places of the *Serjeants* in every private Company; and now supposing, as by order from the *Captain*, the *Serjeants* have brought up their Divisions, standing again, as before, expecting something more to be spoken unto them, they silently stand to here what follows.

CHAP. XXIV.

A Description of a Body of men throughout, with all their severall parts, and kinds.

IT is a very necessary knowledge to every peticular Souldier, to be acquainted throughout with all the parts of a Body of men, drawn up, with their severall extents, and bounds, and with the true understanding of the same. Where first note the Description of *Files*; a *File* is a *Sequencia* of men, consisting of *Leaders*, and *Followers*, from the first, unto the last; the joyning of *Files* *Flank*-wise, maketh *Ranks*, and is the completing up of a Body; for one *File* alone cannot be said to have any *Ranks* in it, but joyning two, or more *Files* together unto one, you may account them (provided they be six deep) to have so many *Ranks* for number, as doth extend from their *Leaders* to their *Briganders* up. And further know, that a *Rank* is a Row of men, standing shoulder to shoulder, in an even line from the *left Flank* to the *right*; or from the out-most man upon the left, unto the out-most man upon the right, standing all in a row *File* wise. Neither can it be said of one *Rank*, to have any *Files* in it; for as the closing of *Files* to *Files*, makes *Ranks*, so the adding of *Ranks* to *Ranks*, makes *Files*.

As for the Depth of *Files*, they have in these latter Ages, much varied therein; sometimes making them sixteen deep, others ten, and eight deep, and now lately, they have brought them unto six deep, as being the custome of the *Swedes*, and the *French*, and altogether now the practise here in *England*. In which form and way, I purpose to walk; but to proceed to my former promise to the Souldier: There is in every Body of men, drawn up, consisting of *Pikes*, and *Muskettiers*, whether of greater or smaller number, it makes no matter; a *Front*, a *Rear*, a *Right-Flank*, and a *Left-Flank*; there is also *Front half-Files*, and *Rear half-Files*; there is a *Right half-Rank*, and a *Left half-Rank*; and there

there is a *Length*, and *Depth* of the Battail: and of every one of these in their severall kinds, they have their perticuler extents, and bounds, according to their number of men.

Therefore, take notice in the first place, that the *Front* is the first *Rank*, or row of men, which are the *File-leaders*, and chief men of their *Files*, who properly ought to take charge of their *Files*, being as it were their *Captains*, and leads them first on in the Brunt against a furious Enemy; the extent of the *Front* is from the left hand *File-Leader*, unto the *Leader* of the right hand *File*.

The *Rear* is the last Row or *Rank* of men, being the *Bringers-up* of the *Files*, who next the *Leaders* are the chiefest men of honour in the *File*, and are as it were unto them, their *Lieutenants*, and in the absence of the *Leaders*, they are to take charge of the *File*, and to instruct them in their *Postures*: the extent of the *Rear*, is from the *Bringer-up* of the left hand *File*, unto the place of the *Bringer-up* of the right.

The right *Flank* is the out-moſt *File*, upon the right, where always ought, by the way, to be very able Souldiers placed, because they first give on-set, or fire against the Enemy, if on that part they shall be charged; the extent of the right *Flank* is from the *Leader* of the right hand *File*, unto the *Bringer-up* of the same.

The left *Flank*, likewise is the out-moſt *File* upon the left, and his extent is from the *Leader* of the left hand *File*, unto the *Bringer-up*.

The *Front half-Files* extent or bounds, reacheth no further then from the *Front*, unto the midſt of *Ranks*, or to the *Bringers-up* of the *Front half-Files*, which being but six deep, is the third *Rank* from the *Front*, and the *Length* of the same reacheth from the out-moſt part of the left *Flank*, untill you come unto the right.

The *Rear half-Files* beginneth from the midſt of *Ranks*, or from the fourth *Rank* from the *Front*, and runneth downward in his *depth* to the *Bringer-up* of the whole *File*, and the *Length* of the same is to be taken side-wiſe, as they stand shoulder to shoulder, from the out-moſt man upon the left, unto the out-moſt man upon the right.

The right half *Ranks*, in their *Length*, runneth no further, then from the out-moſt man upon the right, unto the midſt of *Files*, or to the left hand *File-leader* of the right half-*Ranks*; the *Depth* of the right half-*Ranks* reacheth from the *Front*, running down unto to the *Rear*.

As for the left half-*Ranks*, as much may be ſaid, to take his *Length*, from the midſt of *Files*, or from the right hand *File-leader*, of the left half-*Ranks* unto the out-moſt *Files* upon the left; the *Depth* of the left half-*Ranks*, may be understood in form and manner, conformable to the right.

Next come we to ſpeak of the *Length* and *Depth* of the whole Battail; the *Length* of the Battail is ever to be accounted of the number of men in a *Rank*, and not in a *File*; for the *Files* perhaps may not be above six deep, when that there may be hundreds in a Breſt in the *Ranks*, and farther the *Length* of any Battail is to be taken from the out-moſt point of the left-*Flank*, or left-hand *File-leader*, ſtretching it ſelfe forth by an even *Line* along, untill you come to the outmoſt point of right *Flank*, or right-hand *File-leader*; the *Depth* of the Battail always is to be taken from the *Front*, or first *Rank*, and going down backward in a ſtraight *Line* down to the *Rear*, to the last *Rank*, or to the *Bringers-up* of the *Files*. For as the *Length* of the Battail is to be taken from the left *Flank*, going a long in *Front* unto the right, ſo the *Depth* of the Battail is to be taken from the *Front*, going backward down to the *Rear*.

There is alſo to be understood that in every *Battalia* drawn up, there are other parts and Denominations, very conſiderable to be known; that is, in every ſuch an one, there is a *Van-Guard*, a *Rear-Ward*, and *Main-Battail*. The *Van-guard* are the *Muskettiers*, upon the right, or the right *Flank*; or as moſt commonly called amongst us in theſe dayes, the *Right-wing*, or the *Left-wing*, which are the *Muskettiers*, and the *Flankers* of the Body of *Pikes*, therefore, as I conceive, the *Muskettiers* are accounted and called *Wings*, is because they are first drawn off, as by flying motion in *Forlorns*, to ingage against an Enemy; but of this by the way, to proceed: the *Rear-Ward*, or *Rear-Guard*, are the *Muskettiers*, on the left *Flank*; and the Battail is the Body of *Pikes*, and here I ſhall conclude concerning the Description of a Body.

CHAP. XXVI.

Directions to all such as shall desire to exercise a Foot-Company, with some admonitions to the Souldiers, as shall be exercised by them.

HE that intends to exercise a Body of men, must truly know what he shall command, and so to give his directions unto the Souldiers, as they may aptly make ready execution of the same. He must at such times, above all the rest, assume unto himself the confidence & presence (as near as he is able) of a compleat Souldier. He is also to stretch out his voice so, as he may conveniently be heard, & understood by the inferior Officers, and Souldiers; which will cause them more readily to obey his Commands. He ought to carry a cheerful countenance unto them, provided they do well; but otherwise, if carelessly dis-regarding his Commands, he may look harshly upon them. His eyes ought to be quick and nimble, observing all their Motions, whether it be to the right, or left, to the *Front*, or *Rear*; and nimble stepping to them, to stay them, if disorderly they swerve awry from what he first intended. He must likewise order all his Words of Command so, as that they may be proper, and clearly pronounced forth unto the Souldier, without any faltering. And in every one of these, to see the Souldier leisurely and easily perform the same in a compleat manner. He must not be too quick in his Words of Command, but carefully see what before commanded, well done, and then he may proceed unto the next. In time of his Exercise, he must seriously mind what he is to do, and not to have his thoughts extravagantly carried away upon any other Subject, for fear he be out, but if any such thing should happen through forgetfulness, he ought not to be daunted, but to pull up the Spirit of a Souldier as well as he can, and endeavour to reduce them again. For it is a rare thing to be found, for a *Leader* to be so exquisite in his Exercising, as not to be sometimes out; and in my observation of most, at one time or another, I have found them so to be. His discretion also ought to be such, as to cull out, and chuse those things that be chiefest; as flowers out of a Garden, to fit and compleat up his Exercise in a Souldier-like way; which may be most properest for service and use, which will bring to him far more commendations and praise in the judgement of every knowing Souldier, then to spend his time upon unnecessary toys; but yet sometimes to please the fancy of the curious, at their private meetings, he may use some things for delight, to support and uphold their private Exercises; which have must up, here in *London*, many able Souldiers, and Commanders; who have been serviceable to our Nation. It is a very necessary thing likewise that a *Leader* sometimes do acquaint the Souldiers of the use of their severall *Distances*, *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Countermarches*, and *wheelings*, and of all things else he shall command; but in such a manner, that he dwell not too long upon anything, he shall declare unto them, for dulling of the Souldiers, who rather would be pleased with more actions, then by too much talkings; which spins out the time, as sometimes ordered, to very little purpose. He must be very careful of every Word of Command he gives, that the Souldiers be ordered in their due *Distance*, suitable to the same, of what kind soever it be; and if it shall be lost in their movings, or marchings; he must endeavour to bring them to it again. He is likewise to acquaint the Souldiers when they are drawn up, to look about them, and to minde their severall places, how they stand in the Body, whether they be in even *Ranks* from the *Front*, or odd; if even, and upon any doubling of *Ranks*, they are the men to double the odd; if half *File-leaders*, that they be commanded to double the *Front*; they must advance their Arms, and are *Leaders* of that Motion to come up to double the *Front*: if *Bringers-up* commanded to double, they are a like to do the same; if *Bringers-up* of the *Front half-Files*, and that they be commanded to double the *Rear*, they likewise are to advance their Arms; to face about, and are to begin to lead them down to the *Rear*. They should likewise take notice, how they stand in their *Files*, whether even from the right, or no; if even, and there be any command to double *Files* to the right, they all are to move, and to double the odd; if commanded to double to the left, they then stand odd, and the others are to move, and double them. They likewise are to mind their places, who are upon the *Flanks*; for a doubling either to *Front*, or *Rear*, by the *half-Files*, they first begin to march, and how they stand there as right, and left-hand men in even *Ranks*; for by any doublings of *Ranks* entire, or by *Division*, they likewise are the *Leaders* of the Motion. There ought also advice be given to the middle *File-leaders*, to know their places; for if there should be any doublings of the *half-Ranks*, they then are first to move, and to begin the Motion.

This caution being sometimes quickly run over in advising of the Souldiers, that they should ever minde when they are first drawn up into a body these particular places, they would not stand so carelessly and so ignorantly in a Body, as many times they doe, not knowing which way to move without a great deale of pains and directions from their *Leader*, for there being so many occasions of *doublings* of these kinds, that it is a necessary thing for every Souldier to be acquainted with the same.

Yet it is not only sufficient that the Souldiers doe minde their places as they stand in a body, according to the direction of their *Leader*, as before set forth unto them, but that they be likewise, in the time of their Exercise, very silent in the body, and helpfull unto their fellow-Souldiers by pointing out unto them with signes with the hand, where they should march, to performe what was before commanded, and to be very civill, and orderly in their carriage to each other, and to minde their Exercise so as a matter of great weight, and high consideration in the well regarding of the same. And if a word of command (as sometimes may happen) slip out of order, as by the mistaking of a hand or the like, yet neverthelesse it should be their modest care, if not prevented by him, to be ready to execute what they conceive he intended, and walking along in this civill and respective way unto him that shall lead them, it will not only be a great encouragement unto him, but they will also reap much benefit unto themselves.

And thus much briefly may be spoken in way of advice unto every *Leader* before his beginning of his Exercise, and unto each particular Souldier as shall by him be exercised.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Facings, of their severall kindes, and of their use, with the words of command for performance of the same.

Facing is the altering or turning of the Aspect to either hand upon the ground they stand, according to the words of command, whether it be to the right, left, *Front* or *Reer*, or to the midst of *Files* or *Ranks*, or to any of the outward or inward *Angles*, or to the *Center*.

The manner of execution of the same, is a particular turning of every Souldiers countenance unto each of those hands or places as above exprest, and to be performed after this manner. The left foot is alwayes to be kept fixed like the *hinge* of a door, and unto what hand or part they shall be commanded to face, every particular Souldier is immediately to turn his body upon the *ball* or *center* of his left foot by *wheeling*, untill he hath brought his *Aspect* unto the place commanded.

Facings is one of the most necessary and usefullest motions amongst all the rest, for when the body shall be in such a streight that they cannot bring their faces against an enemy by a *Counter march* or by a *Wheeling*, to bring their best Souldiers there to fight, and likewise being debarred of room that they cannot *double* it, neverthelesse, *facings* are of such excellent use, that they may with ease, although standing at close Order, turn every particular face to charge upon that part where they shall be assaulted by an enemy, and farther, this motion is performed with more facility then all the rest of the motions. For in the others they alter the forme of the Battail or changeth the place, but in this they preserve both, and it is ready for any attempt of an enemy if they should be charged all at once in *Front*, *Reer*, *Right* and *Left Flanks*, they may be commanded so to face as to answer them all in every one of their charges.

Facings likewise are so necessary that they can hardly be spared in any other of the motions having relation in one kinde or other to them, all sort to be used: There is likewise farther to be understood that there are *entire facings* and *divisionall*. *Entire facings* are when they turn their *Aspects* all one way: *Divisionall facings* are when they diver or turn their faces severall ways, as to the *Front*, *Reer*, and both *Flanks*, all at one instant of time as shall be commanded.

There are likewise *facings* to the *front* and *reer Angles*, that is to say, of their *outward* and *inward Angles*. *Outward Angles* are when they are commanded to face to the *right Angle* or to the left, or both facing to the *inward Angles*, as when they are commanded so, as to face to the *inward Angles* towards the midst of *files*. There is likewise *facing* to the inward

ward *Angles* towards the midst of *Ranks* as to the *Center*, where note, when there is any use of these *facings* unto the *inward Angles*, it is occasioned by some former words of command, that hath made some large *intervalls* in the midst of *Ranks* or *Files*, and therefore they may give them such commands as these for to open or stand so, that they may march and close again as at first.

This *facings* to the *Center*, I do conceive, to be very, usefull, when the *Captain* or *Leader* hath any thing of importance to speake unto the Company; they standing at close order, he may sidewise move down into the midst of the *Ranks* and *Files*, and command them to face all to the *Center*; they standing all round about him so close; cannot choose but hear and know what his pleasure and command will be, and in obedience thereunto, be very ready in performance for the execution of the same.

But before I come to set down the words of command for *facings*, I shall desire all *Leaders* not to tie themselves up so as not to begin in their Exercise to command *facings*, untill they have brought the souldiers to stand at open order both in *Rank* and *File*, as if it were not proper for them to command them to face till then. Therefore rather, for the reasons before set forth, command them to choose upon such close *Distances* to face, that they may know the true use of them, and at such times when they want ground that the other motions cannot be performed.

CHAP. XXVIII.

The words of command for Facings.

Right,
Left,
To both Flanks,

Right } about,
Left }

To Front and Reer,
Midst of Files,
Midst of Ranks,

Right } Angle,
Left }

Outward Angles in the Front,
Inward Angles in the Front,

Face to the

Right } Angle in the Reer.
Left }

Outward } Angles in the Reer,
Inward }

Inward Angles of the right Flank,
Inward Angles of the left Flank,

Outward } Angles both of Front and Reer,
Inward }

Inward Angles of both the Flanks to the Center.
Front, Reer and both Flanks from the Center,
To the outward Angles of Front and Reer from the Center.

As you were, or,
to your Leader.

Having concluded the words of command for performing of plain *Facings*, there must be notice taken when any word of command shall be given to face to any of the *Reer Angles*, they must be first faced to the *Reer*, and they will make more easier performance of the same; and likewise, if any word of command be given to face to the *inward Angles* upon the Flanks, they must face them there likewise first, and it will be easier fulfilled: and likewise if any command be given to face to the four *Angles*, or to *Front*, *Reer*, and *Midst* from the *Center*, care must be first had that they may be first faced to the *Center*.

I might have proceeded a great deal farther in this place upon this Subject of *Facings*, to have shewn severall *figures* of Battail, that might be produced and drawn forth, affording much variety of formes and number, and with much ease to be performed upon their severall marchings; according as they are ordered to face, which might be very usefull for service, and affording much matter for any perticuler Exercise, to use severall firings upon the same. But I shall have occasion in another place to make use of divers of them, and setting them forth unto the view, when I shall begin to set down in any perticuler Leacings of my own, which I have performed in our private meetings at *Town-Ditch* in *London*, every Thursday morning, for the satisfaction of those loving Gentlemen, who still do exercise there, and to such which shall come after.

CHAP. XXIX.

The many variety of Doublings, with their parts and uses set forth, for the practise of any Commander, to make use of according unto his own description.

Since there is in the true account, no other dimension of a Battail, but the *Length* and *Depth*, so likewise it is to be understood, that the *Length* of the Battail, is doubled by the *doublings* of *Fanks*, and *half-files*; and the *Depth* of the Battail is doubled by the *doubling* of *Files*, and of the *half Ranks*. Now there are severall Words of Command for the performance of each of these, as to *double Ranks* and *Files*, which do consist either of the *doubling* of number of men, and persons, and not of place, or else the *doubling* both of number, and place; as for example, command either the *Ranks*, the *half-files*, or *Bringers-up* to double the *Front* to the right; here only is the *doubling* of number of men, and not of place, for it adds but one man more to that hand, whereunto they were commanded, and gains but his perticuler place. Again, *Double Ranks* to any hand *intire* or *double*, the *Front* by the *half-files* to the right *intire*, it will be not only a *doubling* of the number of men, but a *doubling* of the place, and the *Length* of the Battail. The use of *doubling* the *Length* of the Battail may be for two reasons, the one to overwing an Enemy, the other to avoid overwinging our selves. Yet there must be care taken, that in *doubling* of the *Length*, that we faile not, or be too weak in our *Depth*, for the want of both, either *Length* or *Depth*, may be very dangerous to our selves, and may give great advantage to the Enemy. For if there should want a sufficient *Depth*, by gaining much *Length* in the *Front*, we may perhaps be so weak there, that an Enemy may quickly break through, whereby much danger may insult upon the same, if not timely prevented by the discretion of the Commanders.

There is likewise in the *doubling* of *Files*, or the *half-files*, or the *half-Ranks*, *doubling* to either *Flank*, a *doubling* of number of men, and not of place, carrying much variety of Words of Command; but the *doubling* of *Files*, and of the left *half-Ranks intire*, the *Depth* of the right *Flank*, is not only a *doubling* of the number, but a *doubling* of the place and *depth* of the Battail. In this *doubling* of the *Depth*, care likewise must be had, that we make not the *Front* too narrow, lest we give opportunity to the Enemy to *incircle*, and *incompass* it. To conclude, therefore take notice that *Doublings* were invented to strengthen any part of the body that shall be weak; whether in the *Front*, or *Keer right Flank*, or *left*, whether it be in number of men, or place; *Length*, or *Depth*, it is to be used according to the discretion of the Commander. There is likewise farther to be considered in *Doublings*, whether they double the number or place, *Length* or *Depth*, it is to be performed by one of these two, either *intire*, or *divisionall Doublings*; therefore I shall proceed, and go on to shew what, I conceive, to be the properest way in the progresse of them, in a right order; and therefore I will begin to set down the Words of Command, first, to double the *Front*, and so farther proceed to shew the *Doublings* of the *Flanks*. And first of *intire Doublings*, and next of the *divisionall*; and in the meantime, I shall crave pardon from the courteous Souldier, that I put not down severall *prices* or *figures*, to set forth the same, endeavouring rather to give him the Words of Command for each perticuler *Doubling*, with directions for performance of the same, together with their severall reductions, leaving it to his ingenious study and practise, to make use of what he pleaseth, where he may cull and chuse

chuse out such as shall be convenient, and fit, either for service, or delight; by the way advising him to retain in his memory, what he intends to practise, and not to meddle with any thing, but what he assuredly knows will carry such weight and able reasons for their use and service, as shall admit of no controulment from the judicious Souldier.

CHAP. XXX.

The Words of Command, for all Intire Doublings to the Front, to be performed one time or other, in time of Exercise.

Command. Ranks to the Right double.

Direction. Every even Rank move forward with the right leg, and with three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Files to the left double; Or, Ranks as you were.

Command. Ranks to the left double.

Direction. Every even Rank, from the Front, move forwards with the left leg, and at three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Files to the right double; or, Ranks as you were.

Command. Ranks to the right and left, double outward.

Direction. Every even Rank move outward, from the midst, & at three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Files to the right and left, double inward; or, Ranks as you were.

Command. Ranks to the right and left, double inward.

Direction. Every even Rank from the Front move inward from the Flanks, and at three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Files to the right and left, double outward; or, Ranks as you were.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right.

Direction. Half-files advance your Arms, and move forwards to the right into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the left; or, half-files as you were.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the left.

Direction. Half-files advance forwards to the left into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the right; or, half Files as you were.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right and left, outward.

Direction. Half-files advance forwards to the right and left, from the midst, and move up into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the right and left inward; or, half-files as you were.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right and left inward.

Direction. Half-files move forwards from the Flanks inward into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the right & left outward; or, half-files as you were.

Command. Bringers-up double your Front to the right.

Direction. Bringers-up advance your Arms, and move forwards with the right leg into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the left, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.

Command. Bringers-up double your Front to the left.

Direction. Bringers-up advance forwards to the left, into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the right, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.

Command. Bringers-up double your Front to the right and left outward.

Direction. Bringers-up advance forward from the midst of the Rear, to the right and left into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the right and left inward, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.

Command. Bringers-up double your Front to the right and left inward.

Direction. Bringers-up advance forwards from the Flanks, inward into the Front.

Reducement. Files double your Depth to the right and left outward, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.

Command. Double your Ranks to the right intire.

Direction. Every even Rank from the Front face to the right, march forth, & double the odd.

Reducement. Right half-ranks double your left Flank, or, ranks as you were.

Command. Double your Ranks to the left intire.

Direction. Every even rank from the Front, face to the left, march forth, & double the odd.

Reducement. Left-half-ranks double your right Flank; or, Ranks as you were.

Command. Double your Ranks inward intire.

Direction. Every even rank from the Reer, move away outward untill you be cleer of the standing part, and after every even Rank from the Front, move forwards, and double the odd.

Reducement. The in-moſt Files double your Flanks to the right and left, outward, and after cloſe.

Command. Double your Ranks to the right intire, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right-hand man.

Direction. Every even rank from the Front, move away to the right, and place your ſelves on the outſide of your right-hand men, and double the odd Ranks.

Reducement. Right-half-ranks double your left Flank, every man placing himſelf on the inſide of his left-hand man.

Command. Double your Ranks to the left intire, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his left-hand man.

Direction. Every even rank from the Front, move away to the left, and double the odd Ranks, by placing your ſelves on the outſide of your left-hand men.

Reducement. Left-half-ranks double your right Flank, every man placing himſelf on the inſide of his right-hand man.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right intire.

Direction. Half-files face to the right, and march cleer of the ſtanding part, after face to your Leader, move up even a Breſt, and double the Front.

Reducement. Right-half-ranks double intire, the Depth of your left Flank.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the left intire.

Direction. Half-files face to the left, and march cleer of the ſtanding part, after face to your Leader, march up, and even the Front.

Reducement. Left-half-ranks double intire the Depth of your right Flank.

Command. Half-files double your Front inward intire.

Direction. Front-half-files face outwards, and march cleer of the ſtanding part, facing after to their Leader, the Reer-half-files may move up, and double the Front.

Reducement. The in-moſt Files double intire the Depth of the out-moſt Files, and after cloſe.

Theſe are as I conceive, the propereſt and plaineſt *Doublings* for any Souldier to uſe in his Exerciſe, out of which he may chooſe as many of them, as he ſhall think fit, being all intire *Doublings* to the Front; next followa to ſhew ſome *Diviſionall Doublings* to the ſame.

CHAP. XXXI.

Diviſionall Doublings to the Front.

Command. **D**ouble your Ranks to the right and left by Diviſion.

Direction. Every even Rank from the Front face outwards, march forth, and double the odd.

Reducement. The out-moſt Files upon each Flank that moved, face inwards march in, and ſtrengthen the Body.

Command. Double your Ranks to the right and left by Diviſion, every man placing himſelf on the outſide of his right and left-hand man.

Direction. Every even Rank from the Front, move forth to the right and left outward, and double the odd, placing your ſelves on the outſide of your right and left-hand men.

Reducement. The out-moſt Files upon each Flank, that moved, double the in-moſt Files to the right and left inward, every man placing himſelf on the inſide of his right and left-hand man.

Command. Half-files double your Front by Diviſion.

Direction. Half-files face outwards, and march cleer of the ſtanding part, after face to your Leader, move up even a Breſt, and double the Front.

Reducement. The out-moſt Files upon each Flank, that moved, double intire the Depth of the in-moſt Files.

CHAP. XXXII.

Intire Doublings to the Front by Wheelings.

Command. **W**Heele off your Reer half-files, and double your Front to the right intire.

Direction. Half-files face about, and wheel about to the left, march up, and even the Front.

Reducement. Wheel off your right half Ranks, and double your left Flank, intire to the left. Face outward, and Right half Ranks wheel about to the right, moving forward untill they range even a Brest with their left Flank, to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your Reer half-files, and double your Front to the left intire.

Direction. Half-files face to the Reer, and wheel about to the right, move forwards, and double the Front to the left intire.

Reducement. Wheel off your left half-Ranks, and double your right Flank intire to the right. Face outward left half-Ranks, wheel about to the left, and move forward untill you have doubled the right Flank, to your Leader.

Command. Wheel your Reer half-files inward into the midst, and double your Front inward intire.

Direction. Front-half-files open from the midst, untill you be clear of the standing part; then face to your Leader; half-files face about, and wheel your Reer inward into the midst, move forward, untill you have doubled the Front.

Reducement. The in-most files that doubled, wheel about to the right and left outward, and double intire the Depth of the out-most files, after face to your Leader, and close files to the midst to order.

The in-most Files must have distance from the out-most Files, before they can begin to wheel.

CHAP. XXXIII.

A Divisionall Doubling to the Front by Wheeling.

Command. **W**Heele off your Reer half-files, and double your Front by Division.

Direction. Half-files face to the Reer, and wheel about to the right and left, move forward, and double the Front.

Reducement. The out-most files upon each Flank that doubled, wheel about to the right and left inward, and double intire the Depth of the in-most files, face to your Leaders.

Here likewise must convenient distance be given from the midst, for the out-most Files to wheel about.

Here endeth the *Doublings*, that properly belong unto the *Front* according to the practise of these times, whether they be *Intire*, or *Divisionall*, and of their severall kinds; as first, take them of themselves in the plain way, after by *Counter-marches*, as by the *Bringers-up*. Lastly, by *Wheelings*, and that first, by *Intire*, after *Divisionall*. But here by the way, no Leader is tied to do all these *Doublings* in his Exercise at once, but to use part of them what he shall think fit. Yet, again, if he desire to be thoroughly knowing in all the *Doublings* of *Front*, *Reer*, and both *Flanks*; and to shew them unto the Souldiers, he may then begin first to go over all the Words of Command for *Doublings* to the *Front*, informing his Souldiers of their severall uses for service, at one time or another, and then proceed to shew the use of the severall *Doublings* to the *Flanks*, and next to the *Reer*, which in this place I hold needlesse to give Words of Command for the *Doubling* thereunto, in regard the former Words of Command used to the *Front*, with small alteration, will serve to the *Reer*.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Intire Doublings to the right Flank.

Command. **F**iles to the right double.

Direction. Every even file from the right by a half turning at three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Ranks to the left double; or files as you were.

Command. Files to the right and left, double outward.

Direction. Every even file from the flanks move, and by three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Ranks to the right and left double inward; or files as you were.

Command. Double your files to the right and left inward.

Direction. Every even File from the midst move inward side-wise, and double the odd.

Reducement. Ranks to the right and left double outward; or files as you were.

Command. Double your files to the right advancing.

Direction. Every even file from the right move forwards, and by three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Ranks to the right double.

Command. Double your files outward advancing.

Direction. Every even file from the Flanks, move forwards, and by three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Ranks to the right and left double outward.

Command. Double your files to the right and left inward advancing.

Direction. Every even file from the midst move forwards, and by three steps double the odd.

Reducement. Ranks to the right and left double inward.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right Flank to the right.

Direction. Face all to the right, and left half-Ranks move forwards to the right, and double your right Flank to your Leader.

Reducement. Double your Ranks to the left intire; or left half-Ranks march forth into your places.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right Flank to the left.

Direction. Face all to the right, and left half-Ranks move forwards to the left untill you have doubled the right Flank to your Leader.

Reducement. Double your Ranks to the right intire to the Reer, face to the Retr, and the even Ranks from the Reer, move forth, and double the odd to your Leader.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right Flank to the right and left outward.

Direction. Face all to the right; and left half-Ranks move to the right and left outward, and double your right Flank to your Leader.

Reducement. Front and Reer half-files double your Ranks intire to the left Flank; Front half-files face about, and every even Rank from the midst move forth, and double Ranks intire towards the left Flank, face to your Leader.

Command. Left half-Ranks double your right Flank to the right and left inward.

Direction. Face all to the right; and left half-Ranks move forwards to the right and left inward, and double the right Flank, face to your Leader.

Reducement. Front and Reer half-files double your Ranks intire to the left Flank; half-files face about, and every even Rank from the Front and Reer, move forth, and double your Ranks intire towards the left Flank, face to your Leader.

Command. Left half-ranks double your right Flank to the right by Countermarch.

Direction. Right half-ranks face to the right, left half-ranks turn off to the left, move forwards, and double your right Flank, face to your Leader.

Reducement. Double your Ranks to the left intire, every man placing himself on the out-side of his left-hand man.

Command. Left half-ranks double your right Flank to the left by Countermarch.

Direction. Right half-ranks face to the right, and left half-ranks turn off to the right, and double your right Flank to the left, face to your Leader.

Reducement. Double your ranks to the right intire to the reer, every man placing himself on the out-side of his right-hand man; face to the reer, and every even rank from the reer, move forth to the right, and double the odd, face to your Leader.

Command. Left half-ranks double your right Flank to the right and left outward by Countermarch.

Direction. Right half-ranks face to the right, and left half-ranks face to the left, and turn off to the right and left, moving forward untill you have doubled the right Flank to the right and left outward; face to your Leader.

Reducement. Front & Reer half-files double your Ranks intire to the left-Flank, every man placing himself on the out-side of his right & left-hand man; Front half-files face about, & every even rank from the midst move forth to the left-Flank, and double the odd, placing yourselves on the out-side of your right-hand men, and every even rank from the Reer half-files,

files, move forth, and double the odd, placing your selves on the out-side of your left-hand men : face to your Leader.

Command. *Left half-ranks* double your *right-Flank* to the right and left inward, by Countermarch.

Direction. Face all to the right and left out-ward ; *left half-Ranks* turn off to the right and left inward, move forward untill you have doubled the *right Flank*, face to your Leader.

Reducement. *Front* and *Reer half-files* double your *Ranks* intire to the *left-Flank*, every man placing himself on the out-side of his right and left-hand man ; *half-files* face about, and every even *Rank* from the *Reer*, move forth to the *left Flank*, and double the odd, placing your selves on the out-side of your right-hand men ; and every even *Rank* from the *Front* move forth, and double the odd ; placing your selves on the out-side of your left-hand men, face to your Leader.

Command. Double your *Files* to the right intire advancing.

Direction. Every even *File* from the right, move straight forth untill you be cleer, and double the odd.

Reducement. *Half-files* double your *Front* to the right ; or *Front half-files* double your *Reer* to the right.

Command. *Files* double your *Depth* to the right intire.

Direction. Every even *File* from the right face about, move down, untill you are cleer of the *Reer*, and double the *Depth* of the odd *Files* ; face to your Leader.

Reducement. *Half-files* double your *Front* to the left ; or *Front half-files* double your *Reer* to the left.

Command. Double your *Files* inward intire to the right.

Direction. *Half-files* of every even *File* from the left, face about ; even *Files* from the left move forwards untill you are cleer of the standing part, after face all to the right, and then every even *File* from the right, move forwards into the *Interwalls*, and double intire the odd, face to your Leader.

Reducement. The three first, and the three last *Ranks*, double the six middle-most *Ranks* to the right ; the three first *Ranks* face about, and move down to the midst by their own left-hands ; and the three last *Ranks* move forwards to the midst, to their own right-hands ; face to your Leader.

Command. Double your *Files* to the right intire, advancing, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Direction. Every even *File* from the right, advance forwards, and double the odd, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Reducement. *Front half-files* by Countermarch double your *Reer*, to the right ; *Front half-files* turn off to the left, and double the *Reer*, face to your Leader.

Command. *Files* double your *Depth* to the right, every man falling behind his *Bringer-up*.

Direction. Every even *File* from the right, face about to the right, and double the odd, by placing your selves behind your *Bringers-up*.

Reducement. *Bringers-up* double your *Front* to the left.

Command. *Left half-Ranks* double your *right Flank* intire advancing.

Direction. *Left half-Ranks* march straight forth, untill you are cleer of the standing part, after move to the right, being first faced there, and double the *right Flank*, face to your Leader.

Reducement. *Front half-files* double your *Reer* to the right intire, face to the left, and move cleer of the standing part, after face to the *Reer*, move down, and even the *Reer* ; face to your Leader.

Command. *Left half-Ranks* double intire the *Depth* of the *right Flank*.

Direction. *Left half-Ranks* face about to the right, and move down, untill you are cleer of the standing part, after face to the left, and move forward, untill you have doubled the *Depth* of your *right Flank* ; face to your Leader.

Reducement. *Half-files* double your *Front* to the left intire, face to the left, and march cleer of the standing part, after face to your Leader, march up, and even the *Front*.

Command. *Left half-Ranks* double your *right-Flank* inward intire.

Direction. *Half-files* of the *right half-Ranks* face to the *Reer*, *right half-Ranks* move forward

forward untill you are cleer of the standing part, face all to the right, and *left half-Ranks* move forwards, and double the *right Flank*; face to your *Leader*.

Reducement. The three first, and the three last ranks double the six middle-most ranks, intire to the *right Flank*; the three first, and the three last ranks, face to the right, and march untill you are cleer of the standing part, after face inward, march, and close your *Divisions*, and face to your *Leader*.

CHAP. XXXV.

Divisionall Doublings to the right Flank.

Command.

Double your *Files* to the right by *Division*.

Direction. *Half-files* of the even *Files* from the right, face to the *Reer*; even *Files* march cleer of the standing part, after move to the right and left, and double the odd *Files*, face to your *Leader*.

Reducement. The three first, and the three last ranks, double the six middle-most ranks to the left; the three first ranks face about, and march down by your own right hands into the midst of ranks; and the three last ranks move forwards to the midst, to your own left hands, face to your *Leader*.

Command. Double your *Files* to the right by *Division*, every man placing himself before his *Leader*, and his *Bringer-up*.

Direction. *Half-files* of the even *Files* from the right, face to the *Reer*, the even *Files* march, and double the odd, every man placing himself before his *Leader*, and *Bringer-up*; face to your *Leader*.

Reducement. The three first, and the three last ranks, double the six middle-most ranks to the left, every man placing himself before his *Leader*, and his *Bringer-up*; the three first ranks face about to the left, and move down to the midst of ranks by your own right hands, placing your selves before your *Bringers-up*; and the three last ranks march forwards unto the midst, placing your selves before your *Leaders*; to your *Leader*.

Command. *Left half-Ranks* double your *right Flank* by *Division*.

Direction. *Half-files* of the *left half-Ranks* face about to the right, the *left half-Ranks* move cleer of the standing part, after face all to the *right Flank*, the *left half-Ranks* moving forward, untill they have ranged even a *Brest* with the *right Flank*; face to your *Leader*.

Reducement. The three first, and the three last ranks, double the six middle-most ranks intire to the *left-Flank*; the three first, and the three last ranks, face to the *left-Flank*, and move cleer of the standing part, after face inward, march and close your *Divisions*, face to your *Leader*.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Intire Doublings to the right Flank by Wheeling.

Command.

Wheel off your *left half-Ranks*, and double your *right Flank* intire to the right.

Direction. Face outward, and *left half-Ranks* wheel about to the left, and move forward untill you have doubled the *right Flank* intire to the right; face to your *Leader*.

Reducement. Wheel off your *Reer half-files*, and double your *Front* to the left intire; *half-files* face to the *Reer*, and wheel about to the right, and march forwards untill you have ranged your selves even with the *Front*.

Command. Wheel off your *left half-Ranks*, and double your *right Flank* intire to the left.

Direction. Face outward *left half-Ranks*, wheel about to the right, and move forward untill you have doubled the *right Flank* intire to the left, face to your *Leader*.

Reducement. Wheel off your *Front half-files*, and double your *Reer* to the right intire, *half-files* face about, and *Front half-files* wheel about to the left, move down, and double the *Reer* to the right, face to your *Leader*.

Command. Wheel the *left half-Ranks* inward into the midst, and double your *right Flank* inward intire.

Directions.

Direction. Half-files of the right half-Ranks face about, right half-Ranks move clear of the standing part, then face to the right, and the left half-Ranks face to the left, and wheeling inward into the midst, moving forward untill they have doubled the right Flank inward intire, to your Leader.

Reduement. Wheel off from the right Flank, the six middle-most Ranks, and double your Front and Reer intire to the left Flank, the six middle Ranks face to the right, and wheel about to the right, and left, moving forward, untill they are clear of the standing part, and after facing to the Front and Reer, they move again, and double the Front and Reer, toward the left Flank, face all to your Leader, march forwards, and close your Divisions.

Or if they continue their aspect to the right Flank, then command the six middle-most Files to wheel off to the right and left, and to double intire the Depth of the out-most Files, then face to their Leader, and close their Divisions.

In wheeling the six middle Ranks from the right Flank, they must have ground sufficient for them to wheel about.

CHAP. XXXVII.

A Divisionall Doubling to the right Flank by Wheeling.

Command. **W**heel off your left half-Ranks, and double your right Flank by Division.

Direction. Face outward, and left half-Ranks wheele off to the right and left about, and move forward untill you have ranged even, and doubled the right Flank, to your Leader.

Reduement. Wheel off the three first, and the three last ranks, and double the six middle-most ranks intire to the left Flank, the three last ranks face about, and wheel to the right, about moving up towards the midst of the left Flank, and the three first ranks at the same time wheel about to the left, and move down to the midst of the left Flank, face to your Leader.

Or if they continue their aspect to the right Flank, then command the out-most Files to that doubled to wheel about to the right and left inward, and double intire the Depth of the in-most Files to your Leader.

Here endeth all the plain *Doublings* to the right Flank, performed by severall *Counter-marches*, and *Wheelings*, which to any ingenious Souldier are sufficient directions to know how to double the left Flank, only altering the hand by the Words of Command.

And here Fellow-Souldier endeth all the severall kinds of *Doublings*, which if any shall seem hard or difficult unto thee, either in their Commands, Directions, or Reduements, thou must (care being taken) with much ease and delight performe the same. And here the *Captain* is to take speciall notice, when he comes to the point of *Doublings*, that his properest way, and will be first to double the *Front*, as being the most honourable part of the Body, and next the *Reer*, and after either to the right or left *Flank*, leaving it to his discretion to use as many of them as he shall think fitting, and convenient for his Exercise. And although I have somewhat varied from the practise of former times in using more plenty of Words of Commands, the ripeness and curiosity of wits in these our dayes, enforced me unto it; for they having much refined the *Military Discipline* will not be pleased with ordinary stufte (as to say, *as you were*) which, I confesse, would save the *Captain* a great deal of pains, and be more easie to the apprehension, and capacity of every private Souldier, for his returning back unto his place again. Yet if Command should be given to double any part of the Body, that *Leader* would quickly lie under a hard censure; and be judged in most mens opinions insufficient, that could not finde out some other Words of Command to reduce them again. Endeavouring, therefore, to give full satisfaction to both parties, I have taken the pains to set down other Words of Command for *Reduements*, whereby those which shall professe themselves curious, may cull out such plenty as may best please their genius; advising them withall not to presume in the exercising of their private Companies, before themselves be first well versed, and truly knowing in all and every of the severall Commands, Directions, and Reduements, before mentioned, which being obtained, they may confidently and boldly proceed, so to inure their Souldiers in the practise thereof, that their own knowledge in a short time will reduce them to their former places without

without using these thred-bare words, as you were; variety being more profitable, and delightfull unto them, (provided they understand it) then to accustom them in an ordinary and plain way of reducing.

But here some men will be ready to carp and say, that I have troubled my self to little purpose, in setting down more *Doublings* then are used abroad upon service. To whom I answer that there are none (if rightly understood) but are of singular use one time or another, either in our private *Meetings*, or in those great *Nurseries* of *Military Discipline*, the famous *Academies* of this our *Island*, the *Artillery* and *Military Gardens*, who for *Field-Service* have train'd up, and sent forth many worthy, able & gallant *Souldiers* into the *Armies* lately raised in our Nation between the *King* and *Parliament*, whom I pray God happily to reconcile. But, suppose, many of these *Doublings* have not been seen by some to be used in the field: Are they not therefore useful? perhaps at such time they have had no occasion for to use them all, which if not: must they be rejected? the answer positively, that being rightly enquired into, they have in them very usefull, and serviceable things against an *Enemy* whether it be in the *Field* or in *Garrison*. As for example the *Muskettiers* being brought either all into the *Front* or *Reer*, or upon one of the *Flanks* which often happeneth, an *Enemy* appearing there, then they would be of singular good use for our advantage, and very disadvantageous to the enemy. The like may be spoken of the *Pikes*, who are by severall of these *doublings* brought into those places, being there very serviceable to receive a desperate charge of horse, if upon any of these parts they should fall on. Observe, further, that in many of these *doublings*, as the one arms shall face or charge against an enemy, so contrariwise the other lies more secure in safety to be preserv'd from danger of the shot. Moreover, (according unto the number of men either in length or depth) a *Leader* may by these words of Command or the like, at the same time double his *Front*, *Reer*, or *Midst* by doubling of *Ranks*, and may farther make use of them at one and the same time to double by files his right, left *Flank* and *Midst* all at one instant. But I shall not need to set down words of Command for the doubling *Front*, *Reer*, *Flanks* and *Midst*, after this manner, but leave that unto the apt *Souldier* to make use of such words of Command formerly shewne, and to frame them suitable for any such purpose so intended. But before I shall conclude concerning the use of these *doublings*, as I said before, there are many of them, which by comand will bring any men in the body, to fight, unto that part which shall be most weak, or assaulted by an enemy. And, again, he may cast them, so into the body by a *doubling*, as shall preserve from danger, whom he shall think fit. And to say more there is no part of the body or arms but by words of Command in *doublings* may be brought forth as *Frontiers* against the enemy, and may be placed again into the midst of the body for more security, and others in like manner may be brought forth for their relief. Therefore it much concerns all *Souldiers* and *Commanders* to be truly knowing in all the severall kinds of *doublings*, out of which he may make singular good use according to his discretion at all such times as need shall require, whether it be in *Field*, or otherwise in *Garrison*.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

of Inversion and Conversion.

NOt to omit any thing which may be beneficiall for the knowledge of all them that intends to be good proficient in this *Art of Military Discipline*, my subject in this Chapter shall be of *Ranks filing*, and *files, filing*, and *ranks, ranking*, and *files ranking*, which are by some called *Inversion*, and *Conversion*; yet seldom mentioned by any *Leader* in the time of his *Exercise*, for this reason, as I suppose, because the souldiers for the most part are unacquainted with them; which causeth all our *Leaders* in our private *Meetings* here in *London*, to deliver forth unto their *Souldiers* such words of command as may readily and aptly be understood by them, which are *ranks, file to the right or left, or files, file to any hand*, which is no other then *Inversion*, and again *ranks, rank to the right or left, either in equal or unequal parts, or intire to the front or files to a rank*, in the like kind may be termed *Conversion*. And, in my opinion, they do the better that shall thus express themselves to the capacity of every *Souldier*, then for to puzzle them with the words *Inversion* and *Conversion*. I intend therefore without curiosity plainly to set downe their severall commands, directions, and reducements, keeping my former method, concerning

ing doublings. For in all and every one of them, they do either double the *length* or *depth* of the *Front*, *Reer*, *Midst*, or *Flanks*; no part of the *Military Exercise* affording more plenty of matter then they, carrying always along with them many things of excellent use. For example, suppose a Prince, Generall, or any other person of quality were to passe thorow the Company, a discreet Commander would presently command their *ranks* to *invert*, or *file* to the right and left inward, which immediatly becomes (as it were) a *Street* or *Gallery*, for the honouring and securing of their persons. Moreover, it is of use for the lodging of the *Colours*, or upon *funerall* occasions, or taking their leave from their *Captain*, where they may poure forth their *volley's* of shot all at one and the same time. To be short, being necessitated to march against a battery, it avoids the danger of the great *Ordnance*, and likewise secures the *front* of the *Battalia*, from the imminent danger of any great shower of small shot poured forth by the *Enemy*. As likewise it is of excellent use to march over a narrow *Bridge*, or thorow a *Lane*, *Thicket*, or *Salliport*, or such like difficult passages; or if any *Commander* have a desire to use ancient figures, by it he may make the *Saw*, *Sheers*, or *Diamond*; or being in one *file*, they may aptly be drawn into a *Ring*, where hee that is an able *posture* man standing in the midst, may shew unto them their severall *postures*, and after easily reduce them again, and thus much briefly of *Inversion*, or *ranks filing*.

Next come we to shew the excellent uses and services which may be performed by *Conversion*, as first perceiving any man of worth to stand before the *front* of the *battail*, or to pass by either of the *flanks*, then *ranks*, *ranking*, or *files ranking* into the *front*, or *ranks* wheeling to either of the *flanks*, by these commands the souldiers aspects are thither brought to present unto him a volley of shot. It is likewise very usefull for the making of a *Line* against a *Brest-work*, or lining of *hedges*, carrying it self severall ways secretly to lye in *Ambuscado*, whereby they may fire upon the *Enemy* as he marcheth by. Or approaching against any *Fort* or place of danger, they may daringly make a large *front*, and firing upon them, after *filing* to the right or left, making large *intervals*, they much preserve themselves from the danger of the great shot proceeding from the *Enemy*. Again, *ranks ranking* either in equall, or unequall parts is of singular good use upon a narrow passage, where they can march but 2, 3, 4, or 6 a *Brest*; the *Commander*, notwithstanding, they marched before to a *Brest*, may by it bring them to such small numbers, whereby hee may much preserve them in time of imminent danger and perill. To dwell no longer upon this discourse, *Inversion* and *Conversion*, many times requires larger distance then any other of the *Motions*, as sometimes double distance or twice double distance, wherefore being so many occasions for the use of them both, I hold it requisite for a *Leader* frequently to practise his souldiers in them, no part of the *Art Military*, affording more commendations to the *Souldiers*, that shall readily and handsomly perform the same. Briefly, therefore, passing over what might be more spoken concerning them. I shall in the next place set them all forth in their full view, leaving every discreet *Souldier* to his own liberty, to make use of as many of them as hee shall think fit, and to use them after what manner he pleaseth.

CHAP. XXXIX.

The words of Command for Ranks, Ranking and Files Ranking to the Front, they being twelve a Brest and six deep.

Command.

R *Ar.* rank to the right 2, 3, 4, or 6; as occasion shall require.
Direction. If to two; the two out-most men upon the right are to move away, the next two, to fall behinde them untill the first rank hath made six *Ranks*, and the rest doing the like untill the first six

Ranks are become thirty six,

Reducement. *Ranks*, rank 12 to the left; the first *Rank* is to stand, the rest are to move away two and two, untill they have made up 12 in one *rank*, and the rest are to do the like untill they are made up all again as at first: or command *Ranks*, rank as you were, the same rule is to be observ'd if you rank to any of the other numbers, to divide them accordingly.

Command. *Ranks*, rank three to the left.

Direction. The first three men upon the left are to move away, the next three are to fall in behind toward the left untill the first *Rank* have made foure *Ranks*, the rest are to do the like, untill they have made them 24 *Ranks*.

Reducement. Ranks, rank 12 to the right, the first Rank is to stand, the rest are to move forth by three and three, untill they have made twelve in one Rank, the rest are to do the like, untill they be as they were at first, or ranks, rank as you were.

Command. Ranks, rank three to the right and left outward.

Direction. The three out-most men of the first rank upon the right, and the three out-most men upon the left move away, the next three of each hand in the same rank are to do the like, and every rank throughout to follow successively, dividing themselves three to one hand, and three to the other, untill they have made twelve ranks in each Division, and falling in the Reer successively to each hand of the first rank.

Reducement. Ranks, rank 12 to the right and left inward; or ranks, rank as you were.

Command. Ranks, rank intire to the right into the front.

Direction. The first rank stand, the rest face to the right, and move away every rank, placing it self successively to the right, untill they stand all in one rank in the front.

Reducement. Ranks, rank 12 to the left; the first 12 men upon the left are to stand, the next 12 are to face to the left, and to move and fall in the Reer of the first, and so consequently all the rest, or else to command ranks, rank as you were.

Command. Ranks, rank intire to the left into the front.

Direction. The first Rank stand, the rest face to the left, and move untill they have successively placed themselves, and made one intire rank into the front.

Reducement. Ranks, rank 12 to the right, the 12 out-most men upon the right stand, the rest face to the right and move, making 12 in every rank, or ranks, rank as you were.

Command. Ranks, rank outward into the front.

Direction. The first Rank stand, the rest face outward, and place your selves successively into the Front, facing after to your Leader.

Reducement. Ranks, rank 12 to the right and left inward; the 12 middle-most men stand, the rest face inward, and move, ranking 12 successively behinde the first rank, and after facing to their Leader, and to even their ranks.

Command. Ranks, rank inward into the front.

Direction. The first Rank is to move away to the right and left, the next rank moving up into his ground, doing the like, and consequently so all the rest untill the last rank be come up intire into the front.

Reducement. Ranks, rank six to the right and left outward; the first six upon the right, and the first six upon the left stand, the rest move outward, falling in the Reer of the first rank, ranking six to the right and left, and after closing their Divisions.

Command. Files, rank to the right into the front.

Direction. Files open to the left to your double Distance, and ranks close forwards to close order, and move up to the right into the front.

Reducement. Rank, file six to the left, the first six upon the left are to fall into a file, the rest doing the like, untill you have made 12 files, as at first, or command, rank file as you were.

Command. Files, rank to the left into the front.

Direction. Every man is to move forward to the left into the front, beginning from the Leader of the File, and moving up successively, making one intire rank.

Reducement. Rank file six to the right, the six out-most men upon the right, are to fall into a file, the rest in like manner are to do the same, or rank, file as you were.

Command. Files, rank outward into the front.

Direction. Right and left halfe ranks close into the midst, to close order, after move to the right and left outward, untill they be come up into the front.

Reducement. Ranks, file six to the right and left inward, the middle men are to stand, the rest are to move side-ways to the right and left inward, and to file as before commanded, or rank, file as you were.

Command. Files, rank inward into the front.

Direction. Right and left half Ranks open from the midst to twice double Distance, and Files move up to the right and left intire into the front.

Reducement. Rank, file six to the right and left outward, the out-most men stand, the rest move to the right and left outward, filing according to command, and after to close their Divisions.

CHAP. XL.

Ranks, ranking into the Front by Counter-march.

Command.

Ranks, rank intire into the *Front*, every man placing himself on the out-side of his right-hand man.

Direction. The first *Rank* stand, the rest move away to the right successively into the *Front*, placing themselves on the out-side of their

right-hand men.

Reducement. *Rank*, rank 12 to the left, every man placing himself on the out-side of his left-hand man; the first 12 upon the left are to stand, the rest are successively to fall in behinde the first *Rank*, placing themselves as before commanded, or *Rank*, rank as you were, placing your selves on the out-side of your left-hand men.

Command. *Ranks*, rank intire to the left into the *Front*, every man placing himself on the out-side of his left-hand man.

Direction. The first *Rank* stand, the rest move away to the left successively, placing your selves on the out-side of your left-hand men.

Reducement. *Ranks*, rank 12 to the right, every man placing himself on the out-side of his right-hand man, or *rank*, rank as you were, every man placing himself as before.

Command. *Ranks*, rank outward into the *Front*, every man placing himself on the out-side of his right and left-hand man.

Direction. The first *Rank* stand, the rest move forth to the right and left, and successively to fall into the *Front*, every man placing himself on the out-side of his right & left-hand man.

Reducement. *Ranks*, rank 12 to the right and left inward, every man placing himself on the in-side of his right and left-hand man; the 12 middle-men are to stand, the rest are to move to the right and left inward, six to one hand, and six to the other, making 12 in *Rank*, and falling behinde the first.

Command. *Ranks*, rank inward into the *Front*, every man placing himself on the in-side of his right and left-hand man.

Direction. Right and left *half-ranks* open from the midst to twice double *Distance*, the first *Rank* of each *Division* is to stand, the rest are to move successively to the right and left inward into the *Front*, making one intire *Rank*.

Reducement. *Rank*, rank six to the right and left outward, every man placing himself on the out-side of his right and left-hand man; the first *Rank* of each *Division* stand, the rest move to the right and left outward, ranking as before commanded, falling successively in the *Rear* of the first *Rank*, and after to close their *Divisions*.

CHAP. XLI.

Files ranking into the Front by Wheeling.

Command.

Files, rank to the right into the *Front* by wheeling.

Direction. Face to the right, and wheel to the left, untill they stand even a *Brest* in one intire *Rank* in the *Front*.

The Files are to be at double distance, and Ranks at close order.

Reducement. *Rank*, file six to the left by wheeling; face all to the *Rear*, and the first six men then upon the right, wheel to the right, and so consequently all the rest wheeling by sixes to the right; their Leaders that were before, being the hinges of the motion, and after face to their Leader.

Command. *Files*, rank to the left into the *Front* by wheeling.

Direction. Face to the left, and wheel to the right, untill they make all one intire *Rank* in the *Front*.

Reducement. *Rank*, file six to the right by wheeling; face to the *Rear*, and the six out-most men upon the left, wheel to the left, the next six are to follow, and consequently all the rest, untill they have made 12 *Files* as at the first, and after face to their Leader.

Command. *Files*, rank outward into the *Front* by wheeling.

Direction. Right and left *half-ranks* close into the midst to order, and face outward, wheeling to the right and left, untill you are one intire *Rank*.

Reducement. *Rank*, file six to the right and left inward by wheeling, face about to the right, and the 12 middle-most men are to wheel to the right and left inward, and the rest are likewise to do the same by fixes, untill they have made themselves into 12 *files*, after face to their *Leader*.

Command. *Files*, rank inward into the *front* by wheeling.

Direction. Right and left *half-ranks* open from the midst to twice double distance, after face inward, and wheel to the right and left inward, untill they are all in one *rank* in the *front*.

Reducement. *Rank*, file six to the right and left outward, face all about, and wheel by fixes to the right and left, the *Leaders* being the hinges of the Motion, after face to the *front*, and right and left *half-ranks* may close into the midst again to their double distance.

Here endeth ranking into the *front*, with all their severall kinds, the *Reer* challenger in the next place, but I shall spare the pains, and labour to set them down, in regard that he who hath a mind to rank his men thither, may if he pleaseth make use of all the former words of Command for the performance of the same, facing them upon every Command to the *Reer*. I come, therefore, in the next place only to mention the ranking into the midst by *Ranks* and *Files*, which may likewise be performed by the former words of Command, provided they have convenient distance, and be faced to the midst, and after the Command is executed, to face them to their first *front*. Yet there is remaining a ranking unto all these places at once, for the performance of which, observe these few words of Command following.

CHAP. XLII.

Ranks ranking, or Files ranking at one and the same time into Front, Reer, and Midst.

Command. **R**anks, rank outward into the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Midst*.

They are to stand at order in *Rank* and *File*.

Direction. The two last *ranks* are to face about, the first *rank*, and the last *rank*, and the third *rank* from the *front*, are to stand; the other three are to move forth, six to the right, and six to the left, untill they have ranked unto all these places, after face to the *front*, and the last *rank* moving forward to open order.

Reducement. *Ranks*, rank 12 to the right and left inward; the last *rank* face about, the 12 middle-most men of each *rank* are to stand, the six out-most men of each *rank* are to face inward, to move and fall into the right and left behinde the middle-most men, after the two last *ranks* are to face to the *front*.

Command. *Ranks*, rank inward into the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Midst*.

Direction. Right and left *half-ranks* open from the midst to twice double distance, the two last *ranks* face to the *Reer*, the first and last *rank*, and the third *rank* from the *front* stand, the rest move to the right and left inward, ranking into *front*, *reer*, and *midst*, after that the last *rank* is to face to the *front*, and to close forward to open order.

Reducement. *Ranks*, rank six to the right and left outward, the last *rank* face about, and the out-most six men upon each *rank* are to stand, and the middle-men are to divide themselves six to the right hand, and six to the left, and to fall in the *Reer* of the first, last, and middle *rank*, after the last *rank* is to face to the *front*, and then to close *ranks* and *files* to their order.

Command. *Ranks*, rank outward into the *front*, *reer*, and *midst*, every man placing himself on the out-side of his right and left-hand man.

Ranks ranking by Counter-march.

Direction. The two last *ranks* face about, the first and last *rank*, and the third *rank* from the *front* stand, the rest move forth to the right and left ranking into *front*, *reer*, and *midst*, placing themselves on the out-side of their right and left-hand men, face to your *Leader*.

Reducement. *Ranks*, rank 12 to the right and left inward, placing your selves on the in-side of your right and left-hand men, the last *rank* face about, the 12 middle-most men in each *rank* are to stand, and the out-most six men in each *rank* are to move to the right and left inward, placing themselves in the *Reer* of the former *ranks*, and on the in-side of their right and left-hand men, facing to their *Leader*.

Command.

Command. *Ranks*, rank inward into the *front*, *reer*, and *midst*, every man placing himself on the in-side of his right and left-hand man.

Direction. Right and left *half-ranks* open from the midst to twice double distance, standing then at order in each division in *rank* and *file*; the two last *ranks* face about, and the first, last, and third *rank* from the *Front* stand, the rest move inward, placing themselves on the in-side of their right and left-hand men, after the last *rank* may face about, and move forward to open order.

Reduement. *Ranks*, rank six to the right and left outward, every man placing himself on the out-side of his right and left-hand man, the last *rank* face about, the six out-most men of each *rank* stand, and the 12 middle-most men in each *rank* are to divide themselves six to the right, and six to the left, falling in the *Reer* of the out-most men, placing themselves on the out-side of their right and left-hand men, after face to the *front*, and *ranks*, and *files* close to the midst to order.

Of Files ranking into Front, Reer, and Midst.

Command. *Files*, rank outward into *Front*, *Reer*, and *Midst*.

Direction. The two last *ranks* face about, the first, last, and third *rank* from the *front* stand, the rest move to the right and left, after the manner of doubling of *ranks*, and *rank* to *front*, *reer*, and *midst*, as before commanded, and after the last *rank* face to the *front*, closing forward to order.

Reduement. *Ranks*, file six to the right and left inward, the last *rank* face about, and the even men from the midst of *Files* are to fall in behinde the odd, after the manner of doubling *files* to the right and left inward, and after the two last *ranks* are to face to the *Front*.

Command. *Files*, rank inward into *front*, *reer*, and *midst*.

Direction. They standing at the distance of order in *rank* and *file*, command right and left *half-ranks* to open from the midst some thing more then to open order, after the two last *ranks* are to face about, and the first, last, and third *rank* from the *front* are to stand, the rest are to move to the right and left inward, after the manner of doubling *ranks* to the right and left inward, after the last *rank* is to face to the *front*, and to close forwards to open order.

Reduement. *Ranks*, file six to the right and left outward, the last *rank* face about, and every man from the *flanks* is to move outward, after the manner of doubling *files* to the right and left outward, then the two last *ranks* are to face to the *front*, and the whole Body may close their *ranks* and *files* into the midst to order.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of Files ranking by Wheeling.

Command. *Files* rank outward into *Front*, *Reer*, and *Midst*, by wheeling.

Direction. The two last *ranks* face about, after face all outward, and and wheel to the right and left, by two and two, untill they be ranked into *front*, *reer*, and *midst*, the last *rank* may after move forwards unto the same distance, the former stands at being first faced to their *Leader*.

Reduement. *Ranks*, file six to the right and left inward by wheeling, the first two *ranks* face about, and then every perticular *rank* to wheel by two and two, towards the midst of *files*, untill they have made 12 *files* as at first, and after to face all to the *front*.

Command. *Files*, rank inward into the *front*, *reer*, and *midst*, by wheeling.

Direction. Right and left *half-ranks* open from the midst something more then open to order, the two last *ranks* of each *Division* face about, after face all inward, and wheel by two and two to the right and left, untill they have ranked into *front*, and *reer*, and *midst* to the right and left inward, the last *rank* is after to face to the *front*, taking his distance, conformable to the rest.

Reduement. *Ranks* file six to the right and left outward by wheeling, the two first *ranks* face about, and each perticular *rank* is to wheel by two's towards the *flanks*, untill they have made 12 *files*, as at first, after facing all to the *front*, and closing their *ranks* and *files*, into the midst to order.

Command. *Files*, rank inward into the midst by wheeling.

Direction. Right and left *half-ranks* open from the midst to twice double distance, after

The Ranks must be at close order, and the Files at open order for these three words of Command following, and it would be better to divide them into three Divisions, that is to say, between every two Ranks, to have some six foot of ground intervall, that they may more distinctly perform the same.

face inward, and let them know that the *Bringers-up* of the *Front half-files* and the *half-file Leaders* are the hinges of the motion, after face them to the *Front*, and they will be in two *Ranks*.

Reduement. *Ranks*, file six to the right and left outward by wheeling, the last *Rank* face about, and both *Ranks* wheel to the right and left by threes, untill they have made 12 *Files* as at first, after face all to the *Front*, and close *Files* into the midst to order.

Command. *Files*, rank outward into the *Front*, and *Reer*, by wheeling.

Direction. Right and left *half-ranks* close into the midst to order, after face outward, and wheel to the right and left, the *Bringers-up*, and the *Leaders* are the hinges of the motion, and when they are brought into two *Ranks*, one in the *Front*, and the other in the *Reer*, face them to the *Front*.

Reduement. *Ranks*, file six to the right and left inward by wheeling, the first *Rank* face about, and both *Ranks* are to wheel by threes towards the midst of *Files*, untill they have filed according unto command, after facing to their *Leader*, evening their *Ranks*, and straightning their *Files*.

And thus much of *Conversion*, or *Ranks ranking*, or *Files ranking*, they having more variety in them, then many times can be usefull, except it be to present unto the Souldiers some things that are new in the motions, which many times they love to see. I could upon this Subject have much more enlarged my selfe, but conceiving what is already set down may be sufficient for the knowledge of any intelligible Souldier. I come therefore briefly to treat of *Inversion*, or of *Ranks filing*, and *Files filing*.

CHAP. XLIV.

of Ranks filing, or of Files filing, or of Inversion with their severall sorts and kinds.

Command. **F**iles, file to the right.

Direction. The right-hand *File* is to move away cleer of the standing part, and after the next *File* to fall in the *Reer* of the first, and consequently so all the rest untill they become one *File*.

Reduement. *File-leaders*, lead up your *Files* to the left, or file, file six to the left.

Command. *Files*, file to the right intire advancing.

Direction. The right-hand *File* stand, the rest move away successively, placing themselves in one direct file before the *Front*.

Reduement. *File*, file six to the right into the *Reer*, face all about, or *File*, file six to the right towards the *Front*.

Command. *Files*, file inward into the right *Flank*.

Direction. *Half-files* face about, & the out-most *Files* then upon the left as they are so faced, are to move away forward, and consequently all the rest, are to fall in behinde them, the like is to be performed by the *Front*, the out-most *File* at the same time is to move away, and the rest successively falling in untill they have made one intire *File*, after they are to face to the *Front*.

Reduement. *Front-half-file*, file three to the left, *Reer half-file* face about, and file three to the right, face to your *Leader*, and close your *Divisions*.

Command. *Files*, file to the right by *Division*.

Direction. *Half-files* face about, the out-most file upon the right is to stand, the rest are to move forward, and to place themselves successively into one intire file, going forward after each other, and after face to the *Front*.

Reduement. *Front half-file* file three to the right, and *Reer half-file* face about, and file three to the left, face to your *Leader*, and close your *Divisions*.

Command. *Ranks* file to the right, every man placing himself behind his right-hand man.

Direction. This may be done marching or standing; if marching, the right-hand man of the first rank doth first move away, the rest in the same rank do fall in behinde him, and consequently all the rest, untill they make one intire file; if upon a Stand, the ranks are to open backward to such a Distance, as they may conveniently fall into one *File*.

Reduement.

Ranks filing by way of Countermarch.

Reduement. File, rank 12 to the left; or File, rank as you were.

Command. Ranks, file to the right, advancing, every man placing himself before his right hand man.

Direction. The out-most file stand, the rest are to move forward with their right leg, placing themselves before their right-hand men. The Ranks are to be at twice double distance and the Files at order.

Reduement. File, rank 12 to the right, or file, rank as you were.

Command. Ranks, file to the right, every man placing himself before his Leader, and his Bringer-up.

Direction. The half-files are to face about, only the right-hand file is to stand, the rest are to move forward, filing to the right Flank, every man placing himself before his Leader, and his Bringer-up, face to your Leader.

Reduement. Front half-file, rank 12 to the right, Reer half-file face about, and rank 12 to the left; face to your Leader, and close your Divisions.

Command. Ranks, file inward into the right Flank, every man placing himself before his Leader, and his Bringer-up.

Direction. Half-files face about, Front and Reer half-files are to march to such convenient distance, as the ranks may fall into the midst of the right flank, after they are to face about, or to face to the midst of ranks, and then they are to move forward into the right flank, every man placing himself as before commanded, and after face to their Leader.

Reduement. Front half-files rank 12 to the left, Reer half-file face about, and rank 12 to the right, face to your Leader, and close your Divisions.

Command. Files, file to the right, every man placing himself behind his Bringer-up.

Direction. The out-most file stand, the rest face about, and move forward each particular file to the left, placing themselves behind their right-hand file, and their Bringers-up. Files filing by way of Countermarch.

Reduement. File, file six to the left, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Command. Files, file to the right, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Direction. The right-hand file stand, the rest move forwards, every file successively placing themselves before their Leaders, and their right-hand file.

Reduement. Files, file six to the right into the Reer, every man placing himself before his Bringer-up, face all about, the last six men stand, the rest are to move, and to file six to the right, placing themselves before their Bringers-up, and after to face to the Front.

Command. Files, file to the right flank by Division, every man placing himself before his Leader, and his Bringer-up.

Direction. Half-files face about; the right-hand file is to stand, the rest are to move forward to the right flank, placing themselves before their Leaders, and their Bringers-up, making one intire file to the right, face to your Leader.

Reduement. Front half-files face about, and file three to the right, every man placing himself before his Bringer-up, and Reer half-file, file three to the left, placing your selves before your Leaders, face to your Leader.

Command. Files, file inward into the right flank, every man placing himself before his Leader, and his Bringer-up.

Direction. Half-files face about, and Front and Reer half-files move forward, until there be sufficient Distance to file into the right flank, after face them about to the midst of ranks, then the files may move successively into the right flank, placing themselves before their Leaders, and their Bringers-up, face to your Leader.

Reduement. Front half-file, file three to the left, every man placing himself before his Leader, and Reer half-file face about, and file three to the right, every man placing himself before his Bringer-up, face to your Leader, and close your Divisions.

CHAP. XLV.

Ranks wheeling into the Flanks.

Command. **R**anks wheele to the right, into the right Flank.

They ought to be at twice double distance in rank, and at close order in file.

Direction. Every perticuler Rank is to wheel to their right hand untill they have brought their *aspects* unto the right Flank, after face to the Front.

Reduement. File, rank 12 to the right, the first man is to stand, the rest are to move forward to the right successively, 12 in a Rank to the right.

Command. Ranks wheel to the left to the right Flank.

Direction. Face all about, and Ranks wheel to the left, untill you have brought your *aspects* unto the right Flank, face to your Leader.

Reduement. File, rank 12 to the left, the first man is to stand, the rest are to move forwards, making up 12 a brest to the left, untill they have made six Ranks as at first.

Command. Ranks wheel outward to the right Flank.

Direction. Half-files face about, the first three Ranks wheel to the right, and the three last Ranks wheel to the left, to your Leader.

Reduement. Front half-files Rank 12 to the right, Reer half-files face about, and rank 12 to the left, face to your Leader, march up and close forwards to your due distance.

Command. Ranks wheel inward into the right Flank.

Direction. Half-files face about, Front and Reer, half-files march from the midst to twice double distance, after Front and Reer half-files face about, Front half-files wheel your Ranks to the left, Reer half-files wheel your Ranks to the right, to your Leader.

Reduement. Front half-file Rank 12 to the left, Reer half-file face about and rank 12 to the right, face to your Leader, and close your Divisions.

The left Flank challengeth the next place, but I shall spare that pains, in regard it is to be done by the same words of Command, only altering the hand: I come therefore in the next place to shew how Ranks and Files may file outward to both Flanks and midst at one and the same time by proper words of Command as followeth.

CHAP. XLVI.

of Files filing, or Ranks filing to both the Flanks, and the Midst at one and the same time.

Command. **F**iles, file to the right and left to both Flanks and the midst of files.

Direction. The out-most file upon each Flank, and the two middle files are to move away, the rest are to fall in successively behinde to the right and left, filing to both Flanks, and to the midst, after to stand, and even their Ranks, and streighten their files.

Reduement. Files, file six to right and left inward, moving between the Flanks and the middle files.

Command. Files, file to both Flanks, and to the midst of files advancing.

Direction. The out-most file upon each Flank stand, and so likewise the two inmost files, the rest move forth and place themselves successively filing, advancing towards both Flanks, and the midst of files.

Reduement. Files, file six to the right and left inward to the Reer, placing yourselves between the flanks and the middle files, the moving part is to face about, and to march down according to command as before exprest, after face to their Leader.

Command. Files, file to both flanks, and the midst by Division.

Direction. The out-most file upon each flank, and the two in-most files stand, half-files of the other files, face about, and march forth and file by threes to the right and left into both flanks, and the midst; facing to their Leader, they will stand in four files 18 deep.

Reduement. The six middle-most men in each File stand, the three first and the three last ranks, file six to the right and left inward, the three first ranks face about, then moving by threes between the out-most File of each flank, and the middle Files, after facing to their Leader.

They must be at order both in rank & file.

Com-

Command. Files, file inward into both flanks, and into the midst of files.

Direction. Half-files face about, march all, and open from the midst to twice double distance, face all about to the right, the two in-moſt and the two out-moſt Files ſtand; the reſt move ſucceſſively, by threes, untill they file into both flanks, and into the midst, face to your Leader.

Reduement. Files, file three to the right and left inward into the Front and Reer; half-files face about, the three firſt, and the three laſt ranks ſtand; the 12 middle-moſt men move inward by threes into front and reer, between the out-moſt and the middle-moſt files, face to your Leader, and cloſe your Diviſions.

Command. Files, file to both flanks, and to the midst of files, every man placing himſelf before his Bringer-up.

Direction. Face all about, the two out-moſt files, and the two middle files ſtand, the reſt move forth to the right and left, placing themſelves ſucceſſively before their Bringers-up, ſiling towards both flanks, and the midst of files face to your Leader.

Reduement. Files, file ſix to the right and left inward, following your Bringers-up, between the flanks, and the middle files, the firſt ſix ranks are to ſtand.

Command. Files, file to both flanks, and to the midst of files advancing, every man placing himſelf before his Leader.

Direction. The out-moſt file upon each flank, and the two middle files ſtand; the reſt advance forward, placing themſelves ſucceſſively before their Leaders, ſiling to both flanks, and to the midst of files.

Reduement. Files, file ſix to the right and left inward into the reer, following your Leaders, between the flankers and the middle files, the ſix laſt ranks face about, and after they have filed, they are all to face to their Leader.

Command. Files, file to both flanks, and to the midst by Diviſion, every man placing himſelf before his Leader, and Bringer-up.

Direction. The out-moſt file upon each flank, and the two in-moſt ſtand, half-files of the other files, face about, and then command them to move, ſiling to both flanks, and into the midst, placing themſelves before their Leaders, and Bringers-up, to your Leader.

Reduement. The ſix middle-moſt men in each file ſtand, the three firſt, and the three laſt ranks file ſix to the right and left inward; every man placing himſelf before his Leader, and Bringer-up; the three firſt ranks face about, and then with the three laſt, they are to move forward between the out-moſt and the middle-moſt files, that is, by threes, to place themſelves before their Leaders, and their Bringers-up, face to your Leader.

Command. Files, file inward into both flanks, and into the midst, every man placing himſelf before his Leader, and his Bringer-up.

Direction. Half-files face to the reer, march all, and open from the midst to twice double diſtance, face all about to the right, the two in-moſt, and the two out-moſt files upon each flank ſtand; the reſt move ſucceſſively by threes, placing themſelves before their Leaders, and Bringers-up, ſiling into both flanks, and the midst, face to your Leader.

Reduement. Files three to the right and left inward, into front and reer, every man placing himſelf before his Leader, and his Bringer-up; half-files face about, the three firſt and the three laſt ranks ſtand, the 12 middle-moſt men move forwards by threes, between the out-moſt and the middle files, placing themſelves, as aforeſaid, face to your Leader, and cloſe your Diviſions.

CHAP. XLVII.

of Ranks wheeling, to both the Flanks.

Command. Ranks, wheel to the right and left, to both flanks advancing.

Direction. The out-moſt men upon the right and left in every rank are the hinges of the Motion, the reſt are to divide their ranks by wheeling, ſix to the right, and ſix to the left, untill they have brought their aſpects unto both the flanks, after face to their Leader.

Reduement. Files, rank 12 to the right and left inward into the Reer, face all to the right and left about inward, and begin the Motion from each file, to rank ſix to the right, and ſix to the left, making up 12 a Breſt in the Reer, the reſt following, untill they have made ſix ranks in a Breſt, face to your Leader.

They are to be at double diſtance in Ranks and at order in Files.

Command. Ranks, wheel to the right and left towards the *reer*.

Direction. Face all about, the out-side men are the hinges of this *Motion*, who are to wheel from the *reer* to the right and left, untill they have brought their aspects unto both the *flanks*, face to your *Leader*.

Reducement. Files, rank 12 to the right and left inward, the right-hand file is to begin to rank six to the left, the left-hand file is to rank six to the right, making up even a *Brest* 12 in number, the rest doing the same.

Command. Front and *reer* half-files wheel your ranks outward into both *flanks*.

Direction. Half-files face about, and front and *reer* half-files wheel outward into both *flanks*, untill you have brought your aspects unto the right and left, face to your *Leader*.

Reducement. Front and *reer* half-files rank 12 to the right and left inward, towards the midst of ranks, front half-files face about, and begin the *Motion* from the *Bringers-up*, of the front half-files, and the half-file-leaders; ranking six to the right and left from each file making 12 a *Brest*, face to your *Leader*.

Command. Front and *reer* half-files wheel your ranks inward into both *flanks*.

Direction. Half-files face about, and march all untill you be at twice double distance in the midst, then face all about to the right, and wheel to the right and left, untill you have brought your aspects unto both *flanks*, by wheeling inward to them, face to your *Leader*.

Reducement. Files, rank 12 to the right and left inward into front and *reer*, half-file, face about, and rank in front and *reer*, six to the right, and six to the left, making 12 a *Brest* after face to your *Leader*.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Ranks wheeling to the midst of Files.

Command. Front and *reer* half-files wheel your ranks inward to the midst of files.
Direction. Half-files face about, and front and *reer* half-files wheel your ranks to the right and left inward, untill they face in opposition, to your *Leader*.

Reducement. Files, rank six to the right and left outward unto the midst of ranks; front half-files face about, and rank six to the right and left outward, *reer* half-files do the same to your *Leader*.

Command. Front and *reer* half-files wheel your ranks inward into the midst of files.

Direction. Half-files face about, front and *reer* half-files march untill you have attained twice double distance in the midst of ranks, face all about to the right, and wheel to the right and left inward into the midst of files, to your *Leader*.

Reducement. Files rank six to the right and left outward into front and *reer*, half-files face about, and front and *reer* half-files rank six to the right and left outward, as before commanded, to your *Leader* move forward, and close your Divisions to your double distance.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of Ranks wheeling to both Flanks, and into the midst, at one and the same time.

Command. Front and *reer* half-files wheel your ranks to the right and left into both *flanks*, and the midst of files.

Direction. Half-files face about to the right, and the middle files, and the out-most files upon each flank, are the hinges of this *Motion*, the rest are to wheel their ranks to the right and left towards both the *flanks*, and to the midst of files, face to your *Leader*.

Reducement. Files, rank six to the right and left inward to the midst of ranks, and between the *flankers*, and the middle files, front half-files face about, and rank six to the right and left inward towards the midst of ranks, and between the *flankers*, and the middle files, the *reer* half-files doing the same, face to your *Leader*.

Command. Front and *reer* half-files wheel your ranks inward into both *flanks*, and into the midst of files.

Direction. Half-files face about, and front and *reer* half-files march untill you be at double distance in the midst, after face all about to the right, and wheel your ranks

They ought to bear more then open order in Ranks, and at order in Files.

to the right & left inward into both *Flanks*, and into the midst of *files*, face to your *Leader*.

Reducement. *Files*, rank six to the right and left inward into *Flanks* and *Reer*, between the *flankers*, and the middle *files*, *half-files* face about, and rank six to the right and left inward to the *reer* between the *flankers*, and the middle *files*, the *front half-files* doing the same to the *front*, after facing to their *Leader*, and *half-files* move forwards, closing their *Divisions* to the distance of the former *ranks*.

Having dwelt thus long upon this Subject of *Inversion* and *Conversion* (occasioned thereunto by their great variety and difficulty in the performance of them) I hold it convenient to give a breathing space unto the wearied Souldier, whilst I, in the mean time, prepare further matter for his longing desire.

Yet before I enter in any other discourse of the *Art Military*, I hold it requisite to give some admonitions to those that shall venture upon them. For being very difficult, they are not easily understood by every punie; my advice therefore, is to wave such things, in time of Exercise, which the Souldiers are unacquainted with, providing for them such matter, as is both plain and easie, and being frequently practised in such, he may after drill them on to harder, till by degrees he hath brought them unto such perfection & knowledge, that they shall be able to perform and execute what is commanded; not gazing upon one another, (as I have often observed) neither knowing their *Leaders* meaning, or if they did, they are altogether ignorant how to fulfill his commands. Frequent practise therefore makes the Souldier expert, witness our gallant Souldiers and Citizens of *London*, who are most of them so well grounded (by frequent practise) that their *Leaders* can scarce give a word of Command which is not easily apprehended by them, they being in their Exercises so often inured to such difficult expressions as these of *Inversion* and *Conversion*.

CHAP. I.

of Counter-marches with their severall sorts and kinds, affording much variety in time of Exercise.

Those which have a longing desire to be thoroughly knowing in this part or branch of *Military Discipline*, must take notice of these foure sorts, (*viz.*) *Counter-marching* of *Files*, next of *Ranks*, after the *Front*, and *Reer* *half-files*, and lastly, of right and left *half-ranks*: all which, are performed either by *intire*, or *divisionall* *Counter-marches*, or else by the *intire* changing of ground, and that by many ways the *Front half-files*, with the *Reer*, the right *half-ranks* with the left. So that an expert *Leader* may venture so far in them, as to continue his Exercise, (without reducing) almost for an hour, and not to expresse himself twice in any one word of Command; they affording such plenty and variety in them, that with pleasure using but four words of Command, he may bring each Souldier into his proper place again; observing these directions following. As first, to look down in the Body where his *File-leaders* are, and where his *Bringers-up*: and likewise making the severall places of his halfe *File-leaders*, and the *Bringers-up* of his *Front half-files*, together with his *Flankers*, and his middle *Files*: this speciall care being taken, he may begin, and proceed to their *Reducement*, after this manner.

If by some former *Counter-marches*, his *File-leaders* are in the place of his halfe *File-leaders*, and that his *Bringers-up* are in the room of the *Bringers-up* of the *Front half-files*, then he may proceed in this, or the like kind, commanding them to counter-march their *Front* and *Reer* into the midst; which being performed, they will stand in some pretty way of reducing, after facing them to the *Front*, where he meets with his *Bringers-up*, in stead of his *File-leaders*; which by one *Counter-march* will bring them up again into the *Front*. Yet perhaps the *Flankers* have inter-changed ground with the middle *File-leaders*, if so, then counter-march their *Flanks* into the midst, and face them to the *Front*, and if it happen that the right *Flank* is become the left, and the left the right: then counter-march their *Ranks* to any hand, and after face them to the first *Front* they are reduced. And further take this for a generall rule, that when *Files*, *Ranks*, or *Counter-march* to any hand, command them to counter-march to the contrary, and it will reduce them, or counter-marching your *Front* and *Reer* into the midst, counter-marching of them back again from the midst, will bring each man into his proper place again, the same rule being observed, reduceth the *flankers*, or *Front* and *Reer half-files* counter-marching of them from the midst.

Counter-marches, rightly considered, branch themselves forth into these three particulars.

The $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Macedonian.} \\ \text{Lacedemonian.} \\ \text{Chorean.} \end{array} \right.$

The *Macedonian* is a *Counter-march* of gaining ground, for that it leaveth the ground it formerly stood upon, and in lieu thereof taketh the ground before the *front*, and turneth their aspects unto the *reer*.

The *Lacedemonian* is a *Counter-march* of losing ground, for that it leaveth the ground it first stood upon, and in room thereof taketh the ground which is behind the *reer*, thither likewise altering the Souldiers aspects.

The *Chorean* is a *Counter-march* maintaining ground, keeping the ground the *Battalia* formerly stood upon, every Souldier taking anothers place, it likewise turns the Aspect towards the *reere*.

Thus you see (for all their great varietie which latter ages have invented) they consist but of three sorts or kinds, either *maintaining*, *gaining*, or *losing* of ground, and may be performed (as I said before) either by intire or divisionall *Counter-marches*.

It may now be expected that I declare unto the Souldier the meaning of each particular *Counter-march*, briefly, therefore, thus. Files counter-marching is when every Souldier followeth his *Leader*, ranks counter-marching is when every Souldier followeth his side man, whether it be to the right-hand or to the left: Front and reer half-files counter-marching is, sometimes when every particular Souldier followeth his *Leader* or his *Bringer up*, or else when they follow their half-file leaders, or their Bringers-up of the Front half-files, or the like: Right and left half-ranks counter-marching is, when every Souldier in the *rank* followeth the outmost men upon the right and left, or when they shall follow their inside right and left hand men, or the like: What hath hitherto been spoken may be sufficient both for the instruction and direction of any discreet Souldier; I come in the next place to set them all before them as they lie in Order.

CHAP. L.I.

Intire Counter-marching of Files.

Command. Files to the $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Right} \\ \text{Left} \end{array} \right.$ Hand Counter-march maintaining ground.

Direction. File-leaders turn off upon the ground you stand, the rest moving up successively into the file-leaders place, turning off untill the bringers up, come up into the Front, after face to your *Leader*.

Command. File-leaders stand, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves before your *Leaders*.

Command. File-leaders face about, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves behind your *Leaders*, face to your *Leader*.

Command. File-leaders face to the reer, the rest passe through to the right or left following your bringers-up, and placing your selves behind your *Leaders*; face all to your *Leader*.

Command. File-leaders stand, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves before your *Leaders* following your bringers-up.

Command. Files to the right or left counter-march losing ground, placing your selves before your bringers up.

Direction. Every file-leader turn off upon the ground he stands on, the rest successively doing the same untill they come to the last rank, who need doe no more then face about; after face all to their *Leader*.

Command. The last rank stand, the rest passe through to the right or left, placing your selves behind your bringers-up, every man following his *Leader*.

Direction. File-leaders turn off to the right or left, the rest following successively untill they are all cleer of the reer, then face to their *Leader*.

Command. Bringers-up stand, the rest face about, passe through to the right or left, and place your selves behind your bringers up.

Command.

Command. *Bringers-up* face about, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves before your *Bringers-up*.

Direction. Face all to the *Reer*, and begin the Motion with the second *Rank* from the *Reer*, moving forward, every man placing himself before his *Bringer-up*; to your *Leader*.

Command. Counter-march your *Front* and *Reer* into the midst.

Direction. *Half-files* face about, and turn off to the left, *Front half-files* turn off to the right; to your *Leader*:

Command. *Front* and *Reer half-files* counter-march to the right or left.

Direction. This is to be done distinctly, the *Front half-files* turning off to the right by themselves, the *Reer half-files* turning off in like manner; face to your *Leader*.

Command. *File-leaders*, and *half file-leaders* stand, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves before your *Leaders* and *half file-leaders*.

Command. Counter-march your *Front* & *Reer half-files* to the right & left from the midst.

Direction. *Front half-files* face about, and turn off to the right, *Reer half-files* turn off to the left to your *Leader*.

Command. *File-leaders* and *half file-leaders* face about, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves behinde your *Leaders*, and your *half file-leaders*; to your *Leaders*.

Command. *File-leaders*, and *half file-leaders* stand, the rest passe through to the right or left, & place your selves before your *Leaders* and *half file-leaders*, every man following his *Bringer-up*, and the *Bringers-up* of the *Front half-files*.

Command. *File-leaders*, and *half file-leaders* face about, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves behinde your *Leaders*, and *half file-leaders*, following your *Bringers-up*.

Direction. The *File-leaders*, and the *half file-leaders* (being first faced) are to stand, and the *Bringers-up* of the *Front* and *Reer half-files* are to move forwards, untill they be cleer of the standing part, after they are to face to the *Reer*, which being ended, they are again to face to the *Front*.

CHAP. LII.

Divisionall Counter-marching of Files.

Command. **F***ile-leaders*, and *Bringers-up* stand, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves before your *Leaders*, and your *Bringers-up*.

Direction. *Half-files* face about, the Counter-march being ended, command them to move forwards, and close their *Divisions*.

Command. *File-leaders* face about, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves behinde your *Leaders*, and your *Bringers-up*.

Direction. The two last *Ranks* from the *Reer* face about, and then they are to begin the Motion together, which being ended; face them to the *front*, and the *half-files* are to move forward, and to close their *Divisions*.

Command. *File-leaders*, and *Bringers-up* stand, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves before your *Leaders*, and your *Bringers-up*, following the *half file-leaders*, and the *Bringers-up* of the *Front half-files*.

Direction. *Half-files* face about, this Motion is begun by the *Bringers-up* of each *Division*, which being ended, they are to face to their *Leader*, the *half files* moving forwards, closing their *Divisions*.

Command. *File-leaders* face about, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves behinde your *Leaders*, and your *Bringers-up*, following the *half file-leaders*, and the *Bringers-up* of the *front half-files*.

Direction. The two last *Ranks* from the *Reer* face about; this Motion is begun by the *Bringers-up* of each *Division*, who are to lead away the rest following untill they be cleer of the *Front* and *Reer*, and after to face about, placing themselves behinde their *half file-leaders*, and the *Bringers-up* of the *front half-files*, then facing to the *front*, the *half-files* moving forwards, closing their *Divisions*.

Command. Counter-march to the right and left, your *Front* and *Reer half-files* from the midst (losing ground) every man placing himself before his *Leader*, and his *Bringer-up*.

Direction.

Direction. Front half-files face about, and turn off to the right, and the half-file leaders turn off to the left, and march cleer of the front and reer and after the file-leaders, the bringers up are but to face about, and the Counter-march will be ended, then face the half-files to the front, let them move forward and close their divisions.

Command. Front and reer half-files interchange ground to the right or left, marching cleer each from other.

Direction. Front half-files face about, and passe through to your own right hands, untill you be cleer, six foot of each other, then face to the Front, the half-files moving forwards, and closing their Divisions.

Command. Front and Reer half-files counter-march to the right, and inter-change ground.

Direction. Half-files face about, and turn off to the right, and front half-files at the same time doing the like, moving forward untill they be cleer one of another six foot, then facing to their Leader, close their Divisions.

CHAP. LIII.

Intire Counter-marches of Ranks.

Command. **R**anks to the right-hand counter-marching maintaining ground.

Direction. Face to the right, the right-hand file that was, turn off to the right, the rest moving up into the same ground, turning off likewise, to your Leader.

Command. The out-most file upon the right, face to the right, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves before your right-hand men.

Direction. Face to the right, and passe through as before exprest, to your Leader.

Command. The right-hand file face to the left, the rest passe through to the right or left, and place your selves behinde your right-hand men.

Direction. Face to the right, and move forwards, and place your selves behinde your right-hand men, to your Leader.

Command. Ranks to the left-hand counter-march losing ground.

Direction. The out-most is to turn off to the left about untill he hath brought his aspect unto the right flank, and so consequently all the rest, moving still forwards untill they have gained upon the out-side of the right flank so much ground as they have lost, or that they have placed themselves before their right-hand men by following their left-hand men, face to your Leader.

Command. The right-hand file face to the left, the rest passe through to the right, following your left-hand men, and placing your selves behinde your right-hand File.

Direction. The out-most File upon the left face to the right, and march through the Intervalls towards the right flank; and when he is moved away, the rest upon the left are successively to do the same, untill they have in lieu of that ground they formerly stood, gained so much upon the out-side of the right flank, then facing about toward the left flank, after face to your Leader.

Command. Ranks to the left-hand counter-march maintaining ground.

Direction. Face to the left, and the left-hand File that was torn off to the left on the same ground he stands, the rest moving up successively doing the same, to your Leader.

Command. The left-hand File stand, the rest face to the left, passe through, and place your selves on the out-side of your left-hand men.

Direction. The left-hand File face to the left, the rest passe through to the left, and place your selves before your left-hand men; to your Leader.

Command. The left-hand File face to the right, the rest face to the left, passe through to the left, and place yourselves behinde your left-hand men.

Command. The left-hand File face to the left, the rest passe through to the left, and place your selves before your left-hand men, following your right-hand men.

Direction. Face all to the left, and the out-most Files upon the right move forward upon the left, the rest successively doing the same, untill you have all placed your selves before your left-hand men, to your Leader.

Command. The left-hand File face to the right, the rest face to the left, passe through to the left, and place your selves behinde your left-hand men, following your right-hand men.

Direction.

Direction. The *right-hand file* that was is to begin this motion, the rest are consequently to follow untill they have gained as much ground on the out-side of the *left-flank* as before they lost, after face about to the right, and after to their *Leader*.

Command. Ranks to the right-hand counter-march every man placing himselfe on the out-side of his left-hand man, by following his right-hand man.

Direction. The left-hand file stand, the out-moſt file upon the right, is to turne about to the right, untill he hath brought his aspect to the *left-flanke*, then moving forward untill he be cleer of the second *file*, after the rest are to doe the like forsaking the ground they stood upon, and in lieu thereof to gain so much upon the out-side of the *left-flanke*, placing themselves on the out-side of their left-hand men; their Aspects being to the Front. Or you may command the out-moſt *file* upon the right to face to the left, and so begin to lead untill he be cleer of the second *file*, the rest doing the same untill they have all placed themselves on the out-side of their left-hand men, their Aspects being to the Front; which I conceive, to be the easier way.

Command. Counter-march your Flanks into the midſt.

Direction. Face to the right and left outward, right-flank turn off to the right, left-flank turn off to the left, untill they meet in the midſt, to your *Leader*.

Command. Right and left *half-ranks* counter-march to the right or left.

Direction. Face all to the right, the right *half-ranks* are to turne off to the right by themselves, and the left *half-ranks* in like manner, to your *Leader*.

Command. The out-moſt *File* upon the right, and the right-hand *file* of the left *half-ranke* stand, the rest face to the right, passe through and place your selves on the out-side of your right-hand men, face to your *Leader*.

Command. The out-moſt *file* upon the right, and the right-hand *file* of the left *half-rank* face to the right and stand, the rest passe through to the right, and place your selves before your right-hand men, face all to the right, and the motion being ended, face to your *Leader*.

Command. The out-moſt *file* upon the right, and the right-hand *file* of the left *half-rank* face to the left and stand, the rest face to the right, passe through and place your selves behind your right-hand men, to your *Leader*.

Direction. For these three last Counter-marches is for the moving part to begin to Counter-march, who are the next *files* of the standing part, and so to follow successively untill they have performed the command, and after to face to their *Leader*.

Command. The right-hand *file* of the left *half-rank*, and the out-moſt *file* upon the right stand, the rest passe through to the right and place your selves on the out-side of your right hand men following your out-moſt *files*.

Direction. The out-moſt *files* are to face to the right, and to lead away untill they be cleer of the next, who likewise are to follow successively.

Command. The out-moſt *file* upon the right, and the right-hand *file* of the left *half-rank* face to the right and stand, the rest passe through to the right, and place your selves before your right-hand men.

Direction. Face all to the right, and the out-moſt *files* that were, are to begin the motion, placing themselves before their right-hand men, the rest following successively, to your *Leader*.

Command. The outmoſt *file* upon the right, and the right-hand *file* of the left *half-rank* face to the left and stand, the rest passe through to the right; and place your selves behind your right-hand men.

Direction. The out-moſt *files* are to turn about untill they have brought their aspects unto the *right-flanke*, then move away untill they be cleer of the second *file*, and in like manner they are to turn off, doing the same untill they have placed themselves behind their right hand men, then facing to the left-about, and after to their *Leader*, to even their *ranks* and straighten their *files*.

Command. Counter-march your right and left *half-ranks* from the midſt.

Direction. Face inward, right *half-ranks* turn off to the right, left *half-ranks* turn off to the left; to your *Leader*.

CHAP. LIV.

Divisionall Counter-marches of the right and left half-ranks.

Command. **T**He outmost file upon each flanke stand, the rest passe through to the right and left, and place your selves on the out-side of your right and left-hand men.

Direction. The rest face outward, and begin the motion by the next files, the others following in order, and after to close their files into the midst to open order.

Command. The out-most file upon each flanke face outward and stand, the rest passe through to the right and left, and place your selves before your out-side men.

Direction. The rest are to face outward, and the next files unto them that first faced are to begin the motion, placing themselves before their out-side men, after face to their leader, and close files into the midst to order.

Command. The out-most file upon each flanke face inward, the rest passe through and place your selves behind your out-side men.

Direction. The rest are to face outward, and to passe through to the right and left, placing themselves behind their right and left-hand men, and after to move forward, and close their divisions and face to their Leader.

Command. The out-most file upon each flanke stand, the rest passe through to the right and left, and place your selves on the out-side of your right and left-hand men following your in-most files.

Direction. The in-most files are to begin the motion, moving away to the right and left, untill they be cleer of their second files, and then they are to move away successively untill they have all placed themselves on the out-side of their right and left-hand men, and then close files into the midst to open order.

Command. The out-most files upon each flanke face outward, the rest passe through to the right and left, placing your selves before your right and left-hand men, following your in-most files.

Direction. The rest are likewise to face outward, and the inmost files are to begin the motion, the rest following in order untill they have placed themselves before their out-side men, after face to the Front, and close files into the the midst to open order.

Command. The out-most file upon each flanke face inward, the rest passe through to the right and left, and place your selves behind your out-side men following the inmost files.

Direction. The rest are to face outward, the in-most files begin to move forward to the right and left, the rest consequently doe the same, untill they all stand behind their out-side men, then facing to the right and left about, closing their divisions by moving forward, after face to the Front.

Command. Counter-march your right and left half-ranks from the midst losing ground and placing your selves before your out-side men.

Direction. Face inward, right half-ranks turn off to the right, and left half-ranks turn off to the left, and move forward untill you have placed your selves before your out-side men, after face to your Leader, and close files into the midst to open order.

Command. Right and left half-ranks interchange ground.

Direction. Face inward, and passe through to your own right-hand, untill you be cleer six foot each of other, after face to your Leader, and close files into the midst to open order.

Command. Right and left half-ranks counter-march to the right and left, and interchange ground.

Direction. Face outward, right half-ranks turn off to the right, left half-ranks turn off to the left, and march cleer each of the other, after face to the front, and close files inward to open order.

Thus much may suffice to be spoken of all the several sorts and kinds of Counter-marches, which if any shall conceive my pains fruitlesse in culling out such plentie and varietie, there being

being so few of them practised among able and knowing Souldiers, my best apologic will be the high and venerable esteem had of Antiquity necessitated me thereto, as also to give full satisfaction to the *Leaders* of our private *Meetings*, who of late have laboured to inure their Souldiers in the full practise thereof, made me the willinger rather to undergo the censure of some, then to incur the displeasure of many. Yet by the way, give me leave fully to declare my selfe concerning the use of them; for, my opinion is, that of all the *Motions*, tending to *Martiall Discipline*: these may the best be spared, as being of little use, and not so much as practised abroad upon service, and therefore the fewer of them any Leader shall use in his Exercise, in my judgement, he doth the better, not spending time in needlesse speeches, telling of his Souldiers, that this is the *Macedonian*, this is the *Lacedemonian*, or *Ocean Countermarch*; not to lie under the censure my selfe of mispending time, I come, therefore briefly, in the next place to treat of *Wheelings*, being a subject more profitable for the intelligible Souldier.

CHAP. LV.

of *Wheelings*, with their severall uses.

HAVING proceeded thus far in shewing all the severall sorts and kinds of *Military Motions*, it will now in the next place be expected that I speak somewhat of *Wheelings*, and as formerly, so now, to set before the Souldier their severall kinds and uses. Wherefore, take notice of two sorts, *Wheelings angular*, and *Wheelings* on the *Center*. (which latter is commonly called the *Prince of Orange his wheeling*) being acted, or performed by the Souldier two severall ways, that is to say, *Intire*, or *Divisionall Intire Wheelings* to the *Angles*, are when the Souldiers turn their *Aspects* from the *front*. proper to either of the *Flanks*, or *Reer*, whereby they may give the winde, or Sun, or some like advantage, bringing their best Souldiers thither for to encounter an Enemy. For the better performance of this *Motion*, it will be convenient to close *Ranks* and *Files* into the midst to order, and to keep their due distance both in *rank* and *file*, observing in their *Ranks* their right and left-hand men, and following their *Leaders*, always conforming themselves in their *Motion* to the most commendable *Posture*, which is *Pikes advanced*, and *Muskets poised*. *Wheeling* the Battail on the *Center*, is when they are so straitened with ground, that they have not room to *wheel* to the right or left, as in the former, which gaineth as much more ground before the *front*, as formerly they stood on; this *wheeling* brings their best Souldiers to either of the *flanks*, or *Reer*; I could wish that this *wheeling* were more oftner practised amongst us, for by it the Souldiers are better kept together in their *Motion*, being not so apt to flie out, as in the former.

Divisionall Wheelings (provided they have sufficient number of men) are of singular good use to encounter severall Enemies at one and the same time, which the *front* of our *Battails* bringing our best Souldiers for to skirmish with them. It is likewise usefull to bring either Arms into *Front*, *Reer*, or both the *flanks*: for suppose the *Muskettiers* to be upon the *flanks*, and fearing a desperate charge of the Horse, to fall upon them, by a *Divisionall Wheeling* the *Pikes*, are thither brought to receive their on-set, and in the mean space, the *Muskettiers* have time to recruit their *Bandeliers* again: much more might be spoken, but my intent is not to fill my Book with impertinent discourses, knowing what is already spoken is sufficient for the intelligible Souldier.

CHAP. LVI.

Intire Wheelings.

Command.

W

heel your Battail to the

Right.

Left.

Right.

Left.

about.

Direction. The right or the left-hand men in the *front* are the hinges of these *Motions*, the rest have a greater compassse to march, then they to bring their *Aspects*, unto the place commanded, following their *Leaders*.

H

Command.

Command. Wheel your Battail on
the same ground to the

}	Right.	}	about.
	Left.		
	Right.		
	Left.		

Direction. The left half-ranks moveth forwards wheeling to the right; and the right half-ranks contrariwise faceth to the left side-wise falling backward, moving still unto the place commanded.

CHAP. LVII.

Divisionall Wheelings.

Command. **W**heel the Battail off by *Division* from the *Front*.

Direction. Turn off to the right and left.

Command. Wheel the Battail off by *Division* from the *Reer*.

Direction. Face to the *Reer*, and turn off to the right and left.

Command. Wheel the Battail inward to the *Reer*.

Direction. Open from the midst to convenient distance, and turn off to the right and left.

Command. Wheel the Battail inward to the *Front* from the *Reer*.

Direction. Face to the *Reer*, open from the midst, and wheel inward to the *front*.

Command. Wheel off the Body by *Division* from the right flank.

Direction. Face to the right.

Command. Wheel off the Body by *Division* from the left flank.

Direction. Face to the left.

Command. Wheel the Body inward to the left flank from the right.

Direction. Face to the right, and open outward to convenient distance to wheel inward to the left flank.

Command. Wheel the Body inward to the right flank from the left.

Direction. Face to the left, and open outward to convenient distance, to wheel inward to the right flank.

Command. Wheel off your *Front* and *Reer* half-files by *Division*.

Direction. Half-files face about, and *Front* and *Reer* half-files turn off by *Division*.

Command. Wheel your *Front* and *Reer* half-files inward to the midst of *Ranks*.

Direction. Half-files face about, and *Front* and *Reer* half-files open outward to convenient distance to wheel inward to the midst of *Ranks*.

Command. Wheel off your *Front* and *Reer* half-files by *Division* from the midst of *Ranks*.

Direction. *Front* half-files face about, and *Front* and *Reer* half-files wheel off to the right and left by *Division*.

Command. Wheel *Front* and *Reer* half-files inward, both to the *Front* and *Reer* from the midst of *Ranks*.

Direction. *Front* half-files face about, and *Front* and *Reer* half-files open from the midst to convenient distance, and wheel inward into *Front* and *Reer*.

Command. Wheel off your right and left half-ranks by *Division*.

Direction. Face outward, and wheel off to the right and left by *Division*.

Command. Wheel your right and left half-ranks inward to the midst of files.

Direction. Face outward, and open to the right and left to convenient distance to wheel inward to the midst of files.

Command. Wheel off your right and left half-ranks by *Division* from the midst of files.

Direction. Face inward, and cause them to move backward to convenient distance to wheel off by *Division* from the midst of files.

Command. Wheel your right and left half-ranks inward to both flanks from the midst of files.

Direction. Face inward, and open to the right and left to convenient distance to wheel inward to both the flanks.

Command.

Command. Wheel the outward *Angles* to the right and left about, to the *Center*.

Direction. Face to the outward *Angles*, and close *ranks* and *files* to close order, and the *Angles* on the right turn off to the right, the *Angles* on the left turn off to the left.

Command. Wheel the inward *Angles* to the right and left about inward from the *Center*.

Direction. Face to the inward *Angles*, or to the *Center*, and wheel about to the right and left inward from the *Center*.

These are all the *intire* and *divisonall Wheelings*, that have hitherto been practised by any, according to my best observation; there are other *Wheelings* which may properly be term'd *Doublings*, which I have placed amongst the *Doublings*, where they more properly belong. Now if any shall demand of me a reason why I have omitted the *Reductions*, to each perticuler *Command*; my answer thereunto is easie, for as in the *Counter-marches*, so in these, they may be reduced by three or four words of *Command*, except a *Commander* shall of set purpose keep them off from the same; to make some experiment, after any *wheeling* is performed, face them after to their first *Front*, and command them to even their *ranks*, and straighten their *files*, they will be as at first; and unto what hand soever they *wheeled*, command them to *wheel* to the contrary hand, and they will be reduced unto the first *front*, or what part is *wheeled* off by *Division*, *wheel* them inward again from that place, and it will easily reduce them. Thus you see that it is almost impossible for a *Leader* to be out, unless he be extremely ignorant, therefore he need not fear to venter far in the progresse of them, before he shall reduce them, provided he use no *Doublings*: which if he shall, great care must be had that he be not put to a stand; for the prevention whereof, let him look back unto those *doublings* by *wheelings*, wherein one doth reduce another, where he may finde some remedieto help himselfe forth again.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of Firings, either for delight or service.

THe chiefeft thing required of the *Muskettiers* next their *Postures*, by which they are taught how to handle their Arms with delight both marching or skirmishing, is *firing*, which to speak the truth, is the full accomplishment of all the rest; for unless they be really performed, the rest are of no great advantage. For to what end is it for any man to *prime*, *lade*, or *cock*, if he present not answerably; therefore *firings* are the execution of all the former; in so much my advice shall be to all *Commanders*, that they be carefull and diligent to have all their *Muskettiers* often practised with false *firings*, which is, firing in the *pan* only, and falling off, as hereafter followeth to the end, that in time of need they may not spend their *powder*, and *bullets*, in vain. And that they may likewise know where to fall off, that others may do the like, and where to place themselves securest from danger; yet so as they may be still aiding the one, unto the other: I shall, therefore, for the good of my Countrey, and for the benefit of all such as are herein concern'd, collect forth some *firings*, which shall be every one differing from the other in one kind or other, either in the execution or reducing, whereby the ingenious Souldier may cull forth such as he best likes to make use of, what he shall think to be most fit and pertinent to his intended purpose; be it either for delight or service, briefly therefore thus. *Firings* really considered can be perform'd but five ways, that is to say, to the *Front*, *Reer*, *right* or *left-Flank*, *Oblique*, or *Angular*; but there is so much variety to be expressed in the performance of each of these, that it makes them seem so many severall *firings*, as by the following discourse shall be fully demonstrated.

CHAP. LIX.

Severall Firings to be performed with any number of men.

THe *Front* being the head of the *Body*, and therefore the more honourable part challengeth the superiority, or first place, and therefore without any farther circumstance, I come directly to the firings as they lie in order, as followeth; draw all the *Muskettiers* before the *Pikes*, before you begin your firings.

Firings to the
Front.

- 1 } Two *Ranks* advancing ten paces. } falling in the *Reer*
- 2 Fire. } By single files, advancing three paces. } of themselves.
- 3 Fire and flank the *Pikes*.
- 4 Fire by *Files* advancing 10 or 20 paces, first, single, secondly, ranking inward, 1, 2, 3, 4, or more, falling down into their places again.
- 5 Fire by *Ranks* filing, and advancing 10 or 20 paces, and moving down, and ranking in the *Reer* of their own *Divisions*.
- 6 Fire by *Divisions* drawn off 10, or 20, or 30 paces, and returning again.
- 7 Fire even with the *Front*, and falling in the *Reer* of their own *Divisions*.
- 8 Fire even with the *half-files*, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves.
- 9 Fire by way of *Introduction*, thus, the first *rank* fires, and stands, the last *rank* passeth up between the *files*, and placing themselves before the *File-leaders*, or first *rank*, then stand, and give fire, the rest doing the like till the *file-leaders* come up again into their places, and fire the second time.
- 10 Fire by *Introduction* after this manner, the first *rank* gives fire, and stands, the rest moving forward untill the next *rank* hath placed themselves before the first; then stands, and gives fire, the rest moving up, and doing, the like untill they have all fired twice.
- 11 Fire even with the *Front*, falling in the *Reer* of *Pikes*.
- 12 Fire by *Extraduction*, the first *rank* passing from the *Reer* upon the out-side of the *Pikes*, upon the left, untill they have placed themselves in a *rank*, in the *Reer* of the *Muskettiers*, the rest successively doing the like, untill they have fired all over, and brought themselves as at first.
- 13 Fire by the out-most *files*, wheeling or ranking outward into the *Front*, falling off likewise, being led off by *Bringers-up*, leading up next the *Pikes*, this done twice reduceth.
- 14 Fire two *Ranks* together.
- 15 Fire four *Ranks* together; two kneeling, } falling off, or
and two standing upright. } falling down.
- 16 Fire six *Ranks* together, two kneeling, two }
flooping, and two standing upright. }
- 17 Fire some *Ranks* drawn forth to the } right } or by division,
left } and in again.

Here the *Muskettiers* are up-
on the *Flanks*
again.

Note also if you please, you may draw forth one *Rank* to the right, and another to the left, at one and the same time together.

18 Fire by *files* drawn forth oblique, then face about, and move into their places. Note also that severall figures may be made by these kinds of firings; as the *V*: the *W*: or the *Fort-battail*, and the like.

19 Fire by *ranks*, ranking into the *front*, or *files* ranking into the *front*, and ranking, or filing as they were.

20 Fire by *files* wheeling outward or inward into the *front*, and filing again as they were.

Thus much briefly of firings to the *Front*, the *Reer* challengeth the next place, where suppose all the *Muskettiers* to be in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*, the *Body* marching.

Firings to the
Reer.

- 1 Fire to the } right } about falling in the *front*
left } of their own *Divisions*.
- 2 Fire and fall off to the right and left, and rank with the first *rank* of *Pikes*, into the *front*.
- 3 Fire even with the *Reer*, and fall off before the *Front* of your own *Divisions* of *Muskettiers*.
- 4 Fire

4 Fire

4 Fire even with the *Reer*, or last *rank*, and fall off to the right and left with a swift Motion, placing yourselves 10 20 or 30 paces before the *front* of *Pikes*, still facing to the Body, and making ready again, and opening to the right and left, untill they be cleer of the *Pikes*.

5 Fire by *Introduction* to the *Reer* twice over untill they come down even with the *Reer*, and flank the *Pikes*.

6 Fire to the right and left about to the *Reer*, *Ranks* drawn forth, and in again.

7 Fire to the *Reer*, every *rank* drawn forth cleer each from other, and falling in again, and flanking the *Pikes*.

8 Fire to the right and left about *files* ranking downward to the *Reer*, and filing as they were.

9 Fire to the right and left about, *ranks*, ranking downward to the *Reer*, and ranking as they were.

10 Fire losing ground, falling off to the right and left about, just before the *front* of *Pikes*.

11 Now if the Enemy pursue eagerly, and that you cannot make a safe retreat marching, face all about, and fire upon them by way of *Extraduction*, or by *half-ranks*, divided as formerly hath been shewn.

And thus much likewise briefly concerning *firings* to the *Reer*; in the next place I shall shew some *firings* to the *flanks*: for performance whereof, it will be expedient to bring all the *Muskettiers* upon one of the *flanks*, but for order sake, I will begin with the *firings* from the right *flank*. Firings to the Flanks marching.

1 Fire to the right, and gather up your *files*, it is to be performed after this manner, the out-most *file* upon the right is to face to the right, and to give fire, and after to face to the *front*, and stand, untill the next *file* have fired in like manner, and then the first *file* gathers up unto him upon the right even a *Brest*, and standing untill the third *file* have faced to the right, and fired in like manner, and after facing to the *front*, the other *files* moving up in the like way as before, and following successively this rule untill all have given fire, and then to march up, and even the *front* of *Pikes*, the *Muskettiers* will stand as at first, when they were brought upon the right *flank*.

2 Fire to the right, *File-leaders* leading up their *files* next to the *Pikes*.

3 Fire to the right, *Bringers-up* leading away next the *Pikes*, which being twice done, reduceth them.

4 Fire to the right, leading up on the contrary *flank*, either by the *File-leaders*, or *Bringers-up*.

5 Fire to the right, and leading up by *Bringers-up* between the *Pikes*, and passing thorough to their places again, doing the same, reduceth them.

6 Fire to the right, and leading up between the *Pikes* by the *Leaders*, and passing thorough the *Pikes* again to the right, they will be as at first; the like may be done to the left, or in some kind to both *flanks*, at one and the same time.

7 Fire to the right by *ranks* wheeling and *ranks*, to rank as they were to the right, upon their marching reduceth them.

8 Fire to the right by *ranks* inverting, or filing, and upon the March the *Souldiers* ranking, reduceth them.

9 Fire to the right *files*, filing, and gathering up their *files* to the left reduceth them.

These *firings* being performed marching, the next shall be upon a *Stand*, where note you must cast all your *Muskettiers* upon that *flank*, where you conceive the Enemy will fall on, whether right, left, or both, but for order sake we usually begin with the right, wherefore face to the right, and proceed as followeth,

1 Fire and fall in the *Reer* of your selves.

2 Fire and flank the *Pikes*.

3 Fire even with the *Pikes*, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves.

4 Fire even with the *Reer*, moving forth to the right and left, by *ranks* falling in the *Reer* of themselves.

Firings to the right Flank upon a Stand.

5 Fire by extraduction by *half-ranks* drawn forth, and falling *rank* after *rank* in the *Rear* of the *Pikes*, after to reduce them as at first, cause them to double their *front* by *Division*.

These firings may as well be performed to both the *flanks*, as to one, the Body being faced accordingly, which would make many *firings* more, but these already set down, may be sufficient for any ingenious capacity to work upon for the present, observing this rule, that in every *firing* he shall make use in time of his Exercise, he may reduce them by another, which will be more pleasing to the Souldier, by reason of the great variety it affords unto them. And now, in the last place, I know it will be expected, that I should speak something of the use of *firings*: wherefore briefly thus.

Firings to the *front* marching, or moving, when we either pursue after, or approach to an Enemy.

Firings to the *front*, maintaining ground when two Bodies encounter one another.

Firings to the *front*, losing ground, when either we are forced thereunto by necessity, or that we do it out of policy, to draw the Enemy into a train, or saare.

Firings to the *Rear* marching, when we are pursued by an Enemy, yet would continue our March untill we have gained some place of importance, or advantage.

Firings to the *Rear* upon a *Stand*, when we are compelled thereunto by the violent pursuit of an Enemy; or else when we have gained a place of advantage of ground, or have recovered the winde or Sun, whereby we are the better able to encounter with them.

Firings to the *flank*, or *flanks* marching, when we are assaulted by some *Ambuscado* secretly placed to hinder our passage; or supposing two Armies are marching to one and the same place, a river being betwixt them.

Firings to *flank*, or *flanks* standing when the Enemy chargeth on with a resolution to cut off or divide part of the Army from the other.

Having thus briefly set down severall *firings* to *front*, *rear*, and both *flanks*, with their uses either marching, or standing, I hold it convenient in the next place to give some short directions in time of *Battail*, both to the Officers, and their Souldiers.

First, that the *Drummers* have a vigilant eye upon their Commanders, whose voices are drown'd by the loud thundering of the *Cannon*, or *Musketers*, as also by the *neighing* of Horses, or the lamentable cries of the *maim'd* and wounded Souldiers, at which time the *Leaders Staffe*, *half-Pike*, or what else he carries in his hand may be sufficient for to instruct them to continue their charge, retreat, or else to charge home.

Secondly, that the *Serjeants* be carefull in time of *Battail*, that their Souldiers be at their due distance of order both in *rank* and *file*, and that upon their *firings*, whether they be by *forlorne* either of *files*, or *ranks* drawn forth, or otherwise by *Divisions*, they see them neatly and handsomly perform'd by *cocking* their *matches*, and presenting something lower then breast-high, and after *uncocking* and returning them, wheeling off either to the right, left, or both, falling in the *Rear* of themselves, or else where as shall be appointed in an orderly manner, whereby they may decently come up again to fire against the Enemy.

Thirdly, that the Souldiers present and give fire upon their *Refts*, not using that slovenly posture of popping their *Matches* into the *Pan*, their *Muskets* being on their left sides; which is not only hurtfull unto themselves, but much endangers their fellow-Souldiers, and by so doing, they scarce or ever do any execution against an Enemy. But here I meet with an objection framed by the Souldiers after this manner; our *Refts* are of little or no use unto us in time of skirmishing, for they are, we confesse in the *Military Gardens*, but in time of *Battail* both troublesome and cumbersome unto us, to whom I reply, what if they be a little cumbersome at the first, must they therefore be rejected, and carelessly thrown away, nay, rather they ought frequently to practise themselves in the use thereof, which if they did, they would finde the same very serviceable unto them in time of skirmishing, where-with they fire better, and in a more comely and gracefull way, far more securing both themselves, and fellow-souldiers from danger, and likewise upon their March; it is both a help and support unto them.

Fourthly,

Fourthly, their eyes ought likewise in time of Battail to be fixed stedfastly upon their *Captain*, always conforming to him in Posture when he shall prepare to charge or retreat, and likewise they ought to be knowing and well versed in the severall *beats* of the *Drum*, which if well observed by all, there would not be so much confusion in time of Battail amongst them, as many times by sad experience hath been found, when disregarding their Officers commands, and the beating of the *Drums*, they ignorantly and rashly run on in a disorderly manner, by which means they have cut off their own Officers and fellow-souldiers, many times more then they have endangered the enemy.

Thus you see what great necessity there is of instructing and training up the Souldiers in their Postures, and how requisite it is to conforme themselves to their Officers in time of Battail, performing thereby better execution against their Enemies; and by their decent and comely array preserve themselves from imminent dangers and perils.

The Souldiers having now all the ground-woke of the exercising a body of men, laid down before them, in the next place he labours to make experiment thereof, but being no Officer he cannot attain thereunto without speciall leave from his Superiours, and therefore (being a *File-leader*) he craves leave to exercise his single *File* both in their *Postures* and *Motions*, contenting himselfe for present with that small number whereby he is able to run through many plain things of *Distances*, *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Counter-marchings* and *Wheelings*. But being not fully satisfied, he presumes upon the former favour had from his Superiours to goe on to make every man in his *File* a *File-leader*, first, by *succession*, and after (being not called away by the *beat* of the *Drum*, or by his Officers to lead up his *File*, and to joyne into a Body) according unto *Dignity*, and after endeavours to reduce them again by proper words of command.

This liberty being granted at convenient times unto a *File-leader*, much indeers the Souldiers good affections unto their Officers, and is a means whereby many others are brought in to be true lovers of Military Exercises, as being much taken and well pleased with the sight of the former things. And therefore, I could wish, that they were not hereafter prevented, as formerly I have observed by the malice of some, who have had places of command bestowed upon them, more through favour or by reason of their riches, then for any worth or desert found in them: They perhaps hold it a great disparagement unto them to be eclipsed, but a judicious and discreet Captain accounts it a great honour to lead such gallant men that are as able, and as well knowing as himself.

CHAP. LX.

The way to make every man in a File fix deepe according to succession a File-leader, by doublings, not using one word of command twice.

Command.

Files rank two to the left

Brings the second man into the Front. 2

Files to the left double.

Command. Halfe-files double your Front to the left, Files double your depth to the left.

3

Command. Bringers-up double your Front to the right, Double your Files to the left intire advancing,

4

Command. Bringers-up double your Front to the left, Double your Files to the right intire advancing.

5

Command. File, rank two to the right, Files to the right double,

6

Reducement. File, rank to the left into the Front, Rank, file six to the left.

The File.

1
2
3
4
5
6

CHAP.

The Dignity
of the File.

1
6
4
3
5
2

CHAP. LXI.

The way to make every man in a File six deep File-leader, according to dignity by a doubling, not using one Word of command twice.

Command. **H**alf-files double your front to the left.
Files double to the right intire advancing, every man placing himselfe before his *Leader*. 2
Command. Front half-file double the reer to the left.
Files double to the left intire advancing, every man placing himselfe before his *Leader*. 3
Command. Bringer-up double your Front to the right.
Files double your depth to the right, every man falling behind his bringer-up. 4
Command. Half-files double your Front to the right.
Files double to the left intire advancing. 5
Files ranke two to the right.
Files to the right double.
Bringer-up, double your Front to the left.
Files double your depth to the left, every man falling behind his bringer-up. 6
Reduement. File, ranke two to the left.
Files to the left double.

The File.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

CHAP. LXII.

The way to make every man in a File eight deep File-leader by succession, and that by doubling, not using one Word of command twice.

Command. **F**ile, ranke two to the left. 2
Ranks invert to the left.
Command. Half-file double your front to the right.
Double your files to the right intire advancing, every man placing himself before his *Leader*. 3
Command. Files ranke two to the right. 4
Files to the right double. 4
Command. Front half-files double your reer to the right. 5
Double your files to the left intire advancing. 6
Command. Files, ranke two to the right into the reer. 6
Ranks invert to the right.
Command. Half-files double your Front to the left.
Double your files to the left intire advancing, every man placing himself before his *Leader*. 7
Command. File, ranke two to the left into the Reer.
Face to your *Leader*.
Double your Files to the right advancing.
Reduement. File, ranke to the right into the Front.
Ranke, file right to the right.

CHAP. LXIII.

The way to make every man in a File eight deep, a File-leader according unto dignitie, by a doubling.

Command. **B**ringer-up double your front to the left.
Double your files to the right intire advancing. 2
Command. Half-files double your front to the left.
Double your files to the left intire advancing. 3
Command. Bringer-up double your Front to the right. 4
Files double your depth to the right.
Command. File, rank two to the right.
Double your files to the right intire advancing, every man placing himself before his *Leader*. 5

Command.

The Dignity
of the File.

1
6
7
4
3
8
5
2

Command. Front half-file double your *Rear* to the right, following your *Leaders*.

Double your *files* to the right by *Division*, every man placing himself before his *Leader*, and his *Bringer-up*. } 6

Command. Front half-file double your *Rear* to the left, following your *Leaders*.

Double your *files* to the left by *Division*, every man placing himself before his *Leader*, and his *Bringer-up*. } 7

Command. The two first, and the two last men double the four middlemost men to the right, following your *Leaders*, and your *Bringers-up*.

Files double your *Depth* to the left. } 8

Reduement. Half-files double the *front* to the right.

Bringers-up double your *front* to the right.

Files to the right and left double inward.

Double your *files* to the left intire advancing.

Although I have here set down words of *Command* to make every man a *File-leader*, both by *Succession*, and *Dignity*; a Commander is not thereby tied up, but may if he please, practise the same upon a whole Company, altering but a little some words of *Command*; As for example, we cannot say in a *file*, double your *ranks*, these being none, untill there be some other *files* joyned thereunto, and therefore if we intend a doubling by a single *file*, we command it to *rank* two to the right or left, which in a Company must be exprest *Ranks* to the right or left double. Thus you see with a little alteration every man is brought up into the *Front*, either by *succession*, or *dignity*, whether the *files* be even numbers or odd, great bodies or small. But here by the way, I must crave pardon to speak something in commendation of these *Doublings*, in answer to them that accounts them but *toys*; to whom I will be so bold as to tell them that it is not for want of ignorance, they so slightly esteem of them, for were they truly knowing in the Art of *Drilling*, they must of force confesse abundance of variety in them, affording much delight to him that shall command, and great content unto them that are commanded, perceiving themselves to be made *file-leaders* by the skill and worth of their *Leaders*. And, besides, there may be just cause (at one time or other) many times to alter the *ranks*, exchanging the one for the other, bringing thereby their best deserving Souldiers into the chiefeest places of honour, and casting others into their rooms at the discretion of the Commander. Therefore, I could wish, all *Leaders* whatsoever to be well skill'd and vers'd in these *Doublings*, the frequent practise whereof will makethem more apt in the Exercise of more difficult things in the *Art Military*. To which ingenious study I leave them, and in the next place proceed to shew them severall *figures* of *Battail* to be performed by single *files*, consisting of severall *Depths* of men.

CHAP. LXIV.

Concerning Figures of Battail to be performed by single Files, with some admonitions to those that shall practise themselves therein.

THe great plenty, and variety of matter, that may be performed in the exercising of a single *file*, makes me wonder at the ignorance of those who are famed abroad for able knowing Souldiers; who after they have passed over the *Postures*, are at a Stand, as if there were nothing else to be done with the same. But did they truly understand what dishonour and disparagement it is unto them, they would not be so idle and backward, but set times apart, often inuring themselves to the practise thereof, going through all the *Motions*, *Distances*, *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Counter-marches*, and *Wheelings*, and may farther, if he please, with his single *file* draw forth divers *figures* of *Battail*, declaring unto his Souldiers their severall reasons and uses. The exercising his Companie after this manner, affords unto them both content and delight, and it is likewise very usefull in greater Bodies, when time of need shall require, as shall appear in the sequell of this Book.

But here, me thinks, I heare some say, of what use are your *figures*? seeing for the most part, in pitch Battails, or skirmishing in the field, they commonly fire one again another in *Squares*, or by *Forlornes*, drawn forth from the Body, and being relieved, return into their places again. To whom, I answer, that in one respect it is true, there being scarce any pitch Battail in the field fought in these latter times, but it hath been with even *fronts*, who ever are first engaged, whether it be by *Divisions* drawn off by way of *Forlornes*, as have *Wings*, or Battail, the Fight with even *Fronts*, or *Squadrons*, as having every five or six *files* divided a part from each other, having six foot ground *intervall*, betwixt the above said number of *files* for the conveniency of the *Ranks* wheeling off after they have fired. As concerning such *figures* as are framed like the *Wedge*, *Saw*, *Speers*, or *Diamond*, I must confesse, there is little or nouse at all, except it be for delight, or for the practise and experience of some young Souldier, whereby he may plainly see the custome of the Ancients in setting forth such ancient *figures*. But to let this passe, and to come to the place where we left, I shall shew unto the Souldier how needfull it is for him to be well skilled in the framing of *figures* of Battail, and likewise to be thoroughly acquainted with their severall uses. Wherefore take this for a generall rule, that there was never any pitch Battail, but there were Reserves appointed out unto all the parts thereof, whereby they might bring off, and at time of need relieve each other; and if so, certainly, they must of necessity carry along with them severall forms, and *figures* of Battail, according to the discretion of the Major-Generall, or other Commanders in chiefe whom it shall concern. It will therefore be expedient (since there is a necessity of *figures* of Battail, and for the setting a part of *Divisions* for the relieving of each other) for every Commander that will be truly knowing, to have always some imprinted in his memory, that in time of need, he may not be to seek, or wanting in them. To which purpose, I have collected some few, putting them to their view, being formerly practised by me, for the satisfaction of those loving Gentlemen which have private Meetings in London; but more especially for those of the Town-ditch, unto whom I am most especially bound. And therefore, without more delay, I shall lay before them certain *figures* of Battail upon all the *Depths* of *files* set forth in the former Table, leaving them to their own discretion to make use of what shall best comply and suit to their intended purpose.

CHAP. LXV.

Military Experiment upon a File six deep, branching forth eight severall Figures of Battail, with their reducement.

Command. File rank two to the left.

File rank two to the left.
2 1
4 3
6 5

Command. The middle-most rank open to the right and left to open order.

The middle-most rank open to the right and left to open order.
2 1
4 3
6 5

Command. The last rank advance forward into the next rank that is before you, and to open from the midst to open order, and the first rank move forward one pace.

The last rank advance forward into the next rank that is before you, and to open from the midst to open order, and the first rank move forward one pace.
2 1
4 6 5 3

Command. The first rank open outward two foot beyond open order; the last rank close forward to order.

The first rank open outward two foot beyond open order; the last rank close forward to order.
2 1
4 6 5 3

Command. Division upon the left face about; march all till you be cleer each of other, face all to the left, and march two paces; face to your Leader: the last rank open outward to double distance.

Division upon the left face about; march all till you be cleer each of other, face all to the left, and march two paces; face to your Leader: the last rank open outward to double distance.
1
5 3
2
4 6

Command. The first rank open outward to double distance; the first man in the front face about, move down, and double the middle-most man to the right rank-wise.

The first rank open outward to double distance; the first man in the front face about, move down, and double the middle-most man to the right rank-wise.
5 3
2 1
4 6

Command. The left hand man of the middle-most rank face about, the middle-most rank march two paces before the front and

and *reer*; face to your *Leader*, and close *ranks* and *files* to order.

1
5 3
4 6
2

Command. The second *rank* from the *front* double the first to the right and left outward by *Division*; the last man in the *Reer* close forward to order.

1
4 5 3 6
2

Command. The out-most men of the middle *rank* face about, and move down even with the *Reer*; to your *Leader*.

1
5 3
4 2 6

Reducement. The middle-most man in the *Reer* advance forwards to the left into the *front*.

Files close inwards to your order.

Files to the right double.

Half-files double your *front* to the left.

Files double your *Depth* to the right, every man falling behind his *Bringer-up*.

File, rank two to the right.

Ranks, rank intire to the left into the *Reer*, every man placing himself on the outside of his left hand man.

Direction. Face about; and after being faced to their *Leader*, they will stand after this manner, 6: 5: 4: 3: 2: 1.

Rank file to the right, they are reduced.

CHAP. LXVI.

Words of *Command* to produce the first eight Figures of *Battail*, with their *reducements*.

Command. **H** *Alf-file* double your *Front* to the left.

1
5 3
6 2
7 4
8

Command. The last *rank* face about, the two middle *ranks* face outward; march all some two paces, to your *Leader*.

1
6 3
7 2
8 4

Command. The first *rank* move forwards two paces; the third *rank* close inwards to open order.

1
6 3
7 2
8 4

Command. The third *rank* from the *front* face outward, march all three paces; to your *Leader*.

The first *rank* stand, the rest face outward, and move two paces; to your *Leader*.

1
6 3
7 2 4 3

Command. The first *rank* face about, march all untill you be cleer one of another; to your *Leader*.

1
6 3
7 2 4 3
5

Command. The last *rank* move to the right and left, and place your selves three foot behind the *Front Divisions*.

1
6 3
7 2 4 3
5

Command. *Division* on the right face about, march all untill you be cleer one of another; then face to the right, and march untill you stand even a *Brest* of each other, face to your *Leader*.

1
6 3
7 2 4 3
5

Command. *Reer Division* face about; the last man in each *Division* move forwards into the midst of the *rank* that is before you

1 2

you, face to your *Leader*, and close your *Divisions* to order.

6
7 5 8
4 2 3
1

Command. The last man in the *Reer* move forwards to the right in the *rank* of him that stands before you, the last *rank* open outwards to order, to your *Leader*.

6
7 5 8
4 2 1 3

Reducement. Face all about : the last man in the *Reer* move forwards on the left into the *rank* that is before you ; even your *ranks*, and streighten your *files*, to your *Leader*.

Files double inward by *Division*.

Double your *ranks* to the left intire into the *Front* and *Reer*.

Direction. *Half-files* face about ; after face to your *Leader*, and the last *rank* close forward to order, and even your *ranks*, and streighten your *files*.

Wheel *Front* and *Reer* to the left flank.

Direction. The last *rank* face about ; then face to your *Leader* ; and counter-march the *file*, they are reduced.

CHAP. LXVII.

Words of Command for the second eight Figures of Battail with their reducement.

Command. **F**ile, rank to the left, one, three, and four, the last *rank* face outwards, and move three paces, to your *Leader*.

1
8 4 3 2 6 5

Command. The two in-most men of the last *rank* close inward to close order, the two out-most men of the last *rank* fall back two paces.

1
4 3 2

Command. The middle-most man in the first *rank* face about, march all till you are clear one of another ; to your *Leader*.

1
4 2
7 6
8 5

Command. *Files* close into the midst to order, the last man move forward to order.

1
4 2
7 6
8 5
3

Command. The middle-most *rank* open to the right and left to double distance.

1
7 4 2
8 5 6
3

Command. The out-most men upon the flanks face inward, the last man in the *Reer*, face about, the first & the last *rank* face to the four *Angles*, move all 3 paces, to your *Leader*.

1
4 2
7 6
8 5
3

Command. The first man in the *Front*, and the last man in the *Reer* stand, the rest face outward, and march three paces ; to your *Leader*.

1
4 2
7 6
8 5
3

Command. The last men of the out-most *files* move forward to the right and left, untill you range even a *Brest* with the middle-men.

1
4 2
8 7 6 5
3

Reducement. The last man in the *Reer* move forward, and range even a *Brest* with the first *rank*, *Ranks* file to the right following your *Leader* ; they are reduced.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Words of Command for the third eight Figures of Battail,
with their reducement.

Command. **B**ringers-up double your Front to the left.

8 1
7 2
6 3
5 4

Command. The first and the last rank stand, the third rank double outward rank-wise, the middle-rank face outward, march all two paces, to your Leader.

8 1
6 7 2 3
5 4

Command. The middle rank stand, the rest double to the right file-wise; face all to the Center, and march some two paces to your Leader.

1
8
6 7 2 3
4
5

Command. The middle-rank double inward file-wise, and move a little forward.

1
8
7 2
6 3
4
5

Command. Half-file of the middle file double your Front to the left; Front-division face to the right, and move one pace; to your Leader.

4 1
5 8
7 2
6 3

Command. The left-hand file in the Front, face about, and march clear of the Reer, face to your Leader. The middle file double to the left rank-wise; files close into the midst to order: Files rank outward into the Reer,

and then begin from the right to wheel them about to the left in a ring.

1
2 8
3 7
4 9
5

Command. Files close into the midst to order, the first rank close inward to close order; the third rank open outward to open order: the last man in the Reer, move even a Brest with the rank that is before you.

1
2 8
3 7
4 5 6

Command. Files open to the right and left untill you stand streight with your Bringers-up, the rest moving forwards untill they have ranged even a Brest with the first man.

2 1 8
3 7
4 5 6

Command. Angle-men face to the four Angles; the middle-men in the out-moſt files face inward; the middle-man in the Front face about, march all three paces: face to your Leader.

2 8
1
3 7
5

Reduement. The last man in the Reer of the middle file face about, middle file march clear of the standing part; files close into the midst to order: the last man in the Reer fall in Reer of the right hand file, the first man in the Front move to the left, and fall in the Front of the left hand file; close your ranks and files forward to order, and make an even Front, files double your depth to the left, every man falling behind his Bringer-up reduceth them.

CHAP. LXIX.

The way to make twelve severall Figures of Battail with a File ten deepe, with their Reducement.

Command. **F**Aceto the right, & wheel your Front into the midst, Face after to your Leader.

5 4 3 2 1
6 7 8 9 10

Command. The last men in the *Reer* of the outmost files face about, outmost files move cleer of the standing part, face inwards, and close your Divisions, to your Leader.

5 1
4 3 2
7 8 9
6 10

Command. The last man of the middle file and the last rank face about the first rank, and the last rank, and the middle file move forwards two paces, the rest open outward two paces, to your leader,

5 1
4 3 2
7 8 9
6 10

Command. The last man in the front division advance forward three foot before the Front, the first man of the Reer division face about, and move three foot behind the Reer; the outmost files double ranks inward; ranks close forwards to order, and face to your Leader:

3
5 1
4 7 9 2
6 10
8

Command. The first man in the Front face about, the last man in the Reer stand, the rest face outwards, march all untill the first and the last man meet, face all to your Leader; middle

men double to the right rank-wise, and close outward to order.

5 1
4 7 3 8 9 2
6 10

The two middle-men in the Body face about and move cleer of the Reer three foot, face to your Leader, middle-men of the outmost files close inward to order.

5 1
4 7 9 2
6 10
3 8

Command. Middle-man upon the right of the second Rank advance forward three foot before the Front, the three first men in the Front, and the middle-man of the second rank move forwards three paces, the rest closing inward one pace.

9
5 1
7
4 2
6 10
3 8

Command. The last rank open outward to double distance, and the next rank open outward to open order, and the third rank from the Reer to close inward to order.

9
5 1
7
4 2
6 10
3 8

Command. The second man from the Front face about, move down and range even with the Reer: outmost men of the last rank advance forward, and range even with the second rank from the Front: the last rank move forwards untill they have exceeded three foot the

the next *rank* that (stands before them) divisions on the *wings* face outward, move two paces; to your *Leader*.

9
5 1
6 10
3 4 2 8
7

Command. *Front-Division*, face about, and march down even with the *Reer*, the last man move forward to order, to your *Leader*.

6 9 10
3 4 5 1 2 8
7

Command. *Middle-Division* advance forward clear of the standing part; *Divisions* in the *Reer* close inwards to order; wheel your *Reer* into the midst; to your *Leader*.

9
5 1
7
4 2
6 10
3 8

Command. The last *rank* close inward to

order, and to double to the left file-wise; the second man from the *Reer* move forwards into the second *rank* that is before you.

9
5 1
7
4 3 2
6 10
8

Reducement. The first man in the *Front* move a little to the right, the second man from the first *rank* double the first man to the left *rank*-wise; the first *rank* wheel off by *Division*, & double the last man in the *Reer* to the right and left *rank*-wise; *ranks* close forwards to order, and face to your *Leader*.

5 1
4 3 2
6 10
7 8 9

Reducement. The first and second *rank* face about; the first *rank* double the second to the right and left outward; to your *Leader*; the last *rank* move forward, and even your *ranks*, and straighten their *files*; wheel *Front* and *Reer* to the left *flank*; the last *rank* face about before they wheel; then facing to their *Leader*, they are reduced.

CHAP. LXX.

Twelve severall Figures of Battail with a File 12 deep, with their reduction.

Command. **F**ront half-file double your *Reer* to the left; face to your *Leader*.
Half-files double your *Front* to the left.

10 7 4 1
11 8 5 2
12 9 6 3

Command. the middle-most men upon each *flank*, face outward; the two middle-men of the last *rank* face about: those that are thus faced, and the two middle-men of the first *rank* move forward to your *Leader* three paces; the first, and the last *rank* stand, the rest move outward two paces; face to your *Leader*.

10 7 4 1
11 8 5 2
12 9 6 3

Command. The out-most *Divisions* open from the midst almost to twice double distance; the first *rank* face about, and rank even with the midst of *ranks*, face to your *Leader*; the last *rank* double to the right file-wise; the second man from the *Reer* advance forward, and place himself 3 foot before the middle-men, the last man at the same time closing forward to order.

10 7 4 1
11 8 5 2
12 9 6 3

Command.

Command. The outmost division upon the right move away, the rest successively falling in the *Reer* of them untill they stand straight after the first division.

1
5 2
3
—
6
7 4
9
—
10
11 8
12

Command. The outmost man upon the left of the middle division to open to the left to double distance; the rest of that division to face to the right, and to move cleer of the standing part, face to your Leader; the last man in the *Front*, face about to the last Division, the first man of the *Front-division*, and the first man of the *Reer-division* to move forwards and to close to open order: after facing to the left flank, closing to the outmost man to order; face to your Leader; and after face all to the *Center*, and move a little forward, to your Leader.

1
5 2
3 6
7 10 4
11 8
12 9

Command. The outmost man upon the right, and the outmost man upon the left close inward to order.

1
5 2
3 6
7 4
10 9
11 8
12

Command. The two middle-men move forth to the right and left three foot cleer of the standing part; the first man in the *Front* face about: the first man in the *Front*, and the

last man in the *Reer* move into the second that is before you: to your Leader.

5 2
3 1 6
7 4
10 12 9
11 8

Command. The two outmost men upon each Flank close inward to open order.

5 2
3 1 6
7 4
10 12 9
11 8

Command. Face all to *Front*, *Reer*, and both *Flanks*, and the four middle-men move forwards into the *rank* that is before them, and they will stand in a *Square*: face to your Leader.

5 1 2
3 6
7 4
10 9
11 12 8

Command. Files rank outward, the middle man of the first rank move forward, and place himselfe three foot before his right and left hand man, the outmost and the middle man of the last rank move backward, and place himselfe three foot behinde the *Reer-division*, close forwards to open order.

1
5 2
3 6
10 7 3 6 4 9
11 8
12

Command. The first and the last rank move to the left one pace, and after double to the

the right filewise, the middle *rank* close inward to order.

1
2
5
10 7 3 6 4 9
8
11
12

Command. The two out-most men of the middle *rank* face about, move down and range even a breast with the middle-man of the *Reer* Division, closing inward to order, and facing to the *Front*; even men from the left, move forwards, and *rank* even a breast with the middle-man of the *Front*-division, and close inward to order, the out-most men open outward to double distance.

1
3 2 4
5
7 6
8
10 11 9
12

Command. *Reer* division face about and move two paces, the outmost-man upon the left face about to the right, the outmost-men move forward and rank to the right with the last man in the *Reer* of each division, face to your leader, and move forward two paces.

1
3 2 4
5 6
7 8
10 11 9
12

Reducement. *Reer* division face about, middle-man of the first *rank* of each division move forward and rank two to the left into *Front* and *Reer*: *Files* close into the midst to order, *rank*s close forwards to order: *Halfe-files* double the *Front* to the right intire: *Ranks* rank outward into the *Front*, every man placing himselfe on the outside of his right and left hand men: *Ranks* file to the right and left inward: *Files* double your depth to the left: Face to your Leader.

It might be expected that I should shew the severall Charges upon all these Figures, but in regard I may, perhaps, meet with some of them again in greater Bodies, or the like, I shall for present passe them over, and in those places endeavour to give them the best satisfaction I can. In the mean time they may with ease finde out in every one of them such charges as may instruct the Souldiers how to fight, whether it be to *Front*, *Reer*, both

Flanks or *Angles*, they may be shewn and exercised in them according to the discretion of him that shall command them, whether they be *Muskettiers* or *Pike-men*: and therefore, thus much shall suffice, concerning the exerci-

sing of a *file* for matter of Figures: In the next place followeth the Exercise of greater Bodies.



The end of the first Booke.



NO. 10
17 3/4 11

The end of the first book.

THE



THE COMPLEAT BODY OF THE ART MILITARY:

The Second Book.

CHAP. I.

*Concerning the Artillery and the Military Gardens, together
with the Private Meetings, in and about the
City of LONDON.*



He great delight in handling of *Arms* in *Military Exercises*, makes the City of LONDON and the Suburbs thereof famous through the whole World, by reason, as I conceive, of those two great *Nurseries* or *Academies* of *MILITARY DISCIPLINE*, the *ARTILLERY* and *MILITARY GARDENS*, from whom, as out of pure *Fountains*, all other our *Private Meetings* (as of *Townditch*, and *Cripplegate*, &c.) are derived.

The *Artillery Garden* deserves the first place, in respect it is the greatest Meeting, from whence, as it were out of a *Nursery* have been transplanted many able knowing souldiers both at home and in forreign Countries to the great honour of our Nation.

The *Military Garden* is famous likewise for the great improvement of diverse worthy persons of quality daily thither resorting, whose excellent skill in *Military Exercises* hath raised many of them to high preferment here at home, and places of honourable command abroad. The *Captains* in chiefe of these *Academies* are *Major Generall Skippon*, and *Major Henry Tyllier*, which later was the first that ever shew'd in the *Military Garden* (of which I am a member) the marching of the Souldiers in a *Regimentall* way, whose great pains amongst us deserves much honour and high commendation; shewing unto us such variety of matter in a Souldier-like way, as was never before seen, by any member thereof.

Not to eclipse the fore-mentioned *Private Meetings* in *London*, but to give them that due which belongs unto them, they likewise are of great honour and fame for their frequent exercising of their Souldiers in the handling of their *Arms*, whether it be of the *Pike*, or *Musket*, and instructing them in the knowldge of *Drilling*, and drawing up of Companies,

and Bodies of men, furnishing both Kingdoms with able knowing souldiers. My hearty wilhes therefore that all and every one of them may be propt up, and supported to all ages, that when need shall require, we may draw from these *fountains* such skilfull and experienced Commanders, and Officers as may be, as it were, a *Bulwark* to this our Nation.

Not to dwell any longer upon this discourse, I come, therefore, briefly to set forth severall Exercises (formerly practised by me amongst those loving Gentlemen of *Town-ditch*) according to the usuall numbers there appearing, whether they be great or small, practised for the most part with 24 or 32 men, and sometimes (although seldome) with 64 men, unless it were upon generall days, when they were drawn forth into the field; at such times, perhaps, there might be an appearance of greater numbers, as 120 and upwards.

My purpose, therefore is to *pitch* upon, and to make use of all and every one of these numbers, making 12 Exercises, dividing them by threes, untill I have run over them all, conceiving them sufficient for the industrious to gather from thence matter enough for his intended Exercise. And for the more enabling of them, I shall endeavour (in these curious times) to walk a long in as plain a way as possibly may be, giving directions unto all Words of Command, for the better performance of the same; wishing all my loving fellow-souldiers to conceive well of my good meaning intended to them: desiring withall to be rightly informed of what part soever they fall upon, that they proceed leisurely and orderly in the same, which will not only be an encouragement unto the Authour from whom they gather their Exercises, but will bring much prayes and commendation to themselves; But to leave every one to their own best thoughts, whilst I proceed to practise what before promised concerning the severall Exercises following.

CHAP. II.

The first Exercise of four Files six deep.

Each *File-leader* (as being his duty) having gone over the *Postures*, shewing and instructing his *file*, with their uses, and neat handling of their *Arms*: hearing the *Drums* beat a *Call* for all to repair and stand to their *Arms*, begin to lead up their *files*, according to order, the *Leader* then closing their *ranks* and *files* to *close order*, craving their silence, may proceed to shew unto them all their severall *distances* and *facings*, according unto the former rule set down, and after he may proceed to *Doublings* (if he pleaseth) as followeth.

CHAP. III.

A Doubling consisting of sixteen in number, every one differing from the other, and not reduced untill the last Word of Command.

Command. **F**iles, file to the right intire advancing.

Command. *Bringers-up*, double your *Front* to the left.

Command. *Half-files* double your *Front* to the left.

Command. *Front half-files* double your *Rear* to the right intire.

Command. *Right half-ranks* double your left *flank* intire advancing.

Command. *Half-files* double your *front* to the right intire.

Command. *Left half-ranks* double intire the *Depth* of your right *flank*.

Command. *Files*, file to the left intire advancing.

Command. *Bringer-up* double your *front* to the right.

Command. *Front half-files* double your *Rear* to the right and left outward, following your *Leaders*.

Direction. *Rear half-files* face about; the *file-leaders* are to turn off to the right and left, the rest are to follow them untill they are marched down into the *Rear*, and have doubled it to the right and left outward.

Command. *Half-files* double your *front* inward intire.

Command. The two out-most *files* upon each *flank* double intire the *Depth* of the in-most *files*.

Direction. The two out-most *files* face about inward, and move streight down cleer of the standing part; afterwards face inward, march, and close your *Divisions*, to your *Leader*.

Command. *Front half-files* double your *Rear* inward intire.

Direction.

Direction. Reer half-files face about, and move outward cleer of the standing part; front half-files, face about, march down and even the Reer to your Leader.

Command. The two outmost files upon each Flank, double intire, advancing the four inmost files.

Direction. The two outmost files move forward cleer of the standing part, face inward, march and close your Divisions, face to your Leader.

Command. Double your files inward intire, advancing, every man placing himself before his Leader.

Direction. The two inmost files stand, the two outmost files move forwards, and double your inmost files intire advancing, placing your selves before your Leaders.

Command. Half-files double your Front to the right, they are reduced.

CHAP. IV.

Eight severall Counter-marches with their Reducement.

Command. File-leaders stand, the rest, pass thorough to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders.

Command. The right hand file stand, the rest pass thorough to the right, and place your selves on the outside of your right hand men.

Command. File-leaders and Bringers-up stand, the rest pass thorough to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders, and your Bringers-up.

Command. The outmost file upon each flank stand, the rest pass thorough to the right and left, placing your selves before your outside men.

Direction. Face outward, and pass thorough to the right and left, placing your selves before the outmost files, to your Leader, and close your Divisions to open order.

Command. Bringers-up stand, the rest pass thorough to the right, and place your selves behinde your Bringers-up.

Direction. The five first ranks are to face about, the next rank to the Reer is first to begin the motion, the rest are successively to follow, until the Leaders are become the Bringers-up.

Command. The left-hand file stand, the rest pass thorough to the left, and place your selves on the out-side of your left-hand men.

Command. File-leaders and Bringers-up stand, the rest pass thorough to the right, and place your selves behinde your Leaders and Bringers-up.

Direction. The first and the two next ranks from the Reer face about, the two first ranks from the Front, and the two last ranks from the Reer move forwards, placing your selves behinde your Leaders, and your Bringers-up, face to your Leader, and close your Divisions.

Command. The out-most file upon each file face inward, the rest pass thorough to the right and left, placing your selves behind your right and left hand men.

CHAP. V.

Ten severall Wheelings with their Reducement.

Command. Wheel the Front half-files, inward into the midst, and double your Reer inward intire.

Direction. Half-files face outward, and march cleer of the standing part, after face to the Reer; front half-files open from the midst to open order, after wheeling to the right and left inward into the Reer, to your leader.

Command. Right and left half ranks double the depth of the Battall, by wheeling into the front.

Direction. Right half ranks wheel to the left; and left half ranks wheel to the right, to your leader.

Command. Wheel off the front half-files, and double the Reer by division.

Direction. Half-files face about, and front half-files, wheel off by division, moving down even with the Reer, to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your right half rank, and double your left flank to the right intire.

Direction. Face outward, and right half ranks wheel about to the left and move away, and double the left flank to the right, to your leader.

Command. Front and Reer half-files, double the depth of the Battail by wheeling into Front and Reer.

Direction. Half-files face to the Reer, and Front and Reer half-files wheel to the right and left inward, face to your Leader, and close your divisions.

Command. Wheel off your left half-ranks and double your right flanke by division

Direction. Face onward, and left half-ranks wheel off by division, and move even with the right flank, to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your Reer half-files and double the Front to the right intire.

Direction. Half-files face about, and wheel to the left untill you have ranged even with the front.

Command. Wheel your Battail off by division from the Front.

Direction. Right half-ranks wheel about to the right and left, half-ranks wheel about to the left, and move down to the Reer, face to your Leader, & close into the midst to order.

Command. Wheel off your left half-ranks, and double your right flanke to the left intire.

Direction. Face outward, left half-ranks wheel about to the right, and move forward and double the right flank to the left intire, to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your Front half-files and double the Reer to the left intire.

Direction. Half-files face about, and front half-files wheel about to the right, move down and range even with the Reer, face to your Leader, reduceth them.

CHAP. VI.

Six Figures of Battail with severall firings thereunto belonging.

Command. **R**anks and files close to order, they will stand us underneath is set forth, from which we will draw our figures after we have fired upon this Platforme three or four times.

			C		
			E		
	M	P	P	M	
	M	P	P	M	
	M	P	P	M	
S	M	P	P	M	S
	M	P	P	M	
	M	P	P	M	
			L		

Command. Double your files inward intire advancing.

The first firing. Let the first two ranks advance forward ten paces, give fire and fall in the rear of themselves, after wheeling off to the right and left, placing themselves before the front of Pikes; the next two Ranks, and so the rest successively doing the like untill they have fired once over which reduceth them.

The second firing. Let the first Rank advance three paces, give fire, and fall in the Rear of themselves; the rest doing the like untill all have fired once over, as before.

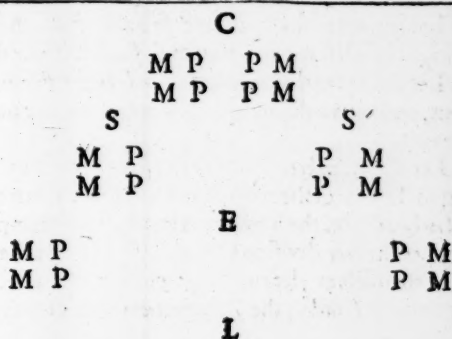
The third firing. Let them give fire on the ground they stand, and fall off to the right and left, and flank the Pikes.

The fourth firing. Let them fire even with the front, and fall in the Rear of the Pikes, which being ended let the Pikes charge on.

Redicement. Muskettiers double your front by division.

Command. The first two Ranks stand, the rest face outward and move clear of the standing part, to your Leader; the two last Ranks move outward side-ways two paces.

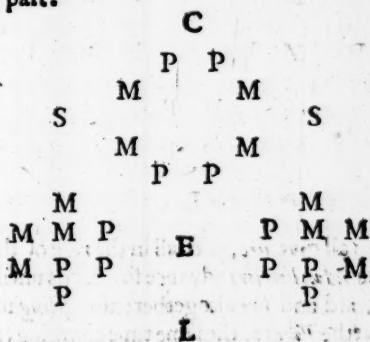
The



The first firing. Let every Division give fire on the same ground they stand, and fall in the *Rear* of themselves.

The second firing. Let them advance forwards untill they be clear of the *Pikes*, give fire, and fall in the *Rear* of themselves, after moving down into their places.

Command. Front division advance forward three paces, the two next divisions move outward one pace; *Pikes* in each division face about, and move two paces, to your *Leader*: Divisions of *Muskettiers* in the *Rear* advance forwards and range even in *Front* and *Rear* with the middle divisions of *Pikes*, the first rank of *Pikes* in the *Front* division move three foot clear of the standing part.

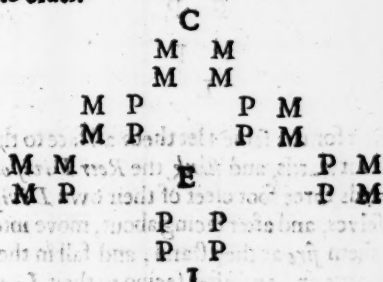


The first firing. Let them give fire to the *Front*, and fall in the *Rear* of themselves.

The second firing. Let them give fire to *Front*, *Rear*, and both flanks altogether.

Direction. *Rear* divisions face outward, the last rank of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* of the *Front* division face to the *Rear*; the last rank of *Muskettiers* move down clear of the *Rear* and close inward to order; then let the *Pikes* port, and after the *Muskettiers* have fired charge on, then retreating into their places again.

Command. The first and the last rank of *Pikes* face about and move down clear of the *Rear*, and close ranks forwards to order; outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* face about, move down and flank your own divisions of *Pikes*: the first division of *Pikes* move forward and range even abreast with your own division of *Muskettiers*, the *Front* division of *Muskettiers* closing into the midst to order.



The

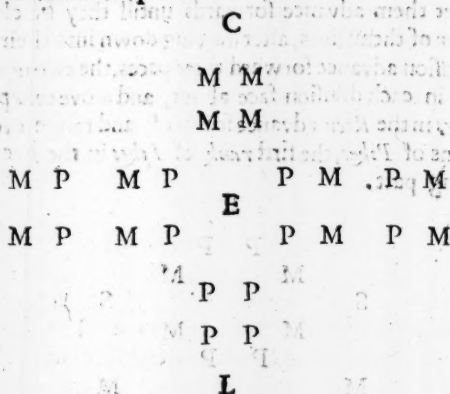
The first firing. Let the *Front* division give fire and fall in the *reer* of themselves, after wheeling off to the right and left move down and flank the *reer* division of *Pikes*.

The second firing. Let the *Front* divisions of *Muskettiers* fire and fall in the *reer* of themselves, then face about, and move down upon the inside of the next division of *Pikes*, and after face to their *Leader*.

The third firing. Let the *Muskettiers* upon the *flank* move up into the *room* of the former, and fire, falling in the *reer* of themselves, and after face about and move down into their places again; the *Muskettiers* on the inside moving up into their places again.

The fourth firing. Let the *reer* division face about, then let them fire to *Front* and *Reer*, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves; let the *Pikes* charge, and after ordering their armes the *Reer* division facing to their *Leader*, the *Muskettiers* thereof may move up into their places again.

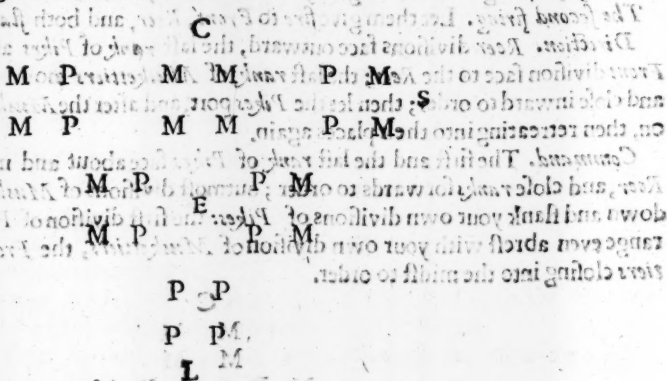
Command. The outmost Divisions face outward, and move two paces, face to your *Leader*, move up untill you range even a breast with the second Divisions next the *Front*, *Reer* Division move straight forward two paces.



The first firing. Let them all give fire, and fall in the *reer* of themselves.

The second firing. Let the *Muskettiers* advance forwards untill they be clear of the *front* division, and then rank outward and fire altogether; after filing inward as they were, move down again into their places: the *Pikes* at the same time charging, and after order their arms.

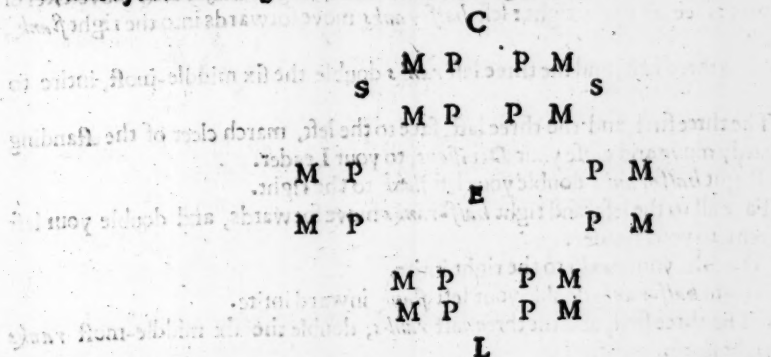
Command. *Front* division advance forward three paces; the outmost divisions upon the *Flanks* move up, and range even with the *Front*.



The first firing. Direction for the same: let them all face to the *Reer*, and the middle division of *Muskettiers* move forwards, and flank the *Reer* Division of *Pikes*; after let all the *Muskettiers* advance forwards three foot clear of their own Divisions of *Pikes*, and give fire falling in the *Reer* of themselves, and after facing about, move into their places again.

The second firing. Let them fire as they stand, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves; and the *Pikes* in the *Reer* may charge on, and after facing to their *Leader*.

Command. The out-moſt *Diviſions* face inward, march three paces; and the next two *Diviſions* face outward, and move two paces, to your Leader; *Rear-Diviſion* move outward untill you ſtand ſtreight with the *Front-Diviſions*.



The firſt firing. Let the *Front-Diviſion* of *Muskettiers* give fire, and fall in the *Rear* of themſelves; and after moving down in the room of them in the *Rear*: they at the ſame time moving up into the *front firing* in like manner moving down, and exchanging places with them in the *Rear*.

The ſecond firing. Let the *Muskettiers* upon the *flanks* move forward even with the *front* give fire, and fall in the *Rear* of themſelves, and after move down into their places again, and face to their Leader.

The third firing. Let them face to *front-rear*, and both *flanks*, and let the *Pikes* port, and the *Muskettiers* give fire.

The fourth firing. Let them give fire on the ground they ſtand, and fall in the *Rear* of the *Pikes*; the *Pikes* charging whileſt the *Muskettiers* make ready again.

The fiſt firing. Let the *Pikes* charge at foot, and the *Muskettiers* give fire over their heads; then recovering their Arms, face to their Leader.

Reducement. *Front-Diviſions* face about; *Front* and *Rear-Diviſions* march, and interchange ground, to your Leader; The out-moſt *Diviſions* face inward, and cloſe your *Diviſions*, to your Leader: even your *ranks*, and ſtreighten your *files*, and cloſe to order, they are reduced.

The Captain may now command the *Muskettiers* to poſſe their Arms, and file away to the right and left, making as it were a *Street* or *Gallery* for him to troop away the *Pikes*, and lodge his Colours.

CHAP. VII.

The ſecond Exerciſe with four Files ſix deep.

THe Souldiers being the ſecond time ſummoned to appear at their place of *Rendezvous*, the *Serjeants* having drawn forth the *files*, may give liberty to the Leaders thereof, to exerciſe them in their ſeverall *Poſtures*, which being ended, their Captain, or other Officers may command them to lead up their *Files*, and to joyn them into a *Body*; after which he may ſhew unto them their *Diſtances*, and *Facings*, with their ſeverall kinds, following the former rule, and after proceed to theſe or the like *Doublings* following.

CHAP. VIII.

Eighteen ſeverall Doublings with their reducements.

Command. **H** Alf-files double your *Front* to the left.

Command. Double your *files* to the right intire advancing.

Command. *Front half-files* double your *Rear* to the right intire.

Command. *Left half-ranks* double your right flank to the left.

Direction. Face all to the right, and left *half-ranks* move forward; and double your right flank to the left, to your Leader.

Command. Double your *ranks* to the left intire.

L

Command:

Command. Right half-ranks double your left flank intire advancing.

Command. Left half-ranks double your right flank inward intire.

Direction. Half-files of the right half-ranks face about, right half-ranks move clear of the standing part; face all to the right: left half-ranks move forwards into the right flank, to your Leader.

Command. The three first, and the three last ranks double the six middle-most, intire to the left flank.

Direction. The three first, and the three last, face to the left, march clear of the standing part, face inward, move and close your Divisions, to your Leader.

Command. Right half-ranks double your left flank to the right.

Direction. Face all to the left, and right half-ranks move forwards, and double your left flank to the right, to your Leader.

Command. Double your ranks to the right intire.

Command. Right half-ranks double your left flank inward intire.

Command. The three first, and the three last ranks, double the six middle-most ranks intire to the right flank.

Command. Left half-ranks double your right flank intire advancing.

Command. Front half-files double your Reer to the left intire.

Command. Half-files double your front to the right.

Command. Double your files to the left intire advancing, every man placing himselfe before his Leader.

Command. Front half-files double your Reer to the right, following your Leaders.

Direction. Half-files face about, file-leaders turn off to the left, and move down upon the right of the Reer, the rest following successively; to your Leader.

Command. Files double your Depth to the left intire; they are reduced being faced to their Leader.

CHAP. LXVI.

Twelve severall Counter-marches with their reducements.

Command. **F**iles to the right hand counter-march losing ground.

Command. Ranks to the right hand counter-march, losing ground

Direction. Face all to the right.

Command. Front and Reer half-files inter-change ground.

Direction. Front half-files face about to the left.

Command. Right and left half-ranks inter-change ground.

Direction. Face inward.

Command. File-leaders face about; the rest passe through to the right, and place yourselves behinde your Leaders, face to the Front.

Command. Counter-march your Front and Reer into the midst.

Command. Counter-march your flanks into the midst. Face out-ward.

Command. File-leaders, and half-file-leaders stand, the rest passe through to the right, and place yourselves before your Leaders, and halfe file-leaders.

Direction. The second rank from the front, and from the halfe file-leaders, are to begin the Motion, placing themselves as before commanded.

Command. The out-most file upon the right, and the second file from the left stand, the rest passe through to the right, and place yourselves on the out-side of your right-hand men.

Command. Files to the left-hand counter-march, losing ground.

Command. Front and Reer half-files counter-march to the right.

Direction. Front and Reer half-files turn off distinctly by your selves, on the ground you stand; face to your Leader.

Command. Right and left half-ranks counter-march to the right.

Direction. Face to the right; and right and left half-ranks turn off distinctly to the right, face to your Leader; they are reduced.

CHAP. X.

Twelve severall Wheelings with their reducements.

Command. Wheel your *Reer half-files* inward into the midst, and double the *Front* inward intire.

Direction. Right and left *half-ranks* open from the midst to double distance; *Reer half-files* face about, and wheel your *Reer* inward into the midst, moving forward, doubling the *front* inward intire.

Command. Wheel off your right *half-ranks* and double your left flank to the left intire.

Direction. Face outward right *half-ranks*, wheel about to the right, and double your left flank to the left, to your *Leader*.

Command. Right and left *half-ranks* double the *Length* of your *Battail* by wheeling outward to the *front*.

Direction. Face outward, and right *half-ranks* wheel to the left, and left *half-ranks* wheel to the right, and after close files into the midst to order.

Command. Wheel off your right *half-ranks*, and double your left flank by *Division*.

Direction. Face outward; right *half-ranks* wheel about to the right and left outward moving forward, and doubling the left flank to the right and left outward.

Command. Wheel your left *half-ranks* inward into the right flank.

Direction. Face outward, and open from the midst to double distance; the *front* and *Reer half-files*, and after the left *half-ranks* may wheel inward, and double the right flank inward intire.

Command. Wheel off your *Reer half-files*, and double your *front* to the left intire; *Half-files* face about.

Command. Wheel your right *half-ranks* inward into the midst, and double the left flank inward intire.

Direction. Face outward, and *Front* and *Reer half-files* that were are to open from the midst to double distance, and right *half-ranks* wheel inward, and move forward into the left flank.

Command. Wheel off your *Reer half-files*, and double your *front* to the right intire. *Half-files* face about.

Command. Wheel off your left *half-ranks*, and double your right flank by *Division*.

Command. Wheel off your *Front half-files*, and double your *Reer* to the right intire. *Half-files* face about.

Command. Double the *Depth* of the *Battail* by wheeling *front* and *reer* into the midst of each *Division*.

Direction. *Front half-files* move forward four paces, then the last rank of each *Division* face about, and wheel into the midst of *Front* and *Reer* of each *Division*, face to your *Leader*.

Command. Wheel off your *Front half-files*, and double your *Reer* to the left intire, *Half-files* face about.

Command. Wheel your *Battail* off by *Division* from the *Reer*.

Direction. Face all about, and right *half-ranks* wheel about to the right and left outward to the *front*, and closing files into the midst to order, they will be reduced as at first, and stand as underneath is set forth.

C

E

M P P M

S P P M

M P P M

M P P M

M P P M

M P P M

M P P M

L

L x

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Severall plain Firings upon this Exercise of 24 men, with Figures of Battail, belonging to the same.

A Commander having thus passed over the *Motions*, may next prepare for *Firings*, and calling up his *Serjeants*, he may give them order how the *Muskettiers* shall fire in front and rear, but before he begin his *Firings*, it will be expedient that he double his Front to the right and left inward by the *Bringers-up*, which being ended he may proceed as followeth.

The first firing. Let them fire by *Divisions* drawn forth ten paces before the front of *Pikes*, and fall in the *Rear* of themselves.

The second firing. Let them fire again, and fall off to the right and left moving down before the front of *Pikes* and closing their *Divisions*.

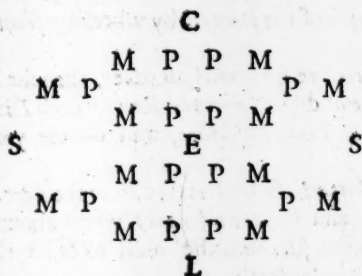
The third firing. Let the first rank kneel down, the next stoop, and the last stand upright, and give fire altogether; the *Pikes* in the mean time are to advance their *Arms*, and open to the right and left, charge on to the front, untill they be cleer of the *Muskettiers*, and then face inwards, and close their *Divisions*; then facing all about, they may give fire to the *Rear* marching.

The fourth firing. Let the last rank face about to the left, and give fire, and fall off to the right and left, placing themselves before their *Leaders* of their own *Divisions* of *Muskettiers*,

The fifth firing. Let them face about to the left again, give fire, & fall off to the right and left, and flank their *Pikes*; the *Pikes* at the same instant facing about, and charge on cleer of the *Muskettiers*, the *Muskettiers* after facing inward, and close their *Divisions*; the *Pikes* may charge to the Horse, and the *Muskettiers* may give fire over their heads after this manner.

The sixth firing. Let the first rank stoop, and the other two stand upright, and give fire altogether, after recovering of their *Arms*, they may all face to the front, commanding the *Pikes* to double the front inward intire, and afterwards files to double their *Depth* to the right and left outward, every man falling behinde his *Bringer-up*, closing files into the midst to order, and wheeling about into the first front, he may proceed as followeth.

Command. Front half-files advance forwards three paces; the middle-rank of each *Division* face outward, and move cleer of the standing part, face to your *Leader*.

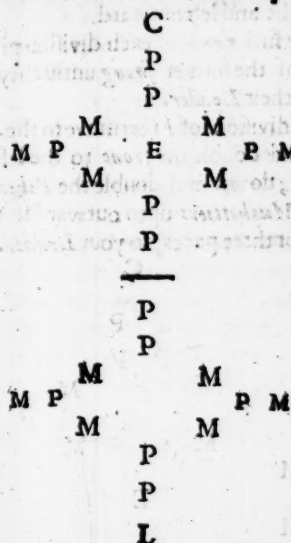


The first firing. Let the in-most *Divisions* of *Muskettiers* in the *Front* fire, and fall off in the *Rear* of themselves, after facing about, move down, and inter-change ground with them in the *Rear*; they at the same instant moving up firing, and in like manner inter-changing ground with them in the *Rear*, and at the same time the out-most men are to move up, and fire to the front, and to fall off to the right and left, into the place of them in the *Rear*, they at the same time moving up, and firing in like manner, this firing may be continued twice over.

The second firing. Let them face to both the flanks, and let the *Divisions* of *Pikes* in the midst open outward untill they be cleer of the standing part, then *Porting*; let the *Muskettiers* give fire on the same ground they stand, and the *Pikes* after may charge on untill the *Muskettiers* make ready again, and then retreating into their places again, the *Muskettiers* may give fire, as before is mentioned, the *Pikes* in like manner charging on, then retreating to the paces, face all to their *Leader*.

Command.

Command. In-most Divisions of *Pikes* move to the left one pace, and double to the right file-wise, and face to *Front* and *Reer*, and march three paces; Middle-file of *Front* and *Reer*-Divisions open from the midst to double distance: face to your *Leader*.

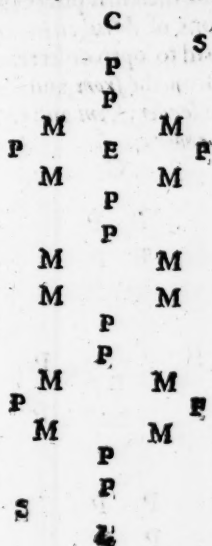


The first firing. Face to *Front* & *Reer*, & then give fire, & fall in the *Reer* of themselves.

The second firing. Let the *Muskettiers* move forwards, and the in-most Division ran outward into *Front* and *Reer*, and then give fire altogether, and file as they were, the *Pikes* may charge whilest they make ready, and fall into their places again, they may continue upon this firing a second time.

The third firing. Let the *Muskettiers*, and the two out-most men of the *Pikes*, face to both flanks; and likewise the middle-divisions of *Pikes* are to face to both flanks after this manner; the first two of the *Reer*-division are to face to the right, and the two last men of the *Front*-division are to face to the left, then let the *Muskettiers* give fire to both flanks, and the *Pikes* may after charge to the *Front*, *Reer*, and both flanks, untill the *Muskettiers* make ready again; this firing may be continued twice; to your *Leader*.

Command. The out-most single men of *Muskettiers* in the front-division face about; the two out-most men of *Muskettiers*, both of *Front* and *Reer*-divisions move forwards and close to order, face to your *Leader*, and close inward to open order.

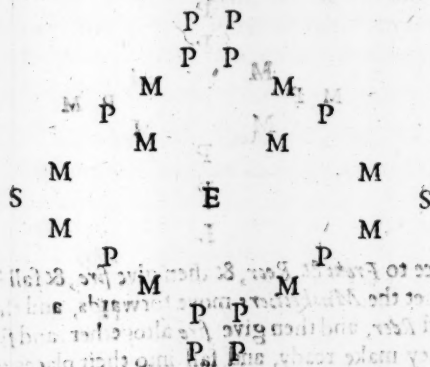


The first firing. Let them give fire to the *front* and fall in the *rear* of themselves, then face about and move down into the *rear*, the rest moving up successively giving fire and falling off in like manner, this may be continued twice over, then face them to the *rear* and let the *Muskettiers* rank to the right and left outward.

The second firing. Let the first rank of each division give fire, and fall off to the right and left in manner and forme of the former firing untill they have fired twice over, then to file as they were, and face to their *Leader*.

Command. *Front* and *Rear* divisions of *Pikes* move to the right one pace; the second division of *Pikes* move forward and double the *front* to the left; the second division of *Pikes* from the *rear* face about, move down and double the *Pikes* in the *rear* to the left, to your *Leader*; middle divisions of *Muskettiers* open outward to twice double distance: face all to the center, and march two or three paces, to your *Leader*.

C



L

The first firing. The three last divisions face to the *rear* the two outmost men both of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* face to the *flanks*; then let them all give fire and fall in the *rear* of the *Pikes*; the *Pikes* may charge while the *Muskettiers* make ready again.

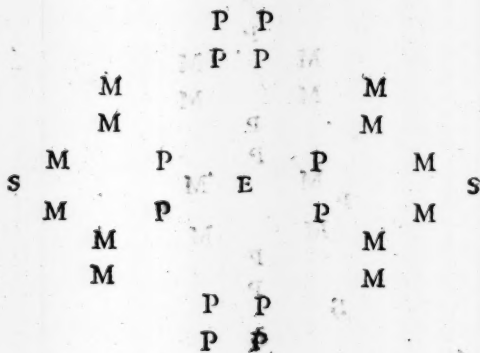
The second firing. Let the *Muskettiers* move forth and give fire as at first, and after fall in again.

The third firing. Let them give fire by *Extraduction*, and fall again in the *rear* of the *Pikes*.

The fourth firing. Let the *Pikes* charge the horse, and the *Muskettiers* give fire altogether over their heads, then move forth into their first places and face to their *Leader*.

Command. *Front* and *Rear* divisions of *Muskettiers* open outward to double distance; the outmost men of *Pikes* close inward to open order: the third rank of *Pikes* from the *front* face about, the third rank of *Pikes* from the *front*, and the third rank of *Pikes* from the *rear* move forwards to order, face to your *leader*; *front* and *rear* divisions stand, the rest face outward and move two paces to your *Leader*.

C



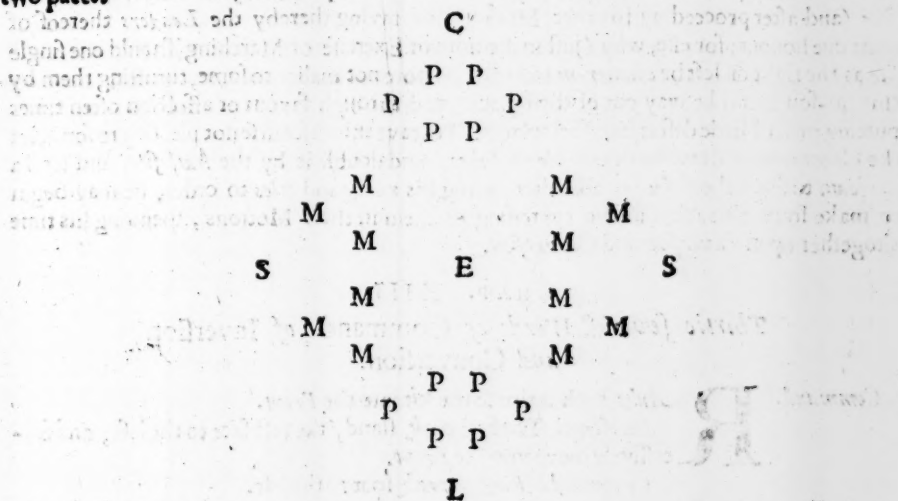
L

The

The first firing. Let the first divisions *fire* and fall in the *rear* of themselves, then wheeling off to the right and left into the place of those *Muskettiers* in the *rear*; they at the same time moving forward into their places, and *firing*, falling off in like manner, the *Muskettiers* may give *fire* on the ground, they stand falling in the *rear* of themselves; this *firing* being twice performed we proceed to another.

The second firing. Let the *Front* divisions of *Muskettiers* and those upon the *flanks* give *fire* and fall in the midst of *Pikes*, in the mean time the last division of *Pikes* may open outward untill they be clear of the standing part, then let *Pikes* charge all whilst the *Muskettiers* make ready again; this *firing* may be performed twice, after which, let them move forth into their places again and face to *Front* and *Rear*, and give *fire*, and fall off in the *rear* of themselves: the *Pikes* may charge, which being ended, face them to their *Leader*.

Command. The last rank of *Pikes* of the middle division face about, middle division of *Pikes* move forward untill you range even a breast with the midst of the *Front* and *rear* divisions of *Pikes*, to your *leader*; the last man of the outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* face about, outmost men move forward three paces and face to your *Leader*; ranks of the *Front* and *Rear* divisions open from the midst to open order; *Rear* divisions move forward two paces.



The first firing. Let them *fire* to the *Front* and fall in between the *Pikes*, this may be done twice; after which face to *front* and *rear* and *fire* there in the same manner: then let *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* interchange ground, let them give *fire* altogether unto *Front* and *Rear*, then facing about, interchange ground with the *Pikes*, who are to charge on whilst the *Muskettiers* make ready again, then retreating let them all face outwards, and they will stand in forme like a *Saw* after they have moved two paces.

The second firing. Let the *Muskettiers* give *fire* altogether to both *flanks*, and the *Pikes* to charge on, and after retreating, they may order their arms, and face all to their *Leader*.

Reducement. The outmost *Muskettiers* upon the *Flanks* move to the right and left inward, placing themselves in the midst of their one divisions, the outmost men of *Pikes* to stand, the rest to double ranks to the left, and the first rank of *Pikes* to double to the right *file-wise*, and the second rank from the *rear* to double to the left *file-wise*, after let the outmost men of *Pikes* double their inmost *files* into the midst, then moving forward their divisions, evening their *front* closing *files* to the midst to order, they are reduced.

And now we will lodge our *Colours*, and repose our selves, untill by the next beat of the *Drum* we shall be summon'd to make our appearance.

CHAP. XII.

The third Exercise with foure Files six deep

BEing the third time brought into the Field compleatly arm'd, where being drawn forth into *files*, and by the *Leaders* thereof exercised, as before, they are commanded to lead up their *files*, yet not presuming to place themselves, but leaves that to the discretion of their superiour Officers, who knows best the desert of each particular man. But by the way, give me leave, in this place to tell the Souldiers and *Leaders* of our Private Meetings that this *decorum* is not rightly observed; the souldier thinking himself wiser then his *Leader* presumes to *shop* and change by *Counter-marching* of his *file*, making some part of the *Rear* to be more honourable then the *Front*, which cannot be, for the youngest souldier there is off more honour then the eldest in the *Rear*, in regard it is the more honorable part of the *Battalia*, therefore it is plain, that they take more upon them then becomes them, for no *file-Leader* ought to meddle with his *file* in matter of motions without consent of the Superiour Officers: neither ought the *Leader* either through favour, or out of malice when all the *files* are joyn'd into one compleat Body to *Counter-march* the *files*, (and after proceeding to other Motions) depraving thereby the *Leaders* thereof of their due honour; for else, why (just in the time of Exercise or Marching) should one single *file* as the right or left be *counter-marched* if he bore not malice to some, thrusting them by this un-souldier-like way out of their places, and through favour or affection often times putting men of little desert into their places. To leave this discourse not pleasing to some, let the Commander draw forth one *file* of *Fikes*, and double it by the *half-file*, and send a *Serjeant* to fetch the *Colours*, and after closing his *ranks* and *files* to order, he may begin to make some alteration in the exercising of them in their Motions, spending his time altogether upon *Inversion* and *Conversion*.

CHAP. XIII.

Thirtie severall Words of Command, of Inversion and Conversion.

Command. **R**anks, rank intire to the left into the *Front*.

Direction. The first rank stand, the rest face to the left, and successively move into the *Front*.

Command. Rank, rank four to the left.

Direction. The first foure upon the left stand, the rest face to the left and by foures fall successively behind the first foure upon the left.

Command. Files rank outward into the *Front*.

Direction. The inmost files stand, the rest open outward to double distance, and after rank outward into the *Front*.

Command. Rank, file three to the right and left outward by wheeling.

Direction. The three outmost men upon the right and left wheel to the right and left outward, the rest doing the like by threes; after close into the midst to order, and face to their *Leader*.

Command. Files, rank inward into the *rear*.

Direction. Face to the *rear*, and move to the right and left inward into the *rear*, to your *Leader*.

Command. Rank, file six to the right and left outward advancing.

Direction. The outmost man upon the right and left stand, the rest move outward untill they be six in a file, and the next outmost men are to stand, the other doing the like, and after close files into the midst to order.

Command. Files, rank inward into the midst of ranks.

Direction. *Front* half-files face about, and right and left half ranks open from the midst to double distance, the rest open outward to order, and move to the right and left inward to the midst of ranks, to your *Leader*, and close files inward to order.

Command. Ranks, file 12 to the right and left inward, every man placing himself before the *Leaders* and the *Bringers-up* of the middle Files.

Dir-

Direction. Ranks open backward to double distance the middle-file stand, the rest advance forwards, and file 12 to the right and left inward, placing themselves before the Leaders, and Bringers-up of the middle-files.

Command. Files, rank six to the right and left inward.

Direction. Files open from the midst to double distance, and move three to the right, and three to the left inward untill you have made four ranks six a Brest, after close ranks forward to order.

Command. Ranks, rank outward into Front and Reer, every man placing himselfe on the out-side of his right and left-hand man.

Direction. Half-files face about, and rank to the right and left outward into Front and Reer as is commanded, face to your Leader, and close ranks forward to order.

Command. Ranks, file 12 to the right and left inward, every man placing himselfe behind the Leaders, and Bringers-up of the middle-files.

Direction. Ranks open backward to double distance, the middle-files stand, the rest move side-ways to the right and left, and place your selves behind the Leaders, and Bringers-up of the middle-files.

Command. Files rank six to the right and left inward into Front, Reer, and Midst.

Direction. The three last ranks of the Front and Reer half-files face about, and Files open outward to double distance, and move to the right and left inward into Front, Reer, and Midst, making four ranks six a Brest, after face to your Leader, and close ranks forwards to order.

Command. Ranks, rank outward into the midst.

Direction. Front half-files face about, and move outward, and rank to the midst, and face to your Leader.

Command. Ranks wheel to the right and left outward.

Direction. Half-files face about, and wheel to the right and left outward into both the flanks, face to your Leader, and close files into the midst to order.

Command. Files, rank six to the right and left outward into Front, Reer, and Midst.

Direction. The three last ranks of the Front and Reer half-files face about, and rank outward three to the right, and three to the left into Front, Reer, and Midst, face to your Leader, and close ranks and files to their distance of order.

Command. Ranks, file to the right intire advancing.

Direction. The out-most file stand, the rest move forward, and file to the right intire advancing.

Command. File, rank three to the right.

Direction. The first three men from the Front rank three to the right, the rest successively doing the same, closing ranks forward to order.

Command. Ranks wheel to the left.

Direction. Ranks open backward to open order, and wheel to the left.

Command. File, rank six to the left.

Direction. The first six men rank six to the left, the rest successively doing the same, untill they have made four ranks, six a Brest, then close ranks forwards to order.

Command. Ranks, rank outward into the midst, every man placing himselfe on the out-side of his right and left-hand man.

Direction. Front half-files face about, and Front and Reer half-files rank outward into the midst, placing your selves on the out-side of your right and left-handmen, face to your Leader.

Command. Ranks wheel three to the right and left outward.

Direction. The last rank face about, and wheel by threes to the right and left outward towards both flanks, face to your Leader, and close files to the right to order, they will stand four a Brest, and six deep.

Command. Files, file outward intire advancing.

Direction. The out-most file stand, the rest advance forward, and place your selves before the out-most files, after close files into the midst to order.

Command. Files, file to the right.

Direction. The right-hand file stand, the rest faceabout, and fall in the Reer of your right-hand file, to your *Leader*.

Command. File, file 12 to the right.

Direction. The first 12 stand, the other move forward, filing 12 to the right.

Command. Files, wheel inward into Front and Reer.

Direction. Files open from the midst to twice double distance, after face inward, and wheel six to the right, and six to the left, untill you have made two ranks 12 a Brest, face to your *Leader*, and close ranks forwards to order.

Command. Ranks wheel inward to both the *flanks*.

Direction. Ranks open from the midst to twice double distance, the first rank face about, the first and the last rank wheel six to the right, and six to the left inward to both the *flanks*, face your *Leader*, and close files to the midst to order.

Command. Files, file three to the right and left outward into Front and Reer.

Direction. Half-files face about; the three first, and the three last ranks are to stand, the rest are to move by threes, filing to Front and Reer to the right and left outward; and after face to the Front, and close their ranks forwards to order.

Command. Files, file to the midst by Division.

Direction. Half-files of the out-most files face about, and the out-most files move forwards, and file by Division unto the midst of files; face to your *Leader*.

Command. Files, rank inward into the Front.

Direction. Files open from the midst to twice double distance, and move forward to the right and left inward into the Front.

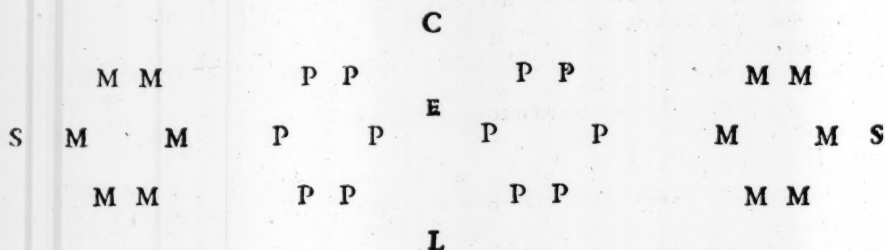
Command. Rank, file six to the right and left outward.

Direction. The out-most men are to stand, the rest are to move side-ways to the right and left, making six in a file, and then the next out-side men in like manner are to stand, the rest successively are to file as before.

CHAP. XIV.

Next followeth severall Figures of Battail, with Firings, upon the same, for the performance whereof.

Command. **B** *Ringers-up* to double their *Front* to the right and left inward, and *ranks* and *files* to open to open order, & *Muskettiers* to close outward to close order; the in-most *files* of *Pikes* close outward to the same distance, and they will stand in four *Divisions*, after let the middle-rank in each *Division* open outward to open order, they will produce the first *Figure*.

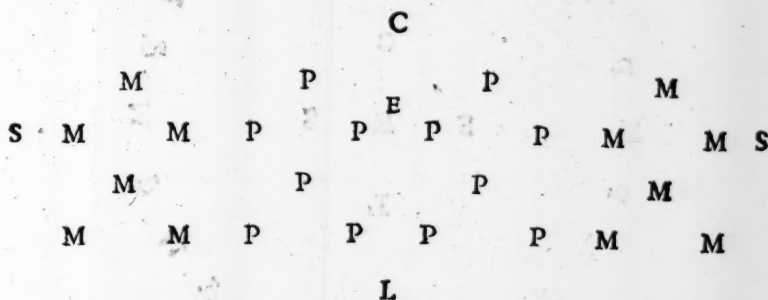


The first firing. Let the first rank give fire, and wheel off to the right and left, and place themselves in the room of them in the *Reer*, and they at the same time moving forwards into their places, and give fire as the first; after wheel off into their places again.

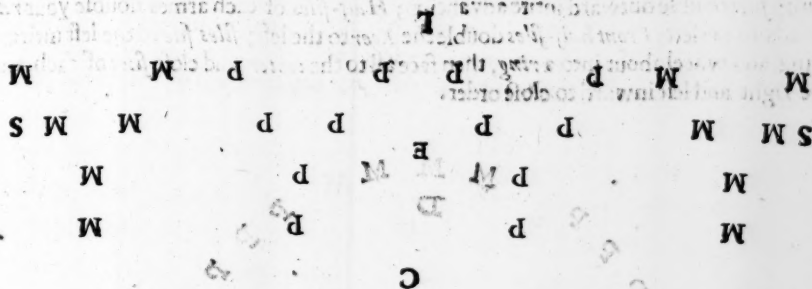
The second firing. Let the middle-ranks advance three foot before the *Front*, and give fire, face about, and move down into their places again.

Command.

Command. The last rank in each division move to the left one pace, and double to the right file-wise, and then advance forward until their first men exceed two foot the Front of each division, then let the first rank open outward to open order, and the last rank close inward to the same distance.



The first firing. Let the middle file give fire to the front and fall in the rear of themselves. *The second firing,* Let the first rank give fire on the ground they stand, and after fall off to the right and left into the room of them in the rear, they at the same time moving forward into their ground and give fire in like manner, and fall off into their places again, and then the Pikes may charge on whilst the Muskettiers make ready again. *Command.* Face all about; middle file move forward three foot cleer of the rear; the first rank close inward to order, the last rank open outward something more then to open order.



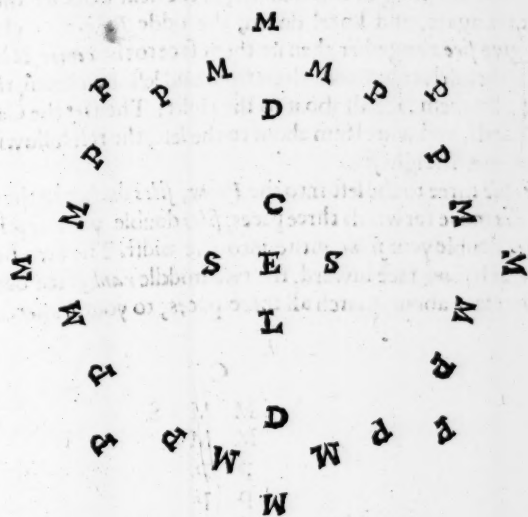
Upon this figure let the first man in each division kneel down, and then to give fire altogether over one anothers head, the Pikes at the same time charging breast high to the horse, then face all to their first front.

Command. The last men in the rear double to the left rank-wise; files close into the midst to order; Muskettiers double your Pikes inward intire advancing, and move forward three paces; Files double your depth to the right and left outward of each arms, every man falling behind his Bringer-up; Front half-files double your rear intire into the midst; Files double to the right and left outward; files, file to the right intire advancing, which being done wheel them to the right about into a ring, in form as followeth.

M M M

M 2

Upon



Upon this figure let them fire by *circumduction* after this manner, let the odde men of *Pikes* port, and then the odde *Muskettier* where the first *front* was is to give fire and to move away to the left, and the next odde man of *Muskettiers* upon the right immediately comes stooping underneath the *Pikes* into the first mans place firing in like manner, moving away into the next odde mans place of the *Muskettiers* upon the left, the rest doing the same untill the first *Muskettier* come into his place again.

Command. Face all to the center, odde men move forwards and place your selves two foot before your right and left hand-men, after face all to the right about.



Upon this figure let them fire by *circumduction* after this manner, let the odde men of *Pikes* port, and then the odde *Muskettier* where the first *front* was is to give fire and to move away to the left, and the next odde man of *Muskettiers* upon the right immediately comes stooping underneath the *Pikes* into the first mans place firing in like manner, moving away into the next odde mans place of the *Muskettiers* upon the left, the rest doing the same untill the first *Muskettier* come into his place again.

M 3

Upon

Command

Upon this figure you may *fire* likewise by way of *circumdution*, the *Pikes* porting all round, and having performed one *firing* in this manner, in the next place let the *odde Muskettiers* and *Pikes* move forth again, and kneel down, the *odde Pike-men* charging at foot, the *Muskettiers* may give *fire* altogether, then let them face to the *center*, & let the odd men move forwards and place themselves between their right and left-hand men, then moving forward and close their ring, let them face all about to the right; Then let the *Captain* goe where the *Leader* of the *file* stands, and wheel him about to the left, the rest following untill they be all brought again into one *streight file*.

Command. *File*, *file* three to the left into the *Front*, *files* double to the right intire advancing; *Front half-Files* move forwards three paces, *files* double your depth to the right of each division; *half-files* double your *front*, intire into the midst. The two first and the two last men of *Pikes* upon each *flank* face inward, the two middle *rank*s face outward, the two last *rank*s of *Muskettiers* face about, march all three paces, to your *leader*.

```

      C
    M M S
    M M
    P P
    P P
  P M      M P
  P M      M P
      P P
      P P
      M M
    S M M
      L

```

To passe by the *firings* which may be performed upon this figure I shall proceed from hence to draw another.

Command. The outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* close inward to order; *front* and *rear* divisions of *Pikes* open outward to double distance; *Pikes* double inward *rank-wise*; and they will stand as followeth.

```

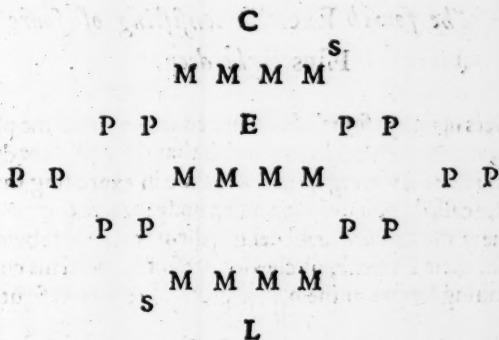
      C
      S
    M M
    M M
  P P E P P
  P P      P P
    M M
    M M
  P P      P P
    M M
    M M
    S
      L

```

Upon this figure *fire* to the *front* in their severall divisions one after another, and fall in the *rear* of themselves, then wheel off to the right into the *rear*, the rest of the divisions moving forward in their *roome* doing the like untill all have *fired* over twice.

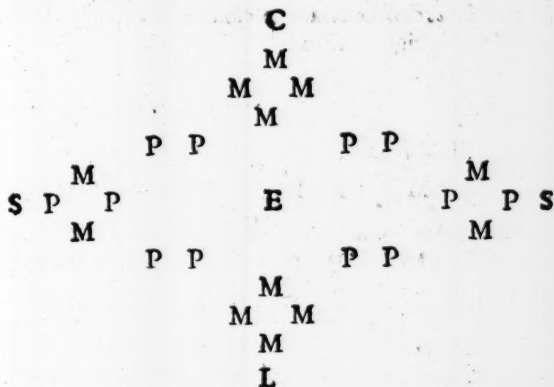
Command

Command. Muskettiers double your *Ranks* outward in each division, and they will stand as underneath.



Upon this figure as in the former they may fire like-wise to the *front* falling down into the *rear*, and after every *rank* successively moving up into the *front* may fire and fall off in like manner; this firing may be done twice to the *front*, and being faced to the *rear* they may there give fire after the same manner, and after face to there first *front*.

Command. Muskettiers double to the right and left inward file-wise; middle-most division of Muskettiers face outward, and march untill you have placed your selves in *front* and *rear* of the out-most divisions of *Pikes*: The last *rank* of *front* and *rear* divisions of Muskettiers double to the right file-wise and move for-ward untill your first men exceed two foot the *front* of each division, which occasioneth the next figure.



It is now high time that we put a period to this Exercise, wherefore let the *Ensigne* unfurl his *Colours*, the souldiers shoulder their arms, and the *Drum* beat a march, upon which the *Ensigne* being in the midst may display his *Colours* so long as shall be convenient, and after the *Leader* may proceed to their reducement as followeth.

Reduement. Middle file of Muskettiers face about, and march cleer of your owne divisions and double to the left rank-wise Muskettiers close inward to order; Pikes double to the right and left outward file-wise: files close into the midst to order, ranks close to order; Pikes move forward and even your *front*; Pikes and Muskettiers inter-change ground, they are reduced.

Now the *Leader* may command the Muskettiers to *troop* away, and after he may lodge his *Colours*; thereby retreshing both himself and his souldiers untill the next summons by beat of the *Drum*.

CHAP. XV.

The fourth Exercise consisting of foure
Files eight deep.

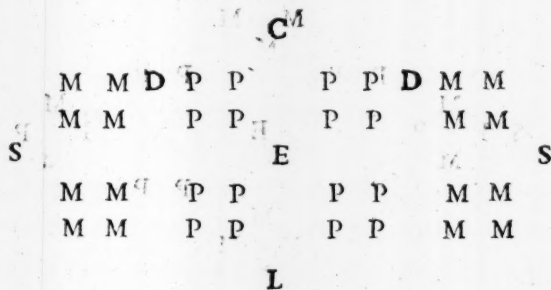
THe Souldiers upon the fourth summons comming unto the place of Exercise makes fuller appearance then before, insomuch that their files are drawn forth eight deep, the Leaders thereof having spent some time in exercising them in each perticuler posture, are called upon to joyne into a body; where their leader stands bethinking of himselfe what new matter he should delight them with, there being sufficient in any one perticuler motion for their Exercise, pitches for present to spend his chiefeest time in Motions upon *facings* continuing longer in them, in respect of the severall figures of *Battail* demonstrated by them.

Now for the more ready performance thereof I shall onely give the severall words of commands for each perticuler figure which may be drawn from these *facings*, referring the reader to the figures themselves where I shal have occasion to make use of them upon firings, which shall be made known unto him by *Alphabetical* letters, pointing from each *facing* to the figure it produceth. To come briefly to the exercise in hand, silence being craved, and *ranks* and files closed to order, the Leader may proceed to these or the like perticuler *facings* producing eighteen figures of *battail* *alphabetically* set forth, with their reducements.

Command. Half-files double your front to the left

Direction. Files open from the right to open order, half-files advance your arms, and move forward to the left and double the front.

Command. Files open from the midst to open order; *Muskettiers* close outward to close order; the inmost files of *Pikes* close outward to close order: *Ranks* close to Front and Reer to order, and they will stand in eight divisions.



Command. Reer divisions of *Pikes* face about; *Muskettiers* face outward move all three paces, to your Leader; point to the first figure marked by the Alphabetical letter A.

Command. *Muskettiers* face inward, divisions of *Pikes* face outward, march all untill the *Pikes* are cleer three foot of the *Muskettiers* to your Leader: this formes the figure demonstrated unto you by the alphabetical B.

Command. Reer Division of *Muskettiers* upon the left face about to the right; Reer division of *Muskettiers* upon the right face to the right; Front division of *Muskettiers* upon the left face to the left; divisions of *Pikes* face to the center, move all untill your *Muskettiers* be cleer three foot of Front, Reer, and both Flanks; then let them stand, and face the divisions of *Muskettiers* to the left, and the divisions of *Pikes* to face about to the right, and to move all two paces, then face all to the center, and close their divisions a little, after face to their Leader. C

Command. Reer divisions of *Muskettiers* stand, the rest face to the Reer, march all untill your reer division range even abreast with those upon the flanks, to your Leader. D

Command. Reer divisions of *Pikes* face outward, march all untill the reer divisions of *Pikes* be cleer of the outmost divisions of *Muskettiers*, then let the reer divisions of *Pikes* face to the Front, the rest face to the reer march all three paces, to your Leader. E

Com-

Command. Divisions of *Muskettiers* in the midst face about, march all untill the middle-division of *Muskettiers* range even with the *Reer*, to your *Leader*. F.

Command. Front-divisions of *Pikes* face to the outward *Angles*; *Reer*-division of *Pikes* face about, and after face to inward *Angles* of the *Reer*; out-moſt division of *Muskettiers* face to your inward *Angles*; Front-division of *Muskettiers* face about, as you are now faced, move all ſome three paces to your *Leader*. G.

Command. *Muskettiers* face to *Front*, *Reer*, and both *flanks*; divisions of *Pikes* face to the *Center*, march all untill you be even a *Breſt* in *Front*, *Reer*, and both *Flanks*, to your *Leader*. H.

Command. *Reer*-divisions of *Muskettiers* face about, the out-moſt Diviſions face inward; Diviſions of *Pikes* face to the *Center*, march all ſome three paces to your *Leader*. I.

Command. Division of *Muskettiers* upon the left in the miſt, and the three laſt Diviſions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* to face to the *Reer*, and move three paces, and ſtand; middle-diviſions face to the left, the reſt face about to the right, and move three paces, to your *Leader*. K.

Command. The four laſt Diviſions face to the left; the four firſt diviſions face to the right, move all untill you be clear one of another, then face to the right, and march untill you range even a *Breſt* in *Front* and *Reer*, face to your *Leader*. L.

Command. The two in-moſt diviſions of *Pikes* ſtand, the reſt face inward, march all untill the middle-diviſions be three foot clear of the *Front*, to your *Leader*. M.

Command. Front-diviſions of *Pikes* face outward, the reſt face inward, march all untill the Front-diviſions range even with the out-moſt diviſions of *Pikes*, face to your *Leader*. N.

Command. Front-diviſions of *Muskettiers* face outward, the reſt face inward, march all untill the Front-diviſions of *Muskettiers* are clear of the *Pikes*, then ſtand, and the fix laſt diviſions to face about, and move three paces, to your *Leader*. O.

Command. *Reer*-diviſions of *Muskettiers* face outward, march all ſome fix paces *Reer*-division of *Muskettiers* face to the *Front*, the reſt face to the *Reer*, and move untill the *Reer*-diviſions range even a *Breſt* with the *Front*, to your *Leader*. P.

Command. Front-diviſions of *Pikes* upon the left face about, march all untill that diviſions be fix foot clear of the *Reer*, then ſtand, and Front and *Reer*-diviſions of *Pikes* face to the left, and move two paces to your *Leader*. Q.

Command. Front-division of *Pikes* face about, march all untill the Front-division of *Pikes* range even a *Breſt* with the firſt division of *Muskettiers*, to your *Leader*. R.

Command. The two out-moſt diviſions of *Muskettiers* face about; out-moſt diviſions of *Pikes* face outward, move all untill the out-moſt *Muskettiers* ſtand ſtreight with the Front-division of *Muskettiers*, then face to your *Leader*. S.

Reduement. Diviſions of *Pikes* face inward, the three laſt diviſions face about, march all ſome fix paces; Front and *Reer* diviſions of *Pikes* face to the left: *Muskettiers* face about, move all two paces, to your *Leader*; Diviſions move forwards, and double your *Front*, cloſe *Files* inward to order, and *Ranks* forward to order; double files to the left intire advancing, reduceth them.

Thus much, I conceive, may be ſufficient at one time for a *Leader* to exerciſe his Company with the Motions upon their *Facings*, ſo that he ſhall not need to trouble himſelfe with any more then *Firings*, where firſt, as is moſt properreſt, we will begin with ſome plain *Firings* to the *Front*: for the performance whereof, let the *half-files* double their *Front* to the left, and *ranks* and *files* cloſe forward and inward to order.

The firſt firing. Let them fire by Diviſions drawn forth 10 or 20 paces, and fall in the *Reer* of themſelves.

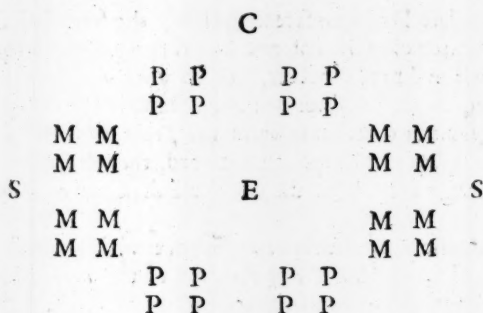
The ſecond firing. Let the *Muskettiers* cloſe their Diviſions before the *Front* of *Pikes*, and give fire and fall all off upon the right *Flank*.

The third firing. The Body moving or marching, let the out-moſt files face to the right, and give fire, and lead away by the contrary ſide of their *Pikes*, by the *Leaders* of the file, the next file may doe the ſame, and conſequently all the reſt untill all have fired, then let them face to the right, the *Pikes* in the interim charging on whiſt the *Muskettiers* make readie again.

The fourth firing. Let the *Pikes* open from the midst that the *Muskettiers*, may come up between them; two *ranks* may kneel down, and the other two stand upright and fire altogether, the *Pikes* then charging, and after retreating they may close again into the midst continuing their aspects to the right flank the *Pikes* may port and the *Muskettiers* may flie up upon the right and left of the *Pikes*, the first *rank* giving fire and presently falling before the front of *Pikes*, the next *rank* doing the same falling full behind their owne *Muskettiers*, and before the front of *Pikes* as they are then faced; and having all fired after that manner they may fire again, and flank their *Pikes*, then facing to front and rear they may give fire to both places and fall off to the right and left, and flank their *Pikes* from Front and Rear; and after face to their leader.

Command. Files open outward to open order; *Muskettiers* close outward to order, the inmost files of *Pikes* close outward to order, *ranks* close to front and rear to order; Rear divisions of *Pikes* face about, *Muskettiers* face outward, move all three paces to your Leader; And now you have the figure of battail pointed out in the first place unto you by the alphabet.

A



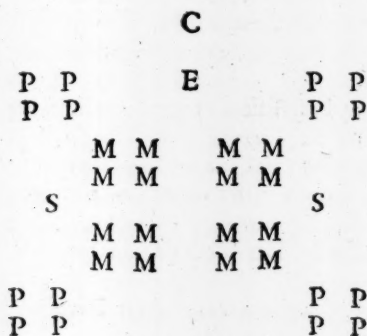
L

The first firing. Let them fire to the Front and fall in the Rear of themselves, then wheel off to the right into the place of those *Muskettiers* in the rear, they at the same time moving up into the front firing in like manner, and moving down into their places again.

The second firing. Let the rear divisions face about, and after let them give fire both to front and rear, and falling in the rear of themselves, the *Pikes* may charge while the *Muskettiers* make ready again; they may fire a second time in the same manner.

The third firing. Face all to both flanks, then let them give fire and fall in the rear of themselves; the *Pikes* after charging on three paces, and the *Muskettiers* retreating three paces, after facing to their Leader, produceth this figure following.

B

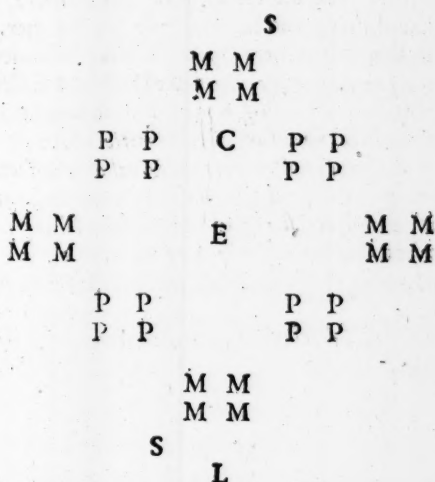


L

The first firing. Let the two first *Divisions* advance three paces before the *Front*, give fire and fall in the *Reer* of themselves, and after move down into the places of them in the *Reer*, they at the same time moving up into their rooms giving fire, in like manner falling downe into their places again, this may be perform'd twice over, after face them to *Front* and *Reer*.

The second firing. Let them give fire, their *Divisions* advancing three paces before the *Front* and *Reer*, falling in the *Reer* of themselves, the *Pikes* charging on and the *Muskettiers* retreating into their places again, facing to their *Leader*.

Command. *Reer* division of *Muskettiers* upon the left face about, *Reer* division of *Muskettiers* upon the right face to the right, *Front* division of *Muskettiers*, upon the left face to the left: *Muskettiers* march all cleer of the *Pikes* then stand, after face them in their severall divisions to the left, and move two paces, to your *Leader*.



If you find by the words of *command* given to make the former figure that your *divisions* stand too thin, you may face them all to the center, and move forward every *division* two or three paces, then face to their *Leader*.

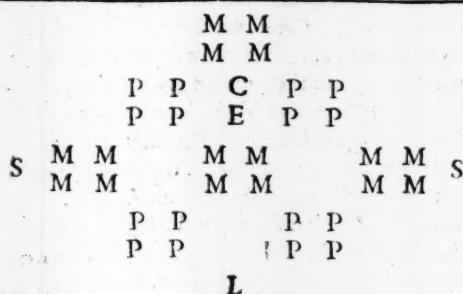
The first firing. Let the *Front* division of *Muskettiers* give fire, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves, after wheel off to the right into the room or place of them in the *Reer*, they at the same time moving up into the *Front*, firing and falling off in like manner, this firing may be performed twice.

The second firing. Let the *Muskettiers* upon the *Wings* advance forward three paces, give fire and fall in the *Reer* of themselves, after face about and move into their places.

The third firing. Let the *front* division of *Muskettiers* move to the right two paces, *Reer* division move up upon the left of them, then let them all both in *front* and *reer* give fire on the ground they stand, & fall in the *reer* of themselves, the *Pikes* after closing forward their divisions may charge on, and after retreating into their places again, the division of *Muskettiers* upon the left in the *front* in the mean space facing about, and moving down into their places.

The fourth firing. Let the *Muskettiers* face to *front*, *reer*, and both *flanks*, the *Pikes* face to the outward angles of *front*, and *reer*, and *port*, then let them give fire on the ground they stand and fall in the *reer* of themselves; *Pikes* may charge on to the four angles, then ordering all their armes, move the *reer* division of *Muskettiers* forward even with them of the *wings*, then face all to their *Leader*.

D



The first firing. Let the first division fire, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves, after face about, and move down into the middle rank of *Muskettiers*, they at the same time marching up into their ground, *firing*, and falling off in like manner.

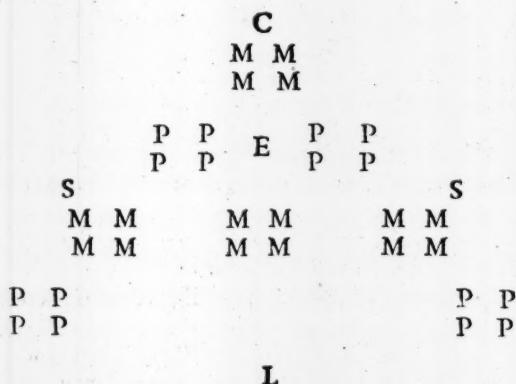
The second firing. Let the *Muskettiers* upon the *Wings* advance forward even a breast with those in the *Front*, and fire altogether, the three Divisions falling in the *Reer* of themselves, and after the outmost divisions facing about, and moving into their places again.

The third firing. Let the *Front* Division of *Muskettiers* face about, move down, and double the middlemost by division; after let the *Muskettiers* face outward, and move three paces, and give fire to both the *flanks*, falling off to the right and left, the middle Divisions making good their ground, and *firing* in like manner falling off.

Having fired twice over to both the *flanks*, face them to their Leader, and draw forth the outmost files of *Muskettiers* of the middle Division before the front of *Pikes*, and close their files inward to order.

Command. *Reer* division, of *Pikes* face outward, and move two foot cker of the standing part: To your Leader.

E

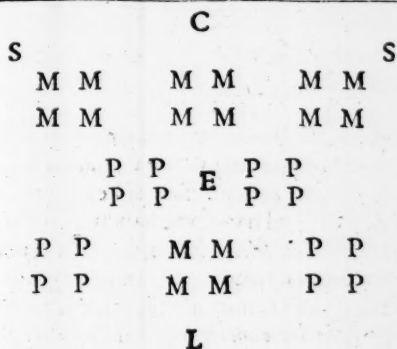


The first firing. Let the first division of *Muskettiers* give fire, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves, and after wheel about, and fall in the midst of the *Reer*, and range even a breast between the outmost divisions of *Pikes*, after face to their leader.

The second firing. Let the three other divisions advance forwards altogether three foot before the *Front*, and give fire, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves, the *Pikes* charging on, and the *Muskettiers* still preserving their ground, making ready again whilst the *Pikes* retreat into their places.

The third firing. Let them give fire again in like manner, the *Pikes* charging on, and retreating as before, then let the last divisions of *Pikes* move inward in a straight line with the outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* in the *Front*, and they will stand as followeth.

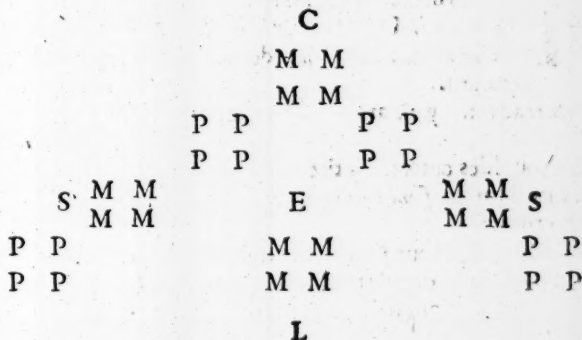
The



The first firing. Let them give fire to the *Front*, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves, this may be performed twice; then face to *Front* and *Reer*, the last rank of the middle division is to face about, the first rank are to continue their aspects unto the *Front*.

The second firing. Let the *Pikes* port to *Front* and *Reer*, and the *Muskettiers* give fire to *Front* and *Reer*, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves, and after the *Pikes* may charge on, and retreat again; they may continue this firing twice, the *Pikes* charging, and after face to their *Leader*.

Command. *Reer* divisions of *Pikes* face about, and move three paces, and face to their *Leader*; *Front* division of *Muskettiers* face about, and move down into the midst, as before, interchanging ground with the *Reer* division of *Muskettiers*: the two last divisions of *Pikes* move outward, untill they be two foot cleer of the next range of *Muskettiers*; middle division of *Muskettiers* move backward even with the *Reer* divisions of *Muskettiers*, to your *Leader*.



F

Upon this figure face the three last divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* to the right about, and let them give fire to *Front* and *Reer*, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves, the *Pikes* may afterwards charge on to *Front* and *Reer*; and retreat back again into their first places, they may perform this firing twice, the *Pikes* likewise charging up before, and retreating into their places again, face all to their *Leader*.

And now it will be expedient having almost tired the *Muskettiers* with these severall firings to end our fourth Exercise, and lodge the *Colours*; but first we will reduce them.

Reduement. The outmost division of *Muskettiers* on the right move forward, and fall in the *Reer* of them in the front: *Reer* division of *Muskettiers* move forward and fall in the *Reer* of the left division of *Muskettiers*, then let them move streight forwards and joyne with them in the front, and close the *Pikes* into the midst to order, and their ranks forward to order; let the *Pikes* double the front inward intire, and after files to double to the left intire advancing, closing files inward to order; they are reduced.

CHAP. XVI.

The fifth Exercise with four Files eight deep.

THe *Souldiers* having made timely appearance according to the *Drums* summoning into such place as was appointed by their *Commander*, and being by the *Serjeants* drawn forth into *Files*, the *Leaders* thereof being permitted to instruct and teach their *Files* the *Postures*, and handsome handling of their arms, are forthwith by warning of the *Drum* to lead up their *files*, & being joyn'd in a body, according to the discretion of the superiour Officers, do their stand silently, expecting what will follow; The *Captain*, or other that shall exercise them, first commands the *Bringers-up* to double their *Front* to the left, and after appoints one of the *Serjeants* to fetch the *Colours*; to which purpose he draws off the two inmost *files* of *Pikes*, and advancing their arms, the *Drum* beating a troop they move away, and bring them to the *Company*, being led thither by the *Ensigne*, the *Serjeant* falling in the *Reer* of the *Pike*, and they falling into their places again, they may be commanded *Files* to double their depth to the right, every man falling behinde his *Bringer-up*. Now the former days *Exercise* being chiefly spent in the *Motions* by severall *facings*, they may be spar'd in this, and in lieu thereof the *Leader* may out of the former plain *doublings* collect one that may continue long in exercise before reduced, and in this exercise he shall not need to trouble himself with *Counter-marches* or *Wheelings*, but fall immediately alone upon the *Motions* with this doubling or the like as followeth.

CHAP. XVII.

Thirty severall Doublings, with their reducement.

Command. **H**alf-files double your *Front* to the left.

Command. Double your files to the right intire advancing.

Command. Half-file double your *Front* to the right and left outward.

Direction. Half-files advance your arms, and move to the right and left outward, and double the *Front*.

Command. Double your files outward intire advancing.

Direction. Even files from the *flanks* move forward and double the odd, and after close files into the midst to order.

Command. Half-files double your *front* to the right intire.

Command. Right half-ranks double the left flank to the right.

Direction. Face to the left, right half-ranks move forward, and double the left flank to the right, to your *Leader*.

Command. Double your *ranks* to the right intire.

Command. Right half-ranks double your left flank intire advancing.

Command. Half-files double your *Front* to the left intire.

Command. Left half-ranks double your right flank to the left.

Direction. Face to the right, left half-ranks advance your arms and move forward to the left, and double your right flank.

Command. Double your ranks to the left intire.

Command. Left half-ranks double your right flank intire advancing.

Command. Half-files double your *Front* inward intire.

Direction. *Front* half-files face outward, and march clear of the standing part, to your *Leader*, half-files move forward and double the *Front* inward intire.

Command. Right half-ranks double intire the depth of the left flank.

Direction. Left half-ranks stand, right half-ranks face about, and march clear of the standing part, then face to the right and move forward even with the left *Flank*, to your *Leader*.

Command. *Front* half-files double the *Reer*, to the left intire.

Direction. *Front* half-files face to the right, march clear of the standing part, face all to the *Reer*, *Front* half-files move down and double the *Reer* to the left.

Com-

Command. Right half-ranks double your left Flank to the left.

Direction. Face all to the left, right half-ranks move forward, and double the left flank to the left, to your Leader.

Command. Double your Ranks to the left intire into the Reer.

Direction. Face all to the Reer, and every even rank from the Reer move forth, and double the odd, to your Leader, and close ranks forward to order.

Command. The two out-moſt files upon each flank double, intire advancing the four in-moſt files.

Command. Front half-files double the Reer to the right intire.

Command. Right half-ranks double your left flank inward intire.

Direction. Half-files of the left half-ranks face about, left half-ranks move cleer of the ſtanding part, face all to the left, right half-ranks move forwards, and double the left flank inward intire.

Command. The four middle-ranks double your Front and Reer inward intire.

Direction. Half-files face about, the two firſt, and the two laſt ranks open outward untill you be cleer of the ſtanding part, then the four middle-ranks move forward two to the Front, and two to the Reer, doubling intire to both places, face to your Leader, and cloſe your Diviſions.

Command. The two out-moſt files upon each flank, double the four middle-moſt files by Diviſion.

Direction. Half-files of the two out-moſt files face about, out-moſt files move cleer of the ſtanding part, then cloſe inward to order, and face to your Leader.

Command. The two firſt, and the two laſt ranks, double the four middle-moſt ranks inward intire.

Direction. The four middle-ranks face outward, and move cleer of the ſtanding part, then face to your Leader, the two firſt ranks face about, move forward with the two laſt, doubling the middle-moſt inward intire, to your Leader.

Command. The four in-moſt files double intire advancing the two out-moſt files.

Direction. The two out-moſt files ſtand, the in-moſt files move forward cleer of the ſtanding part, then face outward, and move ſtreight with the out-moſt files, to your Leader, and cloſe files into the miſt to order.

Command. Front half-files double the Reer by Diviſion.

Direction. The four middle-files double the two out-moſt files inward intire.

Direction. Half-files of the two out-moſt files face about, out-moſt files move forward cleer of the ſtanding part, face all to the right and left outward; in-moſt files move forward, and double the out-moſt inward intire, to your Leader, and cloſe files into the miſt to order.

Command. Front half-files double your Reer to the left.

Command. Files double your Depth to the right.

Command. The two firſt and the two laſt ranks double the four middle-ranks by Diviſion.

Direction. The two firſt and the two laſt ranks face outward, and march cleer of the ſtanding part, then face inward, and move forward, doubling the in-moſt files by Diviſion, face to your Leader.

Command. The two out-moſt files upon each flank double intire, the Depth of the four in-moſt Files, reduceth.

CHAP. XVIII.

Plain Firings, and Figures of Battail.

HAVING paſſed over theſe Motions of Doublings, in the next place we will proceed to Firings, command therefore Files to open from the miſt to open order, and after let the Bringers-up double the Front to the left.

The firſt firing. Let the Muskettiers give fire, even in the Front, and fall in the Reer of themſelves.

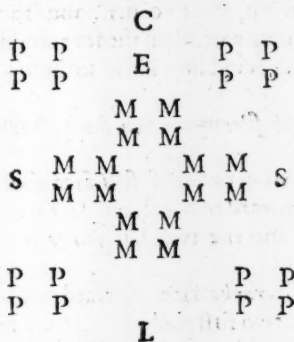
The ſecond firing. Let the firſt rank give fire, and fall in between the Pikes, every rank doing the ſame untill all have fired; then let the firſt rank move forth by Diviſion, give fire to the Front, and fall in again, every rank doing the ſame.

The

The third firing. Let them face to both *flanks*, and give *fire*, and fall off to the right and left and *flank* their *Pikes* to *front* and *reer*, the *Pikes* may now port, and move all forward three paces, the *Muskettiers* may give *fire* again and fall in the *reer* of the *Pikes*, the *Pikes* charging on, and after retreating to their first ground may charge at foot, and the *Muskettiers* may give *fire* by two *ranks* altogether over their heads, after recovering their armes let them face to *front* and *reer*, and let the *Muskettiers* move forth clear of the standing part, then stand and give *fire* to *front* and *reer* and fall off to the right and left and *flank* the *Pikes* who after may charge on to *front* and *reer*, then retreating, face all to their *Leader*.

Command. Half-*files* of *Pikes* face about, *Muskettiers* face outward, march all three paces *Pikes* face to the right and left, *Muskettiers* face about to the right, march all three paces, then let the last *rank* face about, the first and the last *rank* double *file-wise* inward advancing, *Pikes* face to the outward angles of *front* and *reer*, *Muskettiers* face to *front*, *reer*, and both *flanks*, and move all two paces, to your *Leader*.

G



The first firing. Let the first division of *Muskettiers* fire to the *front*, and fall in the *reer* of themselves, and after wheel off to the right, moving down into the place of the *reer* division who may at the same time move forward into their ground and fire in like manner, wheeling off as the former did.

The second firing. Let the two out-most divisions move forward into the *front*, give *fire* and fall in the *reer* of themselves, and after move down into their places.

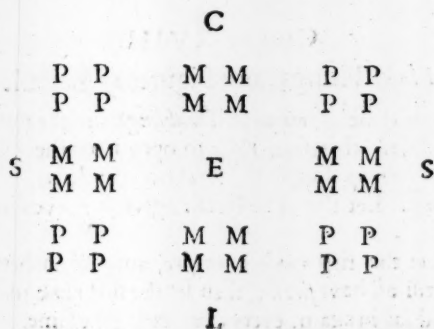
The third firing. Face all to the *reer*, and let the *Muskettiers* give *fire* there in the same manner as they did to the *front*.

The fourth firing. Let the *Muskettiers* face to *front*, *reer*, and both *flanks* and the *Pikes* face to the outward angles of *front* and *reer*, then let *Muskettiers* move forth three foot clear of the *Pikes* and fire to *front*, *reer* and both *flanks*, and fall in the *reer* of themselves, after facing above, move into their places again.

The first firing. Let them face as before and give *fire* on the same ground they stand and fall in the *Reer* of themselves, the *Pikes* may after charge on, and retreat into their places again.

Command. *Muskettiers* move forth, and range even a breast with the *Pikes* into *Front*, *Reer*, and *Midst*, and they will stand in a square as followeth.

H



The

The first firing. Upon this figure as they are faced to *front, rear* and both *flanks*, and the *Pikes* to the outward *angles* of *front* and *rear* it will be best to *fire* on the ground they stand, and to fall in the *rear* of themselves, the *Pikes* may after charge to the four *angles*.

The second firing. Let them double their *ranks* outward, and give *fire*, after face about & move three paces into the midst of *Pikes*, and having made ready again, let them face about and move forward and *fire* as they did before, and after dismount their *Muskets* taking them in both hands they may, as occasion shall require, make use of the *Butt* end thereof against the horse, and the *Pikes* may stand upon their charge.

The third firing. Let the *Muskettiers* double inward *file-wise*, the *Pikes* keep their aspects to the four *angles*, the *Muskettiers*, as before, may give *fire* to *front, rear* and both *flanks*, and fall in the *rear* of those *Pikes* next their right hand; And having their aspects unto the same *angles* they may *fire* there if they please by way of *extraduction*, and move forth to the left into their places again, then let the *Pikes* face to the *front*, and *Muskettiers* upon the wings face about to the right, and *Muskettiers* move forward three paces, face to your leader forms the following figure.

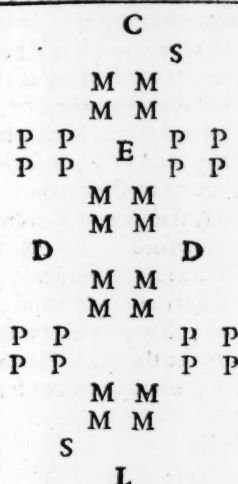


The first firing. Let the first division give *fire* together, and *wheel* off into the *rear*, the *rear* the next two divisions moving forward into their ground giving *fire* altogether, and *wheeling* off to the right and left into the *rear*, the rest still moving forward until the *rear* division is likewise come up into the *front*, and gives *fire* in like manner, and falling off to the right into his first place again, this *firing* may be continued twice.

The second firing. Let them give *fire* altogether to the *front*, after this manner, let the middle divisions move forth to the right and left clear of the *Pikes*, the *rear* division at the same time moving forward upon the out-side of those in the *front*, and give *fire* and move into their places again, making ready whilst the *Pikes* close forward and charge on five or six paces they may retreat again into their places.

The third firing. Let them face all to the *rear* and *fire* after this manner, the first division kneel down, the middle divisions move forth clear of the *Pikes*, the *front* division marching down into the *rear*, may give *fire* altogether, the out-most division and the *front* division over the heads of them in the *rear*, and move in, and back again into their places, then face to their leader.

Command. The outmost division of *Muskettiers* upon the left in the midst, and the three last divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* face about, march all three paces, and stand; Middle divisions face to the left and move two paces, face all to your leader; divisions of *Pikes* face inward; front division of *Muskettiers*, and the second from the *rear* face about, and move little, and close your divisions, to your leader.



The first firing. Let the first division give fire and fall in the rear of themselves, then wheel down into the rear, the other divisions successively moving up into the front and firing in like manner; this firing may be continued twice over.

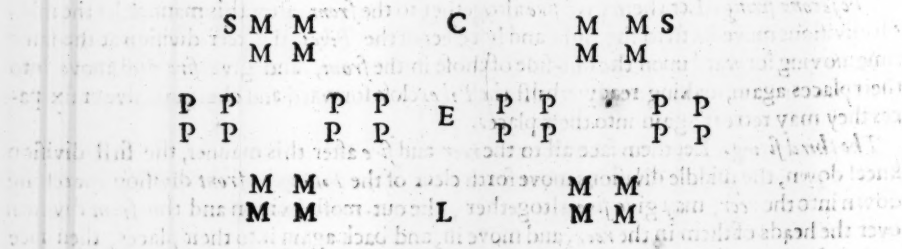
The second firing. Let the divisions of Musketeers double their ranks to the right and left outward, and give fire in single ranks as they did before, untill all have fired twice over.

The third firing. Let them double their files to the right and left inward, and the rear divisions to face about, then let them give fire both to front and rear falling first in the rear of themselves, after to wheel off into the midst and facing to front and rear, the middle divisions may move forth into their ground firing in like manner, the Pikes may after charge whilst the Musketeers make ready again, and after retreating into their places they may continue their firing as formerly the Pikes charging on as before.

The fourth firing. Let each division of Musketeers double ranks outward, and fire to front and rear and to wheel off in one single rank to the right and left, and rank again in the midst and after double inward file-wise, and face to their leader.

Command. The four last divisions face to the left, the four first divisions face to the right, march all untill you be clear one of another, then face to the right and move untill you be even a breast in front and rear, to your leader.

L

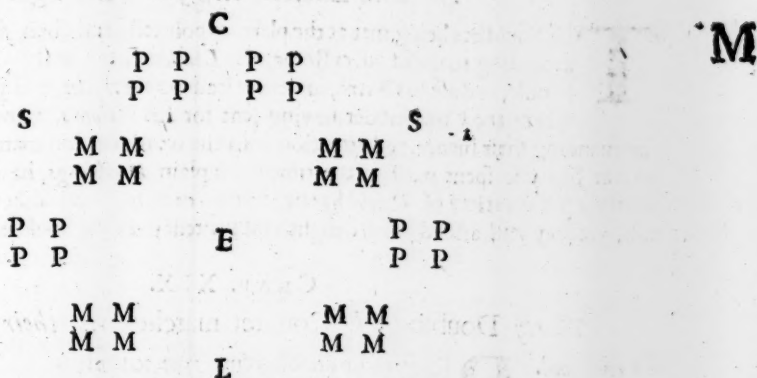


The first firing. Let the first divisions give fire and fall in the rear of themselves, after wheeling off to the right and left into the rear they at the same time moving forwards into their places firing and falling off in like manner; they may performe the same firing to the rear being thither faced.

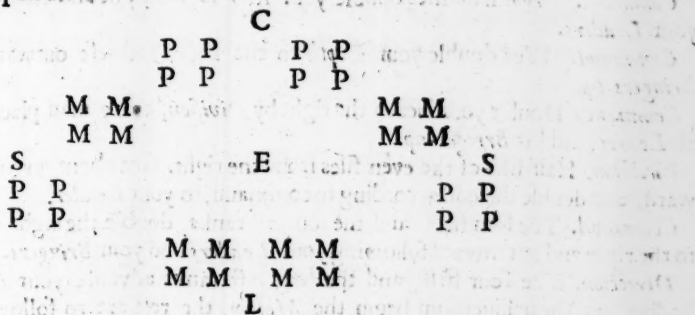
The second firing. Let the rear divisions move to the right and left outward clear of the standing part, then face to the front move up even a breast with the front divisions, and let every division fire to the front and fall in the rear of themselves, the Pikes may charge and after both they and the outmost divisions may move down into their places.

Command.

Command. The inmost divisions of *Pikes* advance forward three foot before the *front*, the rest face inward and move two paces, to your Leader.



Upon this figure let the first *ranks* of the *front* division *fire* and fall behind the *front* divisions of *Pikes*, the next *rank* may *fire* and fall behind the first, then let the *rear* division move up and give *fire* and fall in the *rear* of themselves, and after *wheel* about to the right and left inward, moving down clear of the *rear*, and *facing* again unto their Leader, then they may *fire* a second time in the same way, the *front* divisions moving forth and *firing* first and falling behind the *Pikes*, the *rear* divisions coming up into their places, *firing* and falling off again by *wheeling* about inward, untill they be clear three foot of the *rear*, then *facing* to their leader, they will stand as followeth, where the *Ensigne* may display his *colours*, if the Leader pleaseth to march upon it.



Having now spent much time in these particular *firings*, it will be convenient to give the souldiers some respite to refresh their almost tired spirits that they may more cheerfully appear upon the next summons of the *Drum*; and therefore we wil conclude this Exercise, and prepare for the lodging of the *colours*.

Reducement. *Rear* divisions of *Pikes* move streight forward, untill you range even a brest with the *front* divisions of *Pikes*; *Rear* divisions of *Muskettiers* move forward and range inward even a brest with the *front* divisions; *files* close into the midlt to order; *front* and *rear* half-*files* open from the midlt to double distance; the four inmost *files* of *front* & *rear* half-*files* face inward and interchange ground, then let each two *files* of *Pikes* close outward to order, and after to double there divisions to the right *filewise*, and to close *files* to the left to order; the two outmost *files* of *Muskettiers* upon the right double *ranks* inward, and lead them away before the left half-*ranks* of *Muskettiers*; the next two *files* double *ranks* outward, and lead them away behind the *rear* by first *facing* them about; *Pikes* face to the left and move streight before the *Muskettiers*, and then double the *rear* inward intire, and after *files* to double their depth to the right, every man falling behind his Bringer-up, they are reduced.

CHAP. XVIII.

The sixth Exercise with four Files eight deep.

THe Souldiers being met at the place appointed, and their *files* being drawn forth according to the usuall custome, the *Leaders* begin to shew each Souldier how to handle, and use his Arms, and after leads up their *files*, and joyns them into a *Body*, whete the Commander having sent for his *Colours*, stands at the head of them, commanding their silence, and attention unto the words of Command. Now having in his former Exercise spent most of the time upon plain *Doublings*, he may in this shew unto them the great variety of *Doublings* by *Counter-marches*, and although they are very difficult, yet they will afford much delight and content unto the Souldiers.

CHAP. XIX.

Thirty Doublings by Counter-marches with their reducement.

Command. **B**ringers-up double your *Front* to the left.

Command. Double your *files* to the left intire advancing, every man placing himselfe before his *Leader*.

Command. *Front* half-*files* double your *Reer* to the right and left outward, following your *Leaders*.

Command. Double your *files* outward intire advancing, every man placing himselfe before his *Leader*.

Command. Bringers-up double your *Front* to the right and left inward.

Command. Double your *files* inward intire advancing, every man placing himselfe before his *Leader*.

Command. *Front* half-*files* double your *Reer* to the right and left inwards, following your *Leaders*.

Command. *Files* double your *Depth* to the right and left outward following your Bringers-up.

Command. Double your *files* to the right by *Division*, every man placing himselfe before his *Leader*, and his *Bringer-up*.

Direction. Half-*files* of the even *files* from the right, face about, even *files* advance forward, and double the odd according to command, to your *Leader*.

Command. The four first, and the four last ranks, double the eight middle-most ranks to the right and left inward following your *Leaders* and your Bringers-up.

Direction. The four first, and the four last ranks advance your Arms, and the file-leaders, and the bringers-up begin the *Motion*, the rest are to follow, after order their Arms, and face to their *Leader*.

Command. Double your *files* to the left by *Division*, every man placing himselfe before his *Leader*, and his *Bringer-up*.

Direction. The eight middle ranks double your *Front* and *Reer* to the right and left outward, following the half-file-leaders, and the Bringers-up of the *Front* half-*files*.

Direction. The four last ranks of the *Front* and *Reer* half-*files* face about, the middle-ranks are to begin this *Motion*, and to advance their Arms, and to turn off to the right and left, every rank following them untill they have doubled the *Front*, and *Reer*, then face all to the *Front*, order their Arms, and close their *Divisions* forward to open order.

Command. Double your *files* inward by *Division*, every man placing himselfe before his *Leader*, and his *Bringer-up*.

Direction. Half-*files* of the out-most *files* face about, the out-most *files* advance your Arms, and move forward, placing your selves before your *Leaders* and your Bringers-up, face to your *Leader*, and order your Arms.

Command. The four first, and the four last ranks double the eight middle-most ranks to the right and left outward, following your *Leaders*, and your Bringers-up.

Direction. The four first and the four last ranks advance your Arms, and move away to the right and left, and double the eight middle-most ranks, to your *Leader*.

Command. *Front* half-*files* double your *Reer* to the right following your *Leaders*.

Command. *Files* double your *Depth* to the right, every man placing himselfe behind his *Bringer-up*.

Command.

Command. Right half-ranks double your left flank to the right, following your right-hand men.

Direction. Face outward, and right half-ranks turn off to the left, and double the left-flank to the right, to your *Leader*.

Command. Double your ranks to the right intire, every man placing himselfe on the out-side of his right-hand man.

Command. Left half-ranks double your right flank to the left, following your left-hand men.

Command. Double your ranks to the left intire, every man placing himselfe on the out-side of his left-hand man.

Command. Double your ranks by *Divison*, every man placing himself on the out-side of his right and left-hand man.

Command. The in-most files double the out-most files placing your selves on the out-side of your right and left-hand men.

Direction. The in-most files advance your Arms, face outward, and move forward, and double the out-most files, placing your selves on the out-side of your right and left-hand men, order your Arms, and close files into the midst to open order.

Command. Double your ranks by *Divison* into the *Reer*.

Command. The two out-most files double the four in-most by following of your out-side men.

Direction. The in-most files face inward, the rest face outward, and turn off to the right and left towards the *Reer*; and double the four in-most files, to your *Leader*.

Command. Double your ranks by *Divison* into *Front*, *Reer*, and *Midst*, every man placing himself on the out-side of his right and left-hand man.

Direction. The two last ranks of the *Front* and *Reer* half-files face about, even ranks from the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Midst*, advance your Arms, and face outward, and move forth, and double the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Midst* of ranks, placing your selves on the out-side of your right and left-hand men, face to your *Leader*, and close ranks forward to open order.

Command. Double your two out-most files to the right and left outward, and *Midst* following of the in-most files.

Direction. The two out-most files face outward, the rest face inward, and *Front* and *Reer* half-files distinctly turn off to the right and left, and double the out-most files to the right and left outward, and midst following of the in-most files to your *Leader*; files close into the midst to order.

Command. Double your files to the right intire advancing, every man placing himselfe before his *Leader*.

Command. Bringers-up double your *Front* to the right.

Command. File-leaders double your *Reer* to the left.

Command. Double your files to the left intire into the *Reer*, every man placing himselfe before his *Bringer-up*.

Direction. Face to the *Reer*, and even files from the left advance your Arms, and move forward, and double the odd, placing your selves before your *Bringers-up*, to your *Leader*.

Command. Files double your *Depth* to the left following your *Bringers-up*.

Command. Half-files double your *Front* to the right and left inward, every man placing himself before his *Leader*, they are reduced as at first.

CHAP. XX.

Plain Firings, and Figures of Batail.

HAVING spent so much time upon these *Doublings* by *Counter-marches*; in the next place I shall proceed to *Firings*, and severall *Figures* of *Battail*, where first command the half-files to double the *Front* to the left, and then go on to your *Firings*.

The first firing. Let them fire even with the *Front*, and fall off, and rank even with the half-files, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves; the *Pikes* may after charge on, and the *Muskettiers* may give fire again, and fall in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*.

The

The second firing. Let the Pikes port, and the Muskettiers give fire by extr aduction.

The third firing. Now the *Musketeers* being in the *reer* fire them thereupon the *march*, wheel them about to the right, and let them fire after this manner; face about to the right and left, let the last *rank* fire, fall off and flank the first *rank* of *Pikes*, and so consequently all the rest; after fire them to the *reer* and fall off to the right and left some six paces before the front of *Pikes* and in the *reer* of themselves; then face the body about and let the *Pikes* charge to the *reer*, and after port, the *Musketeers* may give fire to the *reer* by way of *extraduction*

The fourth firing. Next fire to the rear by dividing the *Muskettiers* and bringing them even with the rear and ranking outward, and falling again as they were; face to your leader.

Command. *Ranks* and *files* open to your open order, *Muskettiers* clofe outward to order, the outmoft *Files* of *Pikes* ftand, the reft clofe outward to order; *front half-files* open forward three paces; *ranks* clofe to *front* and *rear* to order: *Pikes* move forward two paces; *Pikes* face outward, *Muskettiers* face inward, and move clear one of another; to your leader.

N

P P C
 P P E P P
 S M M M M S
 M M M M
 P P P P P P
 M M M M
 M M L

The first firing. Let them give fire to the front and fall in the rear of themselves, then wheel off to the right and left into the rear they at the same time moving up into their ground give fire, and falling off as before, the *Pikes* may after charge on while, the *Musketties* make ready.

The second firing. Let *Pikes* and *Musketeers* rank outward and give fire and fall off in like manner as before; after let them fire and fall in the rear of the first rank of *Pikes* of the front divisions, then the *Pikes* may port, then let the first divisions give fire and fall in behind the *Pikes*, the rear divisions after moving up into their places may give fire and face about, march down into their places, then face to their *Leader*; this firing being continued twice or oftner over, you may fire them to the rear (they being thither faced) after the very same manner the *Pikes* there charging, after facing all to their *Leader*, let them double files to the right and left inward of each division.

Command. Front divisions of *Pikes* face inward, Front divisions of *Muskettiers* face outward, the rest face about, move all six paces, to your leader, *Rear* divisions move forward two paces.

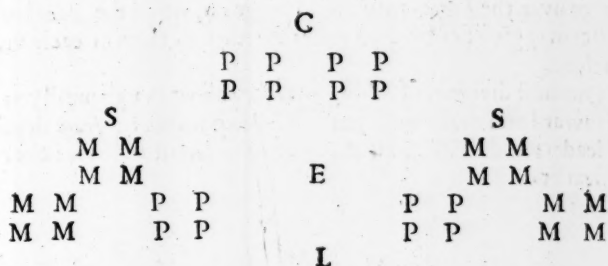
O

C
 P P P P
 P P P P
 S M M M M S
 M M
 E
 P P P P
 P P P P
 M M M M
 M M M M
 L

The first firing. Let the *front* divisions give fire and fall in the *reer* of themselves, then *wheel* off to the right and left into the *reer*; they at the same time moving forward into their places may give fire and fall off as before; this may be twice performed.

The second firing. Let the *front* divisions give fire and fall in the *reer* of the *front* divisions of *Pikes*, the *reer* divisions of *Muskettiers* moving into their ground *firing* and falling behind the *reer* divisions of *Pikes*, then they may move forth cleer of the *Pikes* and fire and fall in again, they may fire after the same manner to the *reer*, but I shall let that passe and goe on to the next.

Command. *Reer* divisions of *Muskettiers* face outward and march three paces cleer of the *reer* divisions of *Pikes*, then face to your *Leader* and move forward untill they range even a brest with the *reer* divisions of *Pikes*.

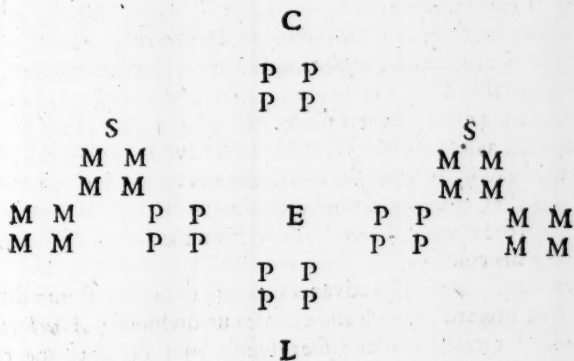


P

The first firing. Let the first divisions of *Muskettiers* give fire to the *front* and fall in the *reer* of themselves, after *wheel* off to the right and left into the room of them in the *reer*, they at the same time moving up into their places *firing* and falling off in like manner; this *firing* may be continued twice over, then the *Pikes* may charge whilst the *Muskettiers* make ready again.

The second firing. Let the *reer* divisions move forward even a brest, then let the *Muskettiers* give fire altogether and fall in the *reer* of themselves, this *firing* may be continued twice over and the *Pikes* may charge, after let those divisions that moved, march down again into their places.

Command. *Front* division of *Pikes* upon the left face about and move down four paces cleer of the *reer*, *front* and *reer* divisions of *Pikes* move to the left two paces, to your *Leader*.

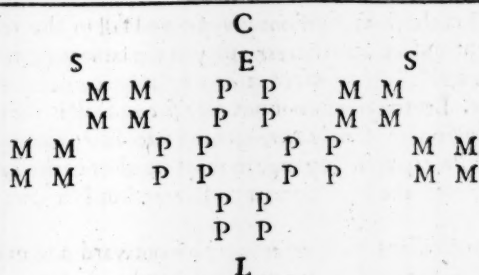


Q

Upon the former figure fire first to the *front* and fall in the *reer* of themselves, then *wheel* down into the place of them in the *reer* they at the same time moving up into their places *firing* and falling off in like manner. This *firing* being twice performed, let the *reer* divisions of *Muskettiers* move up even a brest with the *front* divisions, and fire altogether and fall in the *reer* of themselves, after let the *Pikes* charge on, and the outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* face about and move down into their places.

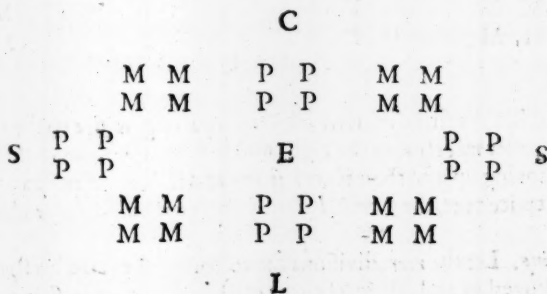
Command. *Front* division of *Pikes* face about and march untill they range even a brest with the *front* division of *Muskettiers*; to your *Leader*; *Reer* division of *Pikes* move forward three paces.

Upon.



Upon this figure let each division *fire* as they stand and fall in the *rear* of themselves, performing it twice over the *Pikes*, may after charge on, whilst the *Muskettiers* make ready again, who after may give *fire* by two *ranks* together as they in each division, the *Pikes* charging as before.

Command. Outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* face about, march untill you range even with the *rear*, face inward and move untill you stand straight after the *front* divisions of *Muskettiers*, to your leader; middle divisions of *Pikes* face outward and move clear of the standing part, to your leader.



The first firing. Let them give *fire* to the *front* by divisions relieving each others; after face them to both flanks and let them give *fire* upon the ground they stand and fall in the *rear* of themselves, this *firing* may be continued twice, and after the *Pikes* may charge on whilst the *Muskettiers* make ready again, and after retreating into their places.

The second firing. Let the middle division of *Pikes* in the *rear* face about, and the middle division of *Pikes* face to the *front*, and *Muskettiers* to face to the outward angles of *front* and *rear*, and let them give *fire* to the four angles and fall in the *rear* of themselves, or *fire* altogether, and the *Pikes* may after charge on to *Front*, *Reer* and both flanks, being all faced unto those places, and retreating again to their places, they may if they please *fire* a second time, and charge on in manner as before. Now if the Leader have a desire to *fire* to *Front* and *Reer* let him face them thither and let them *fire* on the ground they stand and fall in the *rear* of themselves, the *Pikes* after charging on and retreating again into their places, face them all to their leader and open the *Front* and *rear* divisions from the midst to sufficient distance, and let the *Ensigne* display his colours.

Reduement. *Reer* divisions of *Pikes* advance forward unto the left into the *Front*, outmost divisions of *Pikes* face inward, march and close your divisions; *Muskettiers* in the *rear* move and close *ranks* forward to order; *files* double your depth to the right every man falling behind his *Bringer-up*, redueth them.

Then let the *Muskettiers* posse their *Muskets* if they be neere the place of lodging the colours, and to move unto that place making a guard, their *Muskets* being rested, after which the colours being furled up, and the *Pikes* advanced, the *Leader* being on the right hand, and the *Lieutenant* on the left, and the *Ensigne* in the midst, the *Sergeants* following them, and in the *Reer* of them the *Drums* beating a troop, let them march away and lodge the colours, the *Muskettiers* giving of a volley, they may all betake themselves unto their severall habitations until they shall be summon'd again by beat of the *Drum* unto their place of rendezvous.

CHAP. XXI.

The seventh Exercise consisting of sixty four men, eight Files eight deep.

THe Souldiers appearing unto the place of *Exercise*, according unto the appointment of their *Leader*, or accustomed thereunto by beat of the *Drum*, are drawn forth into severall *Files*, as is the usuall custome. And the Souldiers being instructed of the use and handling of their Arms by the *Serjeants*, *Corporals*, or *Leaders* of the *Files*, spending such time therein as shall be convenient untill the fetching of the *Colours*; to which purpose they draw up their *Files*, and joyn into a *Body*, doubling the *Front* to the left by the *half-files*, and send for the *Colours*. Which being brought unto the head of the Company, and the Souldiers returned unto their severall places, and that the *Body* is closed in rank and file to close order, then silence, and the well minding of their *Directions*, and their obedience, is required of them, being three main properties belonging unto every Souldier. Now for more variety sake in matter of *Motions*, the *Leader* may spend his chiefeft time in *Doublings* by *Wheelings*, giving, upon all occasions, the Souldiers their due distance unto every word of Command, and instructing them with their severall reasons and uses; and so proceed to this that follows.

CHAP. XXII.

Two and twenty severall Doublings by Wheelings, with their reducement.

Command.

Wheel off your Reer half-files and double your Front by Division. *Direction.* Half-files face to the Reer, and wheel about to the right and left, untill you come up even with the Front.

Command. Right and left half-ranks double the Depth of the Battail, by wheeling into the Front.

Direction. Right half-ranks wheel to the left, left half-ranks wheel to the right; to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your Front half-files, and double the Reer by Division.

Direction. Half-files face to the Reer, and Front half-files wheel about to the right and left, and move down even with the Reer; to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your right half-ranks, and double the left flank to the right intire.

Direction. Face outward, and right half-ranks wheel about to the left, and double the left flank to the right intire, to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your right half-ranks, and double your left flank by Division.

Direction. Face outward, and right half-ranks wheel about to the right and left, and double the left-flank by Division; to your Leader.

Command. Front and Reer half-files double the Length of your Battail, by wheeling into the left-flank.

Direction. Face to the left, and Front half-files that were, wheel to the left, Reer half-files wheel to the right, to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your left half-ranks, and double your right flank by Division.

Command. Front and Reer half-files double the Length of the Battail by wheeling into the right-flank.

Command. Wheel your left-half-ranks inward into the midst, and double the right flank inward intire.

Direction. Front and Reer half-files open from the midst to more then double distance; after face outward, and left half-ranks wheel inward into the midst, and move forward, and double the right-flank inward intire; to your Leader.

Command. Wheel off your Front half-files, and double the Reer to the right intire.

Direction. Half-files face to the Reer, and Front half-files wheel about to the left, and move down upon the right into the Reer, and face to your Leader.

Command. Wheel your right half-ranks inward into the midst, and double your left flank inward intire.

Command. Wheel off the Front half-files, and double the Reer to the left intire.

Command. Wheel your Reer-half-files inward into the midst, and double your Front inward intire.

Direction. Right and left half-ranks open from the midst to more then double distance, and half-files face about, and wheel inward into the midst, and move forward, and double your Front inward intire.

Command. Right and left half-ranks double the *Depth* of your Battail by wheeling into the Reer.

Direction. Face to the Reer, and right half-ranks wheel to the left, and left half-ranks wheel to the right untill you meet; to your *Leader*.

Command. Wheel your Front half-files inward into the midst, and double the Reer inward intire.

Command. Wheel off your left half-ranks, and double your right flank to the right intire. Face outward.

Command. Wheel off your Reer half-files, and double the Front to the left intire. Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your left half-ranks, and double your right flank to the left intire.

Command. Wheel off your Reer half-files, and double your Front to the right intire. Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your right half-ranks, and double your left-flank to the left intire. Face outward.

Command. Wheel off your left half-ranks, and double intire the *Depth* of the right flank.

Direction. Left half-ranks face to the left, and wheel about to the left, untill you come down in the Reer of the right flank; to your *Leader*.

Command. Wheel off your Reer half-files, and double the *Length* of your Front to the right.

Direction. Half-files face about, and wheel round to the left, and move forward, and double the *Length* of the Front to the right, they are reduced.

CHAP. XXIII.

Severall Firings, and Figures of Battail, with sixty four men.

HAVING passed over these severall *Wheelings* by way of *Doublings*; it will be sufficient time to proceed unto *Firings*, wherefore, first, command them to open their *Files* from the midst to open order, and the *Bringers-up* thereof to double the *Front* to the right and left inward.

The first firing. Let them fire to the front, by ranks, ranking outward, and after to rank as they were.

The second firing. Let them give fire to the front, by ranks ranking inward, and ranking again as they were, and closing again to the Body of *Pikes*.

The third firing. Let the half-files face about, and let them give fire to Front and Reer by ranks ranking outward, and ranking in again as they were.

The fourth firing. Let them advance forwards by two Ranks some ten paces before the Front and Reer, and give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; then face about, and fall before the Front and Reer of *Pikes*, and then fire again falling off to the right and left, and flank the *Pikes*, then the *Pikes* may charge on, and the *Muskettiers* may fall in the Reer of the *Pikes*, and then *Pikes* may charge at Foot, and the *Muskettiers* may give fire altogether over their heads.

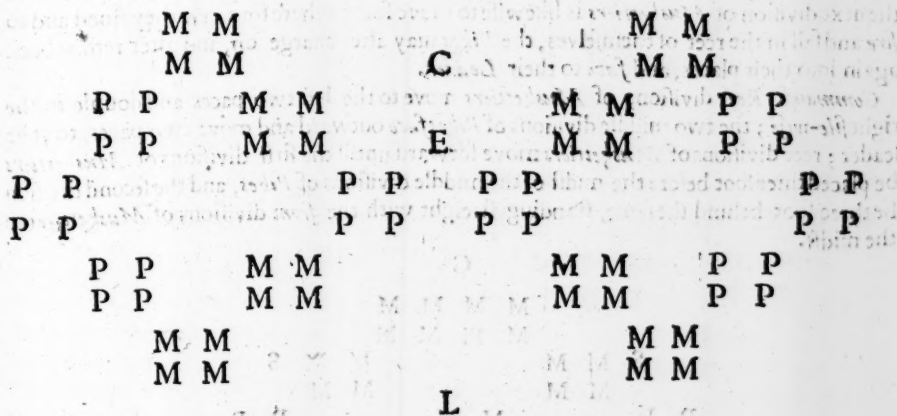
The fifth firing. Let the *Pikes* port, and the *Muskettiers* move forth to the right and left, and fire by *extraduction*, then the *Pikes* may charge again, and the *Muskettiers* may move forth as before, and the first Rank of each *Division* may give fire even with the Front and Reer, and stand, the rest may after move forth cleer of them, and give fire, falling behind their own *Divisions* of *Muskettiers*, then face all to their *Leader*, and close their *Divisions* forward to order, and then proceed to *Figures of Battail*.

Command. Half-files face about, *Muskettiers* move forward untill you be cleer of the *Pikes*; the two in-most files of *Muskettiers* stand, the two out-most files of *Muskettiers* move forwards untill you be cleer of the in-most files; the two out-most files of *Pikes* face outward, and move three foot cleer of the out-most *Divisions* of *Muskettiers*, and after to face to Front and Reer, and to move forward untill they range even with the Reer-divisions of *Muskettiers*; then let them face all to the front, and stand straight in their *Divisions* both rank-wise & file-wise, and they will stand as in the next *Figure*, when they have closed



Upon this figure let the first divisions of *Muskettiers* give fire and fall in the rear of themselves, after *wheel* off to the right and left into the room of them in the rear, they at the same time moving up into their places *firing* and falling off in like manner. Then let the inmost divisions give fire in like manner as the former did, and *wheel* off to the right and left and be relieved by their owne rear divisions of *Muskettiers*, then let the *Pikes* charge on, and after retreating back again into their places.

Command. The two middle ranks of *Pikes*, face outward and move cleer of the standing part, then let the first rank of *Pikes* face about, and the first and last rank of *Pikes* to move forward to order, face all to your *Leader*.

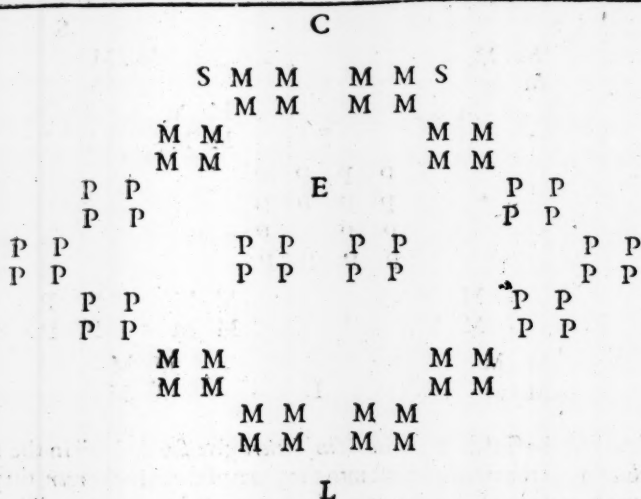


The first firing. Let the front divisions fire and fall in the Rear of themselves; then *wheel* off to the right and left into the room of them in the rear, they at the same time moving forward into their places, *firing* and falling off in like manner; Next let the inmost divisions of *Muskettiers* do the same, who may be relieved by the inmost divisions of *Muskettiers* in the rear.

The second firing. Let them all face to the rear and give fire as they did to the front.

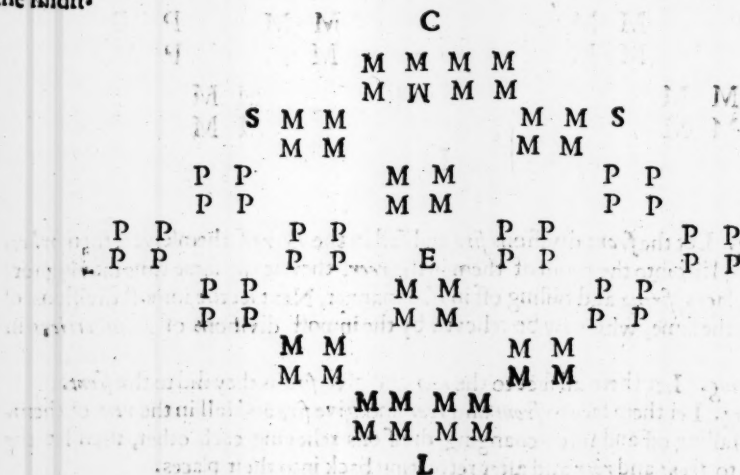
The third firing. Let them face to front and rear and give fire and fall in the rear of themselves first, after falling off and inter-changing divisions relieving each other, then let the *Pikes* charge on to front and rear and after retreating back into their places.

Command. The inmost divisions of *Muskettiers* to move forward untill they be two foot cleer of the standing part, then let them face all inward, and move untill the outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* range even a breast with the middle divisions of *Pikes*, to your *Leader*.



Upon the former figure *fire* them to both *flanks*, where first *face* them outward; let the first division give *fire* and fall in the rear of themselves, and after *wheel* off to the right and left into the places of the *Rear* divisions, and they move up at the same instant of time into their rooms, giving *fire* and falling in the rear of themselves, afterward into their places. Next let them *fire* and fall in the rear of themselves, and after move inward and fall in the rear of the next division of *Pikes*, and then the first division of *Muskettiers* move forth and give *fire* in the ground they formerly stood on, and fall in the rear of themselves, and stand, and the next division of *Muskettiers* is likewise to move forth where formerly they stood and to *fire* and fall in the rear of themselves, the *Pikes* may after charge on, and after retreat back again into their places, and *face* to their *Leader*.

Command. *Rear* divisions of *Muskettiers* move to the left two paces and double to the right *file-wise*; the two middle divisions of *Pikes* *face* outward and move two paces, to your leader; *rear* divisions of *Muskettiers* move forward untill the first divisions of *Muskettiers* be placed three foot before the midst of the middle divisions of *Pikes*, and the second division be three foot behind the same, standing streight with the *front* divisions of *Muskettiers* in the midst.

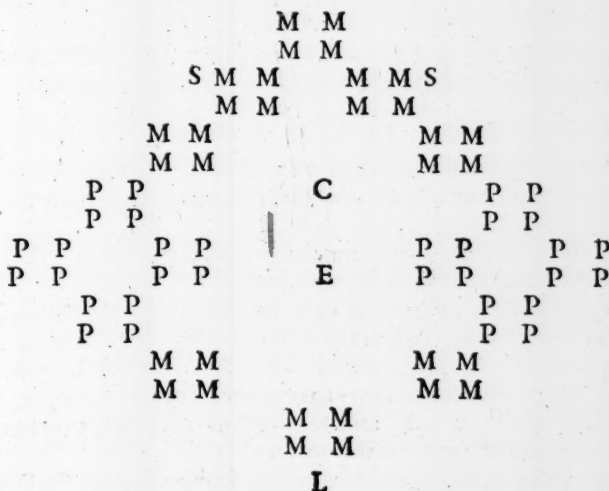


Upon this figure they being *faced* to *front* and *rear* both *Pikes* and *Muskettiers*, let the first divisions give *fire* and fall in the rear of themselves and stand, let the rest move forward untill they be cleer of the *front* divisions of *Muskettiers* and *fire* and fall in the rear of themselves, and

and after face about and move down into their places again; then let the *Pikes* open a little outward and charge all to *front* and *reer*, and when they shall retreat back again into their places, the *Muskettiers* may fire again as they did before, and continue it as long as they please. Or they may fire upon this figure either to *front* or *reer* according to discretion as long as they please.

Now in respect much time hath been spent in the motions by *wheelings* in plain *firings* and figures of battail, we will draw forth one figure more from the former that the *colours* may be displayed, and that we may conclude our seventh Exercise to refresh the souldiers for a space untill they shall again have warning from their Commander for another appearance.

Command. The last division of *Muskettiers* in the midst to face about, middle divisions of *Muskettiers* advance forward untill you be three foot cleer of the *front* and *reer*, to your leader; each division of *Pikes* face outward and move to convenient distance for the *colours* to display, to your leader.



Reducement. *Front* and *Reer* division of *Muskettiers* face about, *front* division move down and double the *reer* division to the left *rank-wise*, to your leader; the two first divisions of *Muskettiers* in the *front* face about, then let them, and the two last divisions of *Muskettiers* in the *reer* move forward untill they be even with the next divisions of *Muskettiers*, to your leader. The two middle divisions of *Pikes* close into the midst to order, and to open their *ranks* from the midst to something more then open order; the two outmost divisions of *Pikes* face inward and move forward into the midst of the two middle *ranks* in the body, to your leader. *Front* divisions of *Pikes* face about, and *front* and *reer* divisions to move forward and to close their divisions, to your leader. *Files* close to the right and left inward to order: *Muskettiers* in the *front* and *reer* double your *Pikes* by division. *Files* double your depth to the right and left outward, every man falling behind his bringer-up, they will be reduced as at first.

Now the *Serjeants* may draw off the *Muskettiers* filing them to the right and left outward thereby making a guard for there Captain and other Officers to march through, trooping away and lodging the *colours* which done, one of the *Serjeants* command the *Muskettiers* to face about to the right, and to present all, and no man to give fire untill they heare the beat of the *Drum*, no man pulling his *tricker* but once which will be a means that they all fire handsomly together, which being ended every man may depart home untill he shall be called forth again.

CHAP. XXIV.

*The eighth Exercise consisting of sixty four men,
eight Files eight deep.*

THe Souldiers being again brought into the Field, or place of Exercise, the *Serjeants*, according to their wonted manner, drawing forth the *Files*, bids each *File-leader* to take his *File* into some convenient place a part, to exercise them in their severall *Postures*, and *Charges*, and after what manner they may fire, whether it be to *Front*, *Reer*, or both *Flanks*. Which being performed, they are called up to joyn into a Body, and commanded to close their *Ranks* and *Files* to their distance of order, and the *Front* doubled to the right and left inward by the *half-files*, distance, before hand, being prepared for their moving up. The *Leader* appoints one of the *Serjeants* to fetch the *Colours*, which being brought up to the head of the Company, the *Leader* for variety sake may spend the chiefest of his time in *Firings*, as followeth.

The first firing. Let the Muskettiers move forward untill their Bringers-up range even with the Front of Pikes; after let the two out-moſt Files of Muskettiers move forward untill their Bringers-up range even a Brest with the Front of the two in-moſt Files; Let the Front or fore-moſt Diviſions of Muskettiers give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves, then let them face about, and move down into their places where they were laſt, then let the two in-moſt Files of Muskettiers of each Diviſion advance forwards untill their Bringers-up range even with the Front of the two out-moſt Files, and then let them give fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves; and after face about, and march down into their places again where they were laſt drawn off.

The second firing. Let them give fire on the ground they ſtand in each Diviſion falling off to the right and left in the Reer of themselves.

The third firing. Let the firſt rank in each Diviſion fire as they ſtand, and after move inward in a ſtreight line before the Front of Pikes, which gives way for the next rank to fire in each Diviſion; & after to move inward into the Reer of the firſt Rank, & ſo conſequently all the reſt to fire in like manner untill they have all fired, and ſtand ſtreight before the Pikes.

The fourth firing. Let their ranks rank outward into the Front, and then give fire all in time in one rank, and ranking again as they were.

The fifth firing. Let the half-files of Muskettiers double the Front by Diviſion, and give fire by two ranks together, and after to move back again into their places.

The ſixth firing. Let the two firſt ranks kneel down, the other two ſtand upright, and give fire four ranks together.

The ſeventh firing. Let the half-files, or Pikes to face about, and move three paces, to your leader; and then Files to double their Depth to the right and left outward of each Arms, then let them give fire eight ranks together after this manner, two kneel down, two kneeling, two ſtand upright, and the two laſt to be drawn off to the right and left, and ſo to fire altogether, which being ended, command the Pikes by their Files to rank outward into the Front, and then open outward to the right and left, and charge on in the Front, and File again as they were.

The eighth firing. Let the Pikes open their Files from the miſt to double diſtance, then command the Muskettiers to face about, and move down into the miſt of the Pikes, then let the half-files face about, and let the Muskettiers be at open order in their Files, and the Pikes at order; and then let them give fire firſt to Front and Reer by intraduction after this manner: let the firſt rank in Front and Reer preſent, and give fire on the ground they ſtand, and preſently make ready again; the next ranks may move forward, and place themſelves three foot before them, and fire in like manner, and after ſtand, the other ranks ſtill moving forward into the next rank untill the firſt have fired, and then immediately to clap before them, and fire in like manner, untill all have fired twice over.

The ninth firing. Let them cloſe their Files into the miſt to order, and fire on the ſame ground they ſtand, and fall in the Reer of themſelves.

The tenth firing. Let them fire and fall off to the right and left into the miſt of Pikes again, then let the Pikes charge on to Front and Reer, and when they are cleer of the Muskettiers, let them cloſe to the right and left inward to order.

The 11th firing.

The eleventh firing. Let the Pikes port, and let the Muskettiers be drawn forth one whole rank to the right, and another to the left, both to Front and Reer give fire, and fall into their places again, then let the other four be drawn forth in like manner, and fire and fall into their places again; the Pikes if occasion shall require, may again charge on.

The twelfth firing. Let the Muskettiers range to the right and left outward, and fire even a Brest with the Reer of each Division, and move in again into their places.

The thirteenth firing. Let the Muskettiers rank outward, and move even a Brest with the Front and Reer, and there present and give fire, and whilst the Pikes are charging on, they may rank again as they were, and fall in the Reer of the Pikes, and make ready again.

The fourteenth firing. The Pikes being retreated into their first ground, you may open them to the right and left, and then the Muskettiers may move forward, and fire two ranks kneeling down, & the other two standing upright, then the Pikes may continue their charge till the Muskettiers make ready again, and after they may retreat, and fall in the Reer of the Muskettiers, and close their Divisions inward to order: These firings being all upon a stand, and the Muskettiers being now in Front and Reer, they may be moved away, and may give fire upon the march to Front and Reer after this manner.

The fifteenth firing. Let the first rank in the Front, nimble advance forward ten paces, then present and give fire, in which interim, the rest will be moved up unto them, the others having fallen off to the right and left in the Reer of their own divisions of Muskettiers, the next rank may give fire in like manner, untill all have fired thus once over; the Reer are to fire at the same time with the Front facing about the last rank, who are to fall off and to place themselves before their own divisions of Muskettiers.

The sixteenth firing. Let them fire as before, and the first rank of the Front-division to fall off, and flank the Pikes to the right, the rest of that Division falling off, and placing themselves in the Reer of them; and likewise the first rank of the Reer-division, when they have fired, let them fall off, and range even a Brest with the half-files of Pikes, and still preserving themselves in their places to be right-hand men to those which were at first, and the rest to give fire and fall in the Reer of them.

The seventeenth firing. Now the Muskettiers being all upon the right flank, let the out-moſt file face to the right, and fire, and lead away by Bringers-up between the Muskettiers, and the out-moſt file of Pikes, let this be continued in the same manner untill all have fired.

The eighteenth firing. The Body still marching, let them fire again, after the same manner, as before.

The nineteenth firing. Let them fire by ranks wheeling to the right flank, and after to rank to the right, so many a Brest as they were at first, marching a long with the Body.

The twentieth firing. Let them fire and fall off on the contrary flank.

The one and twentieth firing. Let them give fire upon the gathering firing after this manner, let the out-moſt file upon the left face to the left, give fire, and then face to the Front, and stand untill the rest be clear, and then the next file to face to the left, and fire, and after face to the Front, and then the first file may gather up even a Brest upon the left of the second file, then the third file may face to the left, and give fire, after face to the Front, and stand, untill the other two march up on the left, and joyn even a Brest with him, and consequently so all the rest untill every file have fired, and that they be all moved up even a Brest with the Pikes.

The two and twentieth firing. Let them wheel ranks to the left, and fire, and after rank four to the left as they were at first, and march even a Brest with the Pikes.

The three and twentieth firing. Let them fire to the left flank, ranks inverting, and after face to the Front, and to rank again as they were.

The four and twentieth firing. Let them fire by files, filing to the right, and facing after to the left, and fire to the left flank; and then facing to their first Front, and to lead up the Files to the left again as they were.

The five and twentieth firing. Let them fire by the out-moſt files to the left flank, and lead away by the Leader, up between, or in the middle of Pikes.

The six and twentieth firing. Let them face outward, and fire upon a stand after this manner by ranks dividing, moving forth to the right and left, and fire and fall in again
into

into their places, the Pikes may after charge on, and retreat again into their places.

The 27th. firing. Let them fire by ranks, ranking outward into both the Flanks, and moving forward, and firing even a breast, and ranking again as they were, but not returning again into the midst of Pikes from whence they were drawn forth; but fire to both flanks, and fall in the Reer of themselves.

The 28th. firing. Let them fire again, and fall in the Reer or midst of Pikes.

The 29th. firing. Let the Pikes port, and let the Muskettiers fire by extraduction to both flanks, and return again into their places.

The 30th. firing. Let the Pikes open to the right, and the Muskettiers move up into the midst, and the first rank give fire, and lieve up to the right and left, and place themselves before the Pikes, the next rank moving forward into his ground, and lieving away in the Reer of them untill all have fired.

The 31th. firing. Let them close their Divisions, and fire, and fall in the Reer of themselves.

The 32th. firing. Let them fire by files ranking outward, and filing again as they were.

The 33th. firing. Let them fire by ranks wheeling outward into both flanks towards Front and Reer, the half-files are to face about, the left half-ranks are to wheel to the right, the right half-ranks to the left, the Front half-files doing the like, may give fire, facing after to the right and left inward, ranking as they were into the midst of ranks, and facing again to the flanks.

The 34th. firing. Let them fire two ranks together, and lieving presently away, and flank the Pikes.

The 35th. firing. Let them face to Front and Reer, and after move outward, and facing to the outward Angles of Front and Reer, and let them fire and fall in the Reer of themselves.

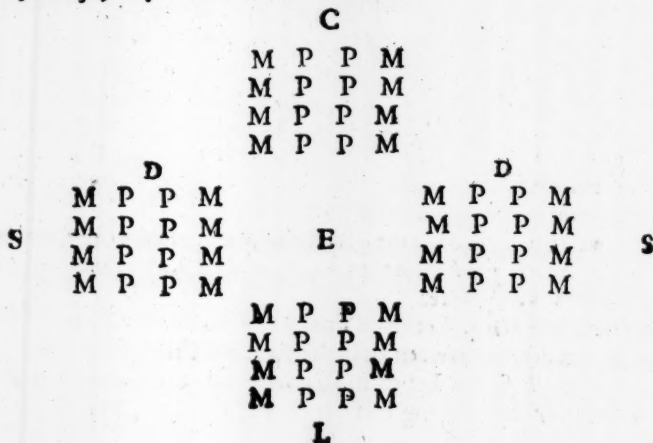
The 36th. firing. Let them close files into the midst to order, and fire again, and let them fall off to the right and left, and flank the Pikes, then face all to their first Front, they are reduced.

Having spent all this time in the plain Firings, we will in the next place proceed to Firings upon such Figures of Battail as followeth.

CHAP. XXV.

Severall Figures of Battail.

Command. **H** Alf-files double your Front to the left, Muskettiers double your Pikes intire advancing; Files open from the midst to double distance: the two out-moſt Files close outward to open order, and the two in-moſt Files close outward to the same distance; half-files of each Division double the Front inward intire. Ranks and Files close to order: The four out-moſt Files upon each Flank stand; the four in-moſt Files upon the left face to the Reer, then let the four in-moſt Files upon the left, and the four in-moſt Files upon the right move forward three foot before the Front and Reer, and then face to the left, and move two paces, then face all to the Front, and move ſtreight in their Diviſions, both rank-wiſe and file-wiſe, they will stand as followeth.



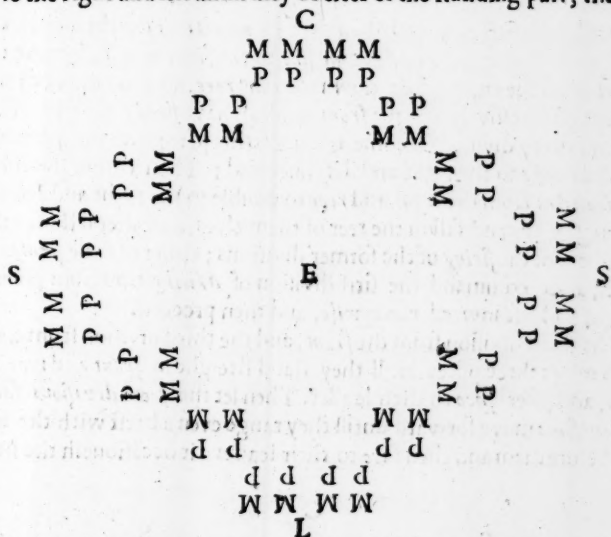
The first firing. Let the *front* division of *Muskettiers* move forward untill they be cleere of the standing part, then give *fire* and fall in the *rear* of themselves, and then closing their *files* into the *midst* to order before the *front* of *Pikes*, the *rear* division of *Muskettiers* may move forward unto the *front* of the first division of *Pikes*, and there *rank* outward and give *fire* altogether, and *file* again as they were, and after *face* about and move down again into their places; the two out-moſt divisions of *Muskettiers* may next move forward ſome ſix paces; there ſtand and *rank* inward and *fire*, *face* about, and *file* again as they were, and move forward to the *front* of their owne divisions of *Pikes* and *face* to their leader.

The ſecond firing. Let the *front* division of *Muskettiers* *fire* & fall off to the right and left & flank their *Pikes*, and at the ſame time let the *rear* division of *Muskettiers* move forward as they did before and *fire* even a breſt with the firſt division of *Pikes*, and fall in the *rear* of themſelves, then *face* about and move down into their places, and *face* to their leader; then let the two outmoſt divisions upon the *flanks* give *fire* on the ground they ſtand and fall off to the right and left and flank the *Pikes*; They may *fire* to the *rear* in the ſame manner being thither *faced*.

The third firing. Let them *face* to *front*, *rear*, and both *flanks*, and *fire* the firſt *rank* of each division and fall off to the right and left in the *rear* of the *Pikes*, and the laſt *rank* at the ſame time move forth and give *fire* and fall into their places again; but before they thus *fire* the *front* and *rear* divisions are to be *wheeled* to the left, then let them *fire* by * *extraduction*, and the *Pikes* may after charge on, and then retreat back again into their places.

* Move forth thoſe *Muskettiers* into their former places, before they *fire* by *Extraduction*.

Command. Each division as they are *faced* to move forward three paces; half-*files* of each division open to the right and left untill they be cleere of the ſtanding part, they will ſtand as followeth.

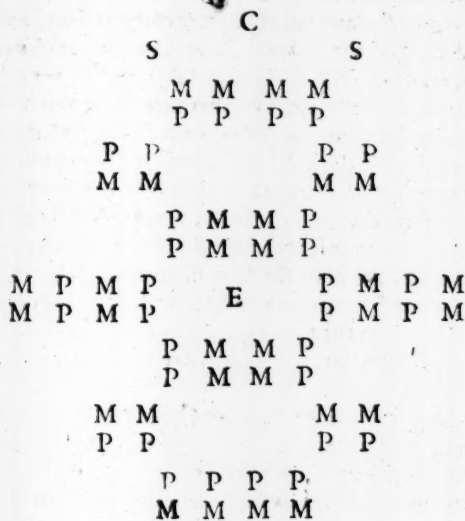


Upon the former figure being *faced* to *front*, *rear*, and both *flanks* *fire* them according unto all thoſe places, the formeſt divisions *fire* firſt, and let them *wheele* off to the right and left, and fall in the room or place of them in the next divisions, *firing* twice in this kinde. Then let the formeſt divisions *fire* and fall in the *Rear* of the *Pikes*, then let the *Pikes* *port*, and the *Muskettiers* in each division may move forth again, and give *fire* by *Extraduction*, then let the *Pikes* charge on, and after charge at foot, and let the *Muskettiers* give *fire* over their heads, which being ended, let the formeſt *rank* of *Muskettiers* in *Front*, *rear*, and *flanks*, move forward, and interchange ground with the *Pikes*, and *face* all to the *front*, and after the third divisions from the *front*, and the third divisions from the *rear* *face* inward, and move three paces, then *face* to their leader, and cloſe *files* outward, and *rank*s forward to order in each division, and ſtand ſtreight and even in their divisions, both *rank*-wiſe and *file*-wiſe, and then proceed to the next figure.

Command. The out-moſt divisions upon the *flanks* *face* about, and move down two paces, to your leader: halfe *files* of the two out-moſt divisions double to the right and left inward *rank*-wiſe, and after move that part that doubled two paces to the right and left inward: *face* all to your leader.

Q

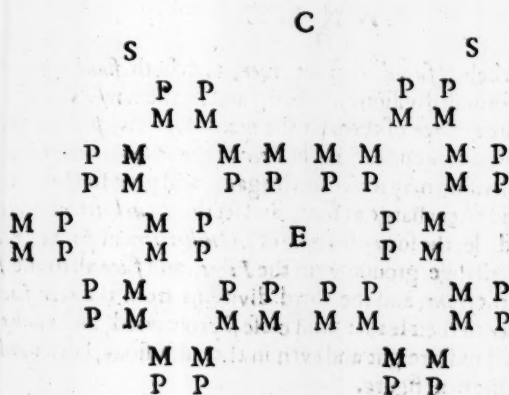
Upon



L

Upon this figure let the first and the last *rank* of *Muskettiers* double to the right and left inward *file-wise*, then let the first *division* give fire to the front and fall in the rear of themselves, then *wheel* off to the right about down into the rear, and let every *division* that are in the midlt move up successively into the front untill all have fired and fallen off in like manner as the first, and every *division* be come again into his place, and the front and rear *divisions* have doubled *ranks* to the right and left outward; Then command the first and the last *rank* of *Muskettiers* from the front and rear to double to the right and left outward *file-wise*, and let them give fire and fall in the rear of themselves, and after fall off into the rear in like manner and form of the firing of the former *divisions*; either of these firings may be continued twice over, after command the first *division* of *Muskettiers* from front and rear to double to the right and left inward *rank-wise*, and then proceed.

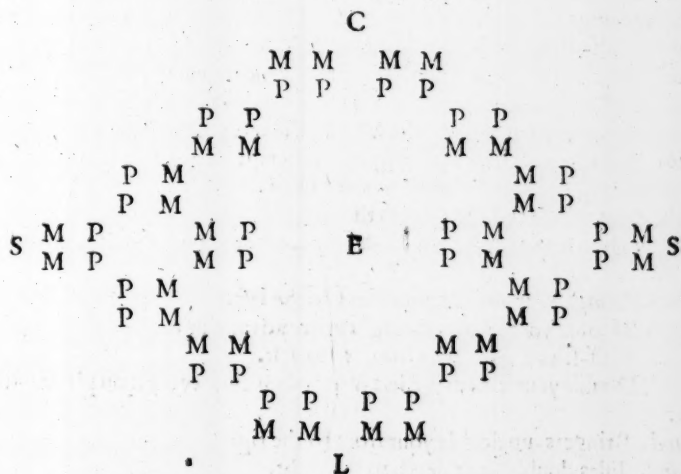
Command. The third *division* from the front, and the third *division* from the rear to face outward, and to move three paces untill they stand streight in front and rear between the middle *divisions*, and after face to their leader. Then let the front *divisions* face about, and front and rear *divisions* move forward untill they range even a breast with the second *divisions* that stands before them and then face to their leader: it occasioneth the next figure.



L

Upon

Upon this figure you may fire them to *front*, *reer*, and both *flanks*, therefore face the two outmost crosses to the *flanks*, which contains on each side four divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers*, and let the rest face to *front*, and *reer*, and let all the *Muskettiers* in the *reer* of each division of *Pikes* move forth to the angles of the *Pikes* give fire, and fall back again into their places, and whilst the *Pikes* are charging on, the *Muskettiers* may make ready again and fire in like manner as before, and fall back again into their places, the *Pikes* charging on to *front*, *reer* and both *flanks*, as before, &c. retreating again into their places. Then face them all to the *front*, and let the second division from the *reer* face about, and then the second division from the *front*, and the second division from the *reer* move forward untill they be three foot cleer of the *front*, and *reer*, then face them to their Leader, and they will stand in a convenient figure for marching wherein the *Colours* may display so long as a Commander shall think fit.



Reduement. The two middle divisions face to the right and left outward, and march cleer of the standing part, to your Leader; then let them double to the right and left outward file-wise. After let them face to *front*, *reer*, and both *flanks*, and close their files into the midst to order, and ranks forward to order. Then command *front*, and *reer* divisions that formerly wheeled to the left, to wheel back again to the right, then face all to the *front*, and let the *front* division face to the right and move three paces, and then face to their Leader; then let the *reer* division move up upon the left of them in the *front*, and let the *Pikes* in each division double their depth to the right and left outward; and let them close files into the midst to order, and ranks forward to order, and to move up even with the *front* they standing in their distance of order both in rank and file, let the half-files double their front inward intire and after files to double their depth intire to the right, they are reduced.

Then the Leader may appoint one of the *Serjeants* to draw off the *Muskettiers*, and file them away to the right and left outward either by ranks filing, or files filing, and every *Muskettier* to poise his *Musket*, then the *Pikes* may advance their arms, and the *Drum* beat a troop, and the Commander may lead them away and lodg his *Colours*.

CHAP. XXVI.

The ninth Exercise consisting of 64 men, eight files, eight deep.

IN this Exercise a Commander may in matter of motions present unto the Souldiers farther varietie to delight them withall, in bringing up each man into the *Front* to be a *File-leader*, according unto succession and dignity by proper words of Command by doublings, with their Reduement. Therefore, to avoid any further circumstance, we will pass over the *Postures*, and fetching of the *Colours*, and suppose the Souldiers standing in a condition to be exercised, begin first to make them all *File-leader* by succession as followeth.

Command. Ranks to the left double.

Command. Files to the left double.

Command. Half-files double your front to the right.

Command. Double your files to the right intire advancing every man placing himself before his leader.

Command. Ranks to the right double.

Command. Files to the right double.

Command. Front half-files double the reer to the right.

Command. Double your files to the left intire advancing.

Command. Double your ranks to the right into the reer ; face all about.

Command. Double your files to the left advancing.

Direction. Every even file from the left move forward to the left and by three steps double the odde advancing.

Command. Half-files double your front to the left.

Command. Double your files to the left intire advancing, every man placing himself before his leader.

Command. Double your ranks to the left into the reer ; face all about.

Command. Double your files to the right advancing.

Reducement. Files rank to the right into the front.

Rank, file eight to the right, reduceth them.

Next followeth to make every man file-leader according unto dignity, with their Reducement.

Command. Bringers-up double your front to the left.

Command. Double your files to the right intire advancing.

Command. Half-files double your front to the left.

Command. Double your files to the left intire advancing, every man placing himself before his leader.

Command. Bringers-up double your front to the right.

Command. Files double your depth to the right.

Command. Ranks to the right double.

Command. Front half-files double your reer to the right following your leaders.

Command. Double your files to the right by division every man placing himself before his leader and his bringer-up.

Command. Front half-files double your reer to the left following your leaders.

Command. Double your files to the left by division, every man placing himself before his leader and his bringer-up.

Command. The two first and the two last ranks double, the four middle-most ranks to the right following your leaders and your bringers-up.

Direction. The four middle ranks stand, the file-leaders are to turn off to the right, and the next rank is to follow them untill the leaders rank even with the bringers-up of the front half-files ; and at the same instant of time the bringers-up are to move forward to the right, the rest following untill the bringers-up range even a breast with the half-file-leaders ; to your leader.

Command. Files double your depth to the left.

Reducement. Half-files double your front to the right.

Bringers-up double your front to the right.

Then divide every four files distinctly apart making five divisions.

Files double to the right and left inward in each division, and close files into the midst to order.

Files double to the left intire advancing ; reduceth.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Eight, severall Counter-marches with their Reducement.

Command. **F**iles to the right hand counter-march maintaining ground.

Command. Ranks to the left hand counter-march losing ground.

Command. Counter-march your front and reer half-files into the midst of ranks.

Direction. Half-files face about and turn off to the left, and front half-files turn off to the right untill they meet the front and reer into the midst, to your leader.

Command. Right and left half-ranks counter-march into the midst of files.

Direction. Face outward right half-ranks turn off to the right, left half-ranks turn off to the left, to your leader.

Command. Files to the left hand counter-march losing ground by following your leaders.

Command. Ranks to the right hand counter-march maintaining ground.

Command. Counter-march your front and reer half-files to the right and left following the half-file-leaders, and the bringers-up of the front half-files.

Direction. Half-files face about, the bringers-up of the front half-files, and the half-file-leaders are to begin the motion, the rest are to follow untill they have gained so much ground beyond the front and reer as they formerly possessed in the midst, to your leader and close your divisions.

Command. Counter-march your half ranks to the right and left by following of the inmost files.

Direction. Face outward, the inmost files are to begin the motion moving forward, the rest following, untill they have gained so much ground beyond the flanks as they formerly possessed in the inmost files, to your leader, and close files into the midst to order, they are reduced.

CHAP. XXIX.

Ten severall Wheelings with their Reducement.

Command. **W**heel the battail off by division from the front.

Command. Wheel the body off by division from the right flank, face to the right.

Command. Wheel the battail off by division from the reer, face about.

Command. Wheel the body off by division from the left flank.

Command. Wheel your battail inward to the reer from the front.

Direction. Open outward to convenient distance, to your leader.

Command. Wheel your battail inward to the left flank from the right.

Direction. Face to the right and open to convenient distance, to your leader.

Command. Wheel your battail inward to the front from the reer.

Direction. Face about and open to convenient distance, and wheel inward into the front.

Command. Wheel your battail inward to the right flank from the left.

Command. Wheel the outward angles of front and reer to the right and left about into the center, face to the outward angles.

Command. Wheel the inward angles to the right and left about from the center.

Close ranks forward to close order, and files into the midst to close order.

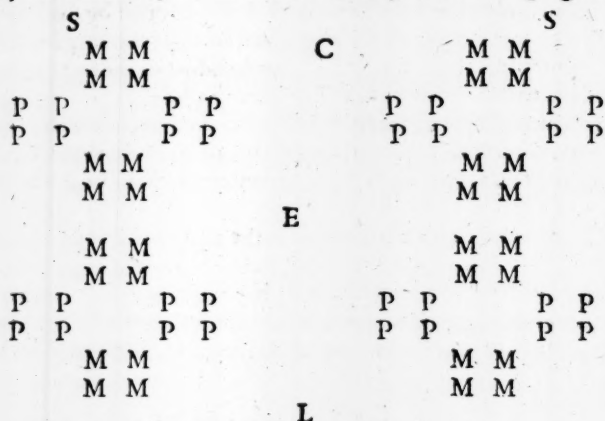
CHAP. XXX.

Plain firings, and figures of Battail.

IN the next place I will proceed to some plain firings, wherfore first double your ranks forward to the left by half-files and fire even with the front of pikes, & fall in the reer of themselves, then fire and fall between the Pikes, then move forth after this manner, one rank drawn forth to the right, and another to the left, fire & fall in again as before. Then command the first rank to stand, and the rest to move forth both Pikes and Muskettiers to the right and left untill each rank be clear of other: then let the Pikes charge, and Muskettiers give fire altogether, and after fall behind each rank of Pikes, then let the Pikes charge at foot, and let the Muskettiers give fire over their heads. After let the Pikes part, and let the Muskettiers come forth again and give fire by extr aduction; and after command the ranks to face to the right and left inward, and to close their divisions: then let the Muskettiers move forth again into their first places and flank their Pikes. And having passed over some half a dozen firings after this manner, then command half-files to double their depth to the right intire, and proceed to figures of battail and firings which comes in the next place to view for a leader to spend his time further in the exercising of his souldiers therein.

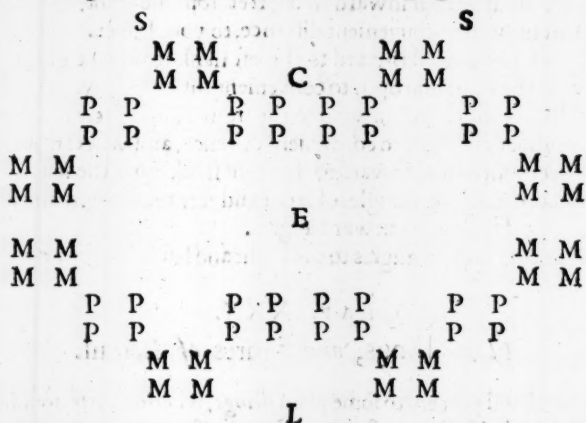
Command.

Command. Half-files face to the Reer and march six paces, to your Leader; half-files of Muskettiers of each division face to the Reer. Muskettiers march all untill you be cleer of the Pikes to your Leader. The two middle-most ranks of Pikes of each division face outward & move cleer of the Muskettiers, to your Leader; the first and third rank of Pikes in the body face to the Reer, and closer ranks into the midst to order, the following Figure will appear.

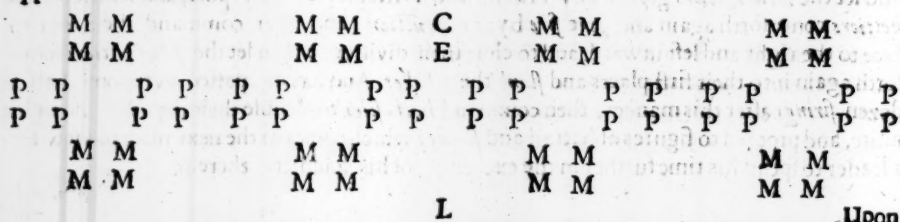


The first firing. Let the front divisions give fire, and fall in the reer of themselves, the reft of the divisions moving up into their ground and fire wheeling off to the right and left, having all fired over once they will be reduced.

The second firing. Let the four inmost divisions of Muskettiers face outward and move cleer of the Pikes, then face to their Leader, then let the eight last divisions of Pikes and Muskettiers face to the Reer, then let them fire to front and reer falling in the reer of themselves, their being intervalls for the Pikes to move forward upon their charge, and being retreated back into their places will produce the following figure.



After the figure is reduced unto his first aspect, command the Muskettiers or divisions upon the wings to face to the right and left inward, and to march untill they stand as in the first figure, then face to their leader; and command the eight first divisions of Pikes and Muskettiers to face outward marching untill you perceive an intervall for the eight reer divisions to move up and make an even range with the front divisions, which being done they will appear as followeth.

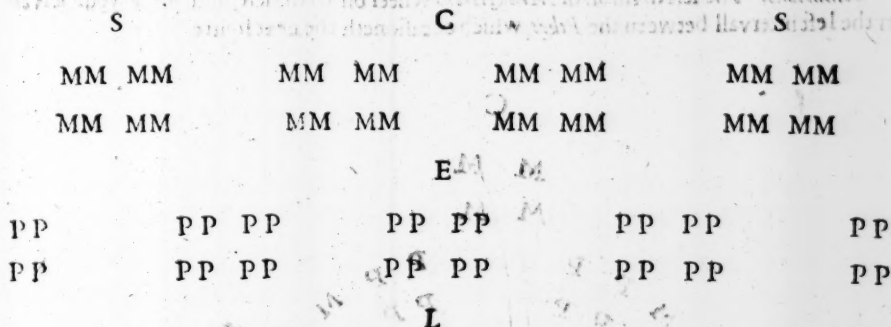


Upon

Upon this figure let the *front* divisions of *Muskettiers* give fire and fall in the *rear* of themselves, then *wheel* off to the right into the room of them in the *rear*, they at the same time *falling* and *wheeling* off into their places again.

Then let the Commander face them all to the right, and they will stand in four *troops*, with *Muskettiers* on the wings *file-wise*, upon which *facing* they may march, the *Officers* being placed according unto discretion; and after they have marched, let them *face* again to their first *front*.

Command. Front divisions of *Muskettiers* *face* to the right and move two paces, to your leader; *Rear* divisions of *Muskettiers* move up and double the *front* divisions to the left *rank-wise*, which produceth the next figure.



Upon the former figure, let all the *Muskettiers* give fire together and fall off to the right and left in the *rear* of themselves, the *Pikes* after charging through the intervalls, and after retreating again. Then command *Muskettiers* that doubled to *face* about, and to move down into the *rear*, untill they be cleer of the *Pikes* and stand; then let the *Muskettiers* both in *front* and *rear* *face* to the left, and march untill they stand streight in their divisions, then *face* to their leader, and they will stand as in the former figure, then proceed.

Command. The four inmost divisions both of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* on the left *face* to the *rear*; inmost divisions both of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* both upon the right and left, march cleer of the standing part, then let them *face* to the left and move three paces, to your leader. The four outmost divisions both of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* upon the right *wheel* to the right; the four outmost divisions upon the left both of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* *wheel* to the left, which will set forth the next figure.

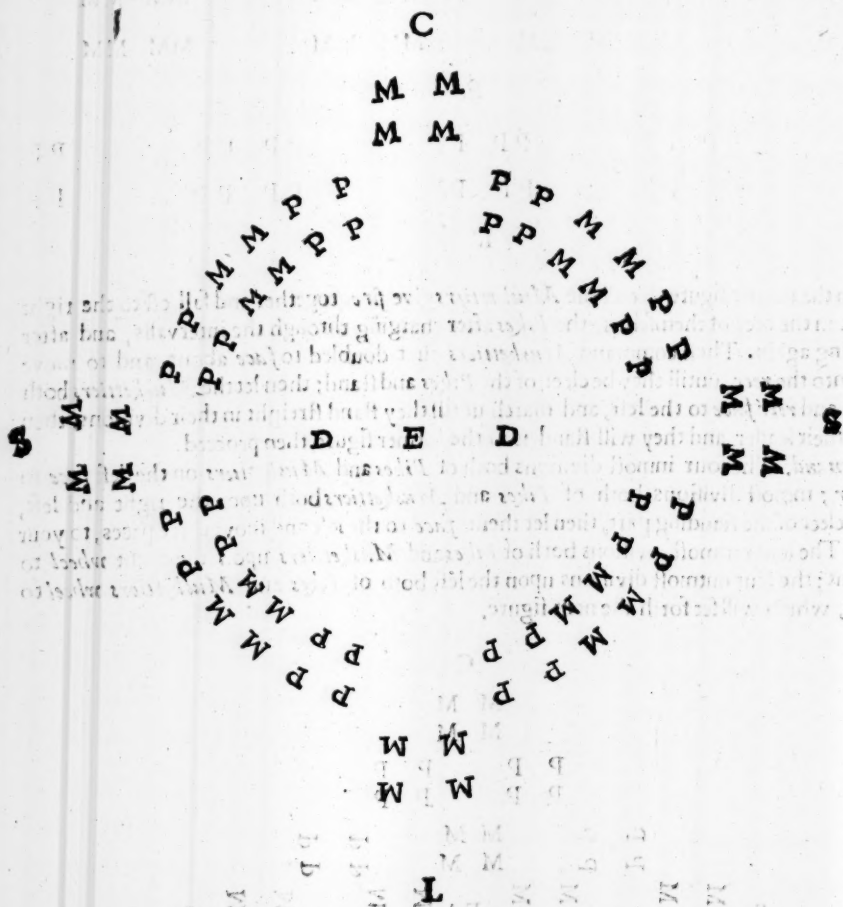


The first firing. Let them face to *front, rear* and both *flanks*; and give *fire* and fall in the *rear* of themselves, after *wheeling* off to the right your divisions on the outside of the *Pikes* into the place of the *rear* divisions, which are to advance forward into the *front* performing the like as the other *front* divisions.

The second firing. Let the *front* divisions of *Muskettiers* move to the right two paces, after command divisions of *Muskettiers* to double to the left *rank-wise*, and let them give *fire* in *front, rear*, and both *flanks* altogether, the *Pikes* may after charge to all these places whilst the *Muskettiers* make ready again, and retreat again into their places.

The third firing. Let them give *fire* again and fall in the *rear* of themselves which being ended you may proceed to another figure.

Command. The left division of *Muskettiers* wheel off to the left, and place your selves in the left intervall between the *Pikes*, which occasioneth the next figure.



Upon this Figure let the *Muskettiers* give *fire* in the *front, rear*, and *flanks*, and *angles* falling in the *rear* of themselves, and the *Pikes* may after charge on. Many other *firings* might be performed upon this figure, but I shall not be tedious to relate any more, but leave them to the discretion of every leaders genius, and shall now shew the way to reduce them.

Reducement.

Reducement. Divisions of *Muskettiers* upon the *Angles* face to the *center* and move three paces, after *wheel* the divisions a little to the right untill they be brought in the *rear* of their own divisions of *Muskettiers*, which being done command the four divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* on the right to *wheel* to the left; and the four divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* upon the left to *wheel* to the right. After command the four divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* upon the left, to *face* to the left and march to such a convenient distance, as that the four last divisions both *Pikes* & *Muskettiers* may move up on the left to range even with the *Front*, they on the *flanks* moving up also untill they stand all even a breast. After command the inmost eight divisions to *face* to the *rear*, and let them all move, untill they be clees one of another, then *face* to their leader; and let the eight front divisions to *face* inward and to move untill they stand straight with the *rear* divisions. After let the *Pikes* in the body in each division open their *ranks* to *front* and *rear* to their open order. And then command division of *Pikes* upon the *flanks* to *face* to the right and left inward, and march in and strengthen the body of *Pikes*; which being done, let the *front* divisions of *Muskettiers* *face* to the *rear*, commanding them all to close their *ranks* forward to order, and *face* to their leader, they are reduced. Which being performed the leader may lodge his *colours* having finished his ninth Exercise.

CHAP. XXXI.

The tenth Exercise consisting of 24 Files being six deep, according to the first drawing up of a private Company.

THere being a greater number appearing upon this days Exercise then in the former, it concerns a Leader more especially to give special charge to the inferiour officers to be carefull in the drawing forth the *files*, that they make no man a *file-leader* *bringer-up*, *half-file-leader*, or *bringer-up* of the *front half-files*, but such able soldier as may be deserving of the same; whose diligence and care upon all motions is principally required, being as it were the hinges of the Leaders severall words of command. Wherefore supposing them to be draw up in battalia, and the *colours* being brought to the head of the Company, the four *Sergeants* ready at hand attending their *Captains* commands, and the body being closed in *ranks* and *files* to their distance of order, and silence craved at the Company, he that shall exercise them may begin after *distances* and *facings* they were, with this or the like *doubling* following.

CHAP. XXXII.

Eight entire severall Doublings with their Reducement.

Command. **F**ront half-files double your *rear* inward intire.

Command. The twelve inmost files double intire the depth of the six out-most files. In-most files *face* about.

Command. Half-files double your front to the right.

Command. Double your files to the right intire advancing.

Command. Half-files double your front inward intire.

Command. The six outmost files upon each flank double intire, advancing the twelve middle files.

Command. Half-files double your front to the right intire.

Command. Right half-ranks double your left flank intire advancing, which being performed they are reduced.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Eight severall Counter-marches with their Reducement.

Command. **F**ile-leaders stand, the rest passe thorough to the right, and place yourselves before your leaders.

Command. The right hand file stand, the rest passe thorough to the right, and place yourselves on the out-side of your right hand men.

R

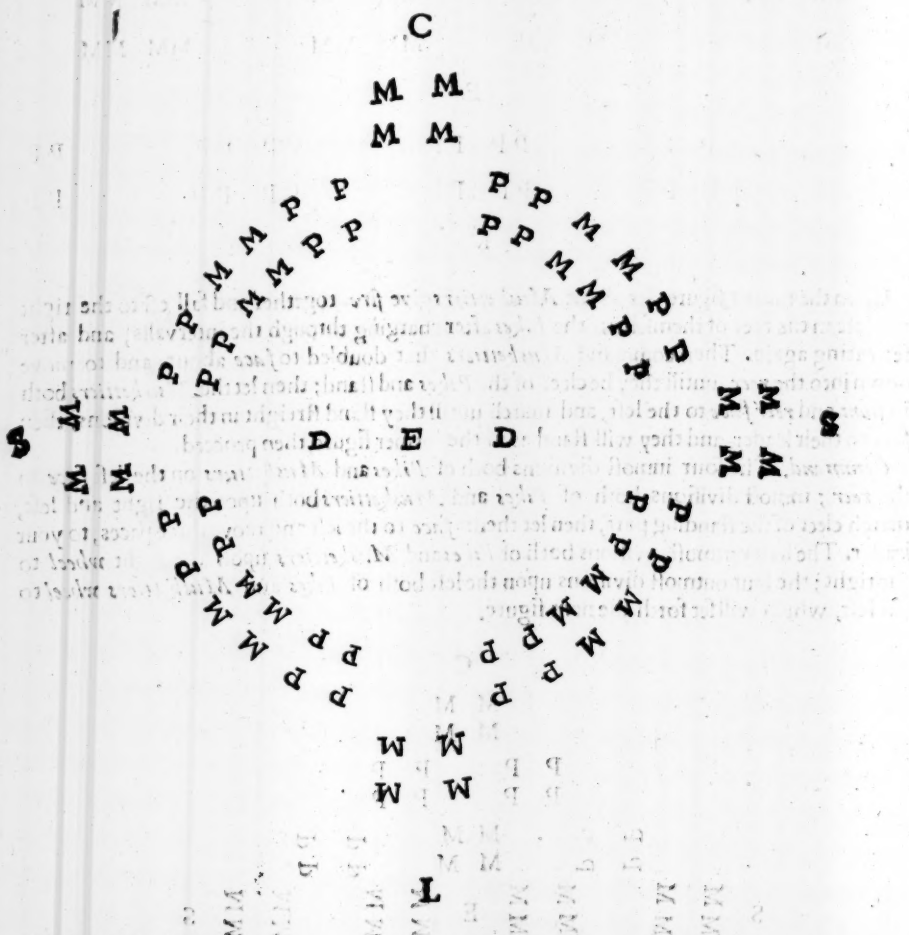
Com-

The first firing. Let them face to *front, rear* and both *flanks*; and give *fire* and fall in the rear of themselves, after *wheeling* off to the right your divisions on the outside of the *Pikes* into the place of the *rear* divisions, which are to advance forward into the *front* performing the like as the other *front* divisions.

The second firing. Let the *front* divisions of *Muskettiers* move to the right two paces, after command divisions of *Muskettiers* to double to the left *rank-wise*, and let them give *fire* in *front, rear*, and both *flanks* altogether, the *Pikes* may after charge to all these places whilst the *Muskettiers* make ready again, and retreat again into their places.

The third firing. Let them give *fire* again and fall in the rear of themselves which being ended you may proceed to another figure.

Command. The left division of *Muskettiers* wheel off to the left, and place your selves in the left intervall between the *Pikes*, which occasioneth the next figure.



Upon this Figure let the *Muskettiers* give *fire* in the *front, rear*, and *flanks*, and *angles* falling in the rear of themselves, and the *Pikes* may after charge on. Many other *firings* might be performed upon this figure, but I shall not be tedious to relate any more, but leave them to the discretion of every leaders genius, and shall now shew the way to reduce them.

Reductions.

Reducement. Divisions of *Muskettiers* upon the *Angles* face to the *center* and move three paces, after *wheel* the divisions a little to the right untill they be brought in the *rear* of their own divisions of *Muskettiers*, which being done command the four divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* upon the right to *wheel* to the left; and the four divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* upon the left to *wheel* to the right. After command the four divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* upon the left, to face to the left and march to such a convenient distance, as that the four last divisions both *Pikes* & *Muskettiers* may move up on the left to range even with the *Front*, they on the *flanks* moving up all untill they stand all even a breast. After command the inmost eight divisions to face to the *rear*, and let them all move untill they be clear one of another, then face to their leader; and let the eight front divisions to face inward and to move untill they stand straight with the *rear* divisions. After let the *Pikes* in the body in each division open their *ranks* to front and rear to their open order. And then command division of *Pikes* upon the *flanks* to face to the right and left inward, and march in and strengthen the body of *Pikes*; which being done, let the front divisions of *Muskettiers* face to the rear, commanding them all to close their *ranks* forward to order, and face to their leader, they are reduced. Which being performed the leader may lodge his *colours* having finished his ninth Exercise.

CHAP. XXXI.

The tenth Exercise consisting of 24 Files being six deep, according to the first drawing up of a private Company.

THere being a greater number appearing upon this days Exercise then in the former, it concerns a Leader more especially to give special charge to the inferior officers to be carefull in the drawing forth the *files*, that they make no man a *file-leader* *bringer-up*, *half-file-leader*, or *bringer-up* of the front *half-files*, but such able soldier as may be deserving of the same; whose diligence and care upon all motions is principally required, being as it were the hinges of the Leaders severall words of command. Wherefore supposing them to be drawn up in battalia, and the *colours* being brought to the head of the Company, the four *Sergeants* ready at hand attending their *Captains* commands, and the body being closed in *ranks* and *files* to their distance of order, and silence craved at the Company, he that shall exercise them may begin after *distances* and *facings* shewen, with this or the like *doubling* following.

CHAP. XXXII.

Eight entire severall Doublings with their Reducement.

Command. Front half-files double your rear inward intire.

Front half-files double your rear inward intire.
Command. The twelve inmost files double intire the depth of the six out-most files. In-most files face about.

Command. Half-files double your front to the right.

Command. Double your files to the right intire advancing.

Command. Half-files double your front inward intire.

Command. The six outmost files upon each flank double intire, advancing the twelve middle files.

Command. Half-files double your front to the right intire.

Command. Right half-ranks double your left flank intire advancing, which being performed they are reduced.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Eight severall Counter-marches with their Reducement.

Command. File-leaders stand, the rest passe thorough to the right, and place your selves before your leaders.

Command. The right hand file stand, the rest passe thorough to the right, and place your selves on the out-side of your right hand men.

Command. Counter-march your front and reer into the midst of ranks.

Direction. Half-files face about and turn off to the left; front half-files turn off to the right, to your leader.

Command. Counter-march your flanks into the midst of files; face outward.

Command. Files to the right hand counter-march maintainning ground.

Command. Ranks to the left hand counter-march losing ground.

Command. Counter-march your front and reer half-files from the midst of ranks maintainning ground.

Direction. Front half-files face about, and turn off to the left, the rest turn off to the right, every man moving up into his leaders ground, to your leader.

Command. Counter-march your right and left half-ranks from the midst of files losing ground.

Direction. Face inward, and turn off every rank on the ground, they stand; face to your leader, and close files into the midst to open order, they are reduced.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Eight entire Doublings by Wheelings with their Reducement.

Command. **W**heel off your reer half-files and double your front to the right intire. Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your left half-ranks, and double your right flank intire to the left. Face outward.

Command. Wheel off your reer half-files and double your front to the left intire. Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your right half-ranks and double your left flank to the left intire. Face outward.

Command. Wheel off your front half-files and double the reer to the right intire. Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your right half-ranks and double the left flank to the right intire. Face outward.

Command. Wheel off your front half-files and double the reer to the left intire. Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your left half-ranks and double your right flank to the right intire. Face outward.

CHAP. XXXV.

Plain Firings and Figures of Barrail.

The first firing. **L**et the two outmost files of *Muskettiers* upon each flank advance ten paces before the front, give fire, and fall in the reer of themselves, after face about, and move down into their places again, then face to their leader. Then let the next two files upon each flank move away in like manner, and fire as the former did, and move down into their places again. After let the other remaining files be led forth by the other two *Serjeants*, and give fire as before, and fall back again into their places.

The second firing. Let two *Serjeants* draw four files upon each flank, and move them away 10 or 20 paces before the front, and give fire, and fall in the reer of themselves, and after face about &c move down into their places. And whilest they are moving down, let the other two *Serjeants* draw forth the remayning four files upon each flank, and fire as the former did, and after return again into their places.

The third firing. Let all the *Muskettiers* move forth cleer of the *Pikes*, and let them open from the midst, untill they stand in four divisions, leaving sufficient intervall for their wheeling into the reer of themselves; first, let them fire in each division falling in the reer of themselves, untill they have all fired over two or three times after this kind.

The fourth firing. Let them close their files before the front of Pikes into the middle to order, then let the two first ranks kneel down the next two stoop, and the last two stand upright, and give fire six ranks altogether, then let the left half-ranks of Muskettiers be wheeled about to the left into the rear of the Pikes, and the right half-ranks move to the left untill they stand straight before the front of Pikes.

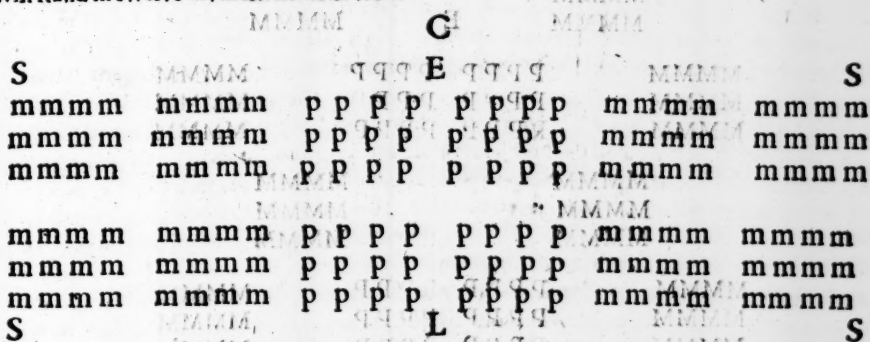
The fifth firing. Let the half-files face about, and let them give fire to front and rear, after this manner by two ranks drawn off ten paces before the front and rear, and fall off to the right and left into the rear of themselves, then facing about let them open outward and give way for the next two ranks to come forward into their places, who are to fire and fall off as the former did, the other two ranks doing the same; this firing may be continued as long as the Leader pleareth.

The sixth firing. Let them give fire on the ground they stand and fall off to the right and left into the rear of themselves.

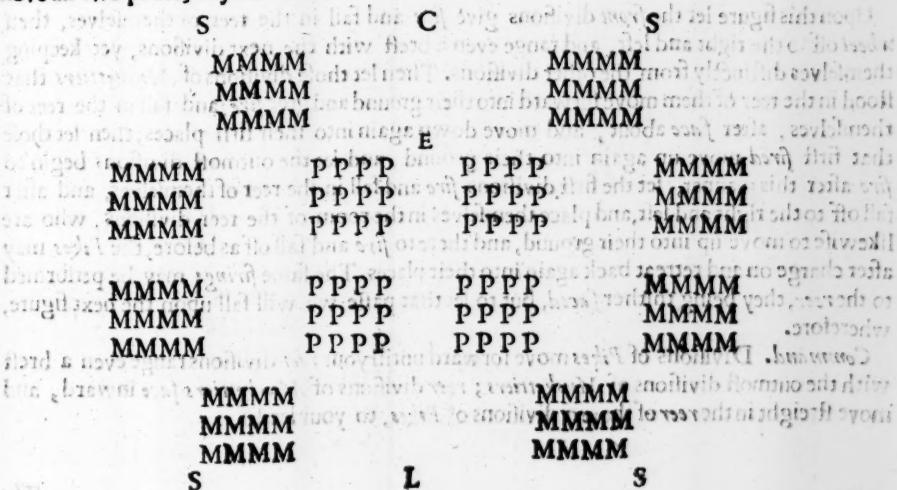
The seventh firing. Let them rank outward into front and rear, and give fire altogether, and rank again as they were.

The eighth firing. Let them give fire on the ground they stand, and flank the Pikes, those in the front flanking the Pikes on the right, they in the rear flanking them on the left; after let the Pikes charge on, and being retreated into their places, let them face all to their leader, and in the next place proceed to figures of batta.

Command. Files open outward to open order, ranks open backward to your open order, then let every four files close outward to order, and ranks close to front and rear to order, they will stand in twelve divisions as followeth.



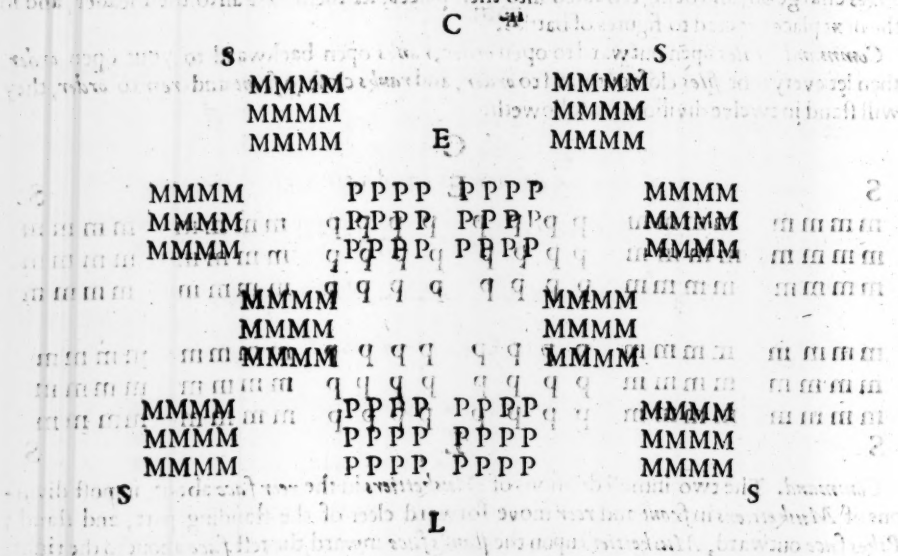
Command. The two inmost divisions of Muskettiers in the rear face about, inmost divisions of Muskettiers in front and rear move forward clear of the standing part, and stand; Pikes face outward, Muskettiers upon the flanks face inward, the rest face about to the right, move all two paces, to your Leader.



The first firing. Let the *front* divisions of *Muskettiers* give *fire*, and fall in the *rear* of themselves, then *wheel* off to the right and left into the room of them in the *rear*, they at the same time moving up into their ground, *firing*, and falling off in like manner as before. Then let the *front* divisions upon the *flank* *fire*, and fall in the *rear* of themselves, and after *wheel* off to the right and left into the ground of those divisions that stand in the *rear* of them, they at the same time relieving them, *firing* and falling off as before, then let the *Pikes* charge on, and after retreat back again into their places.

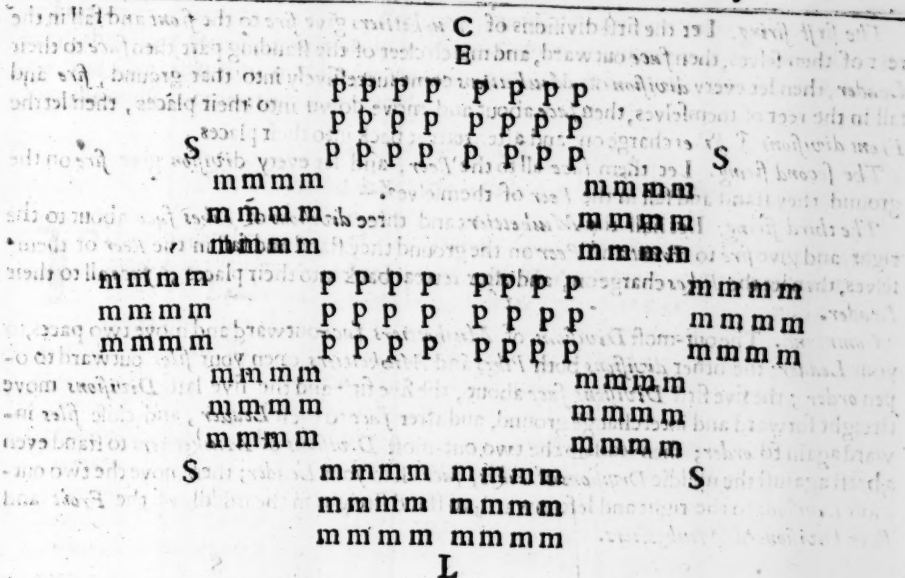
The second firing. Let them *face* to *front* & *rear*, and let the first divisions give *fire*, and fall in the *rear* of themselves, then *wheeling* off to the right and left and interchange ground with the next divisions, who are at the same instant of time to move up into their places and to give *fire* in like manner, and to fall off and return where they were before, then let the *Pikes* charge on to *front* and *rear*, and after retreat into their places, and *face* all to their leader.

Command. The four last divisions next to the *rear* both of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* *face* about, move down, and range even a breast with the *rear*; *rear* divisions of *Muskettiers* that are *faced* to the *front* move forward, and place your selves three foot short of the next divisions that stands before you, to your leader.



Upon this figure let the *front* divisions give *fire* and fall in the *rear* of themselves, then *wheel* off to the right and left, and range even a breast with the next divisions, yet keeping themselves distinctly from the other divisions. Then let those divisions of *Muskettiers* that stood in the *rear* of them move forward into their ground and give *fire*, and fall in the *rear* of themselves, after *face* about, and move down again into their first places; then let those that first fired move up again into their ground, and let the outmost divisions begin to *fire* after this manner, let the first divisions *fire* and fall in the *rear* of themselves, and after fall off to the right and left, and place themselves in the room of the *rear* divisions, who are likewise to move up into their ground, and there to *fire* and fall off as before, the *Pikes* may after charge on and retreat back again into their places. The same *firings* may be performed to the *rear*, they being thither *faced*, but to let that pass we will fall upon the next figure, wherefore.

Command. Divisions of *Pikes* move forward until your *rear* divisions range even a breast with the outmost divisions of *Muskettiers*; *rear* divisions of *Muskettiers* *face* inward, and move straight in the *rear* of the *rear* divisions of *Pikes*, to your leader.

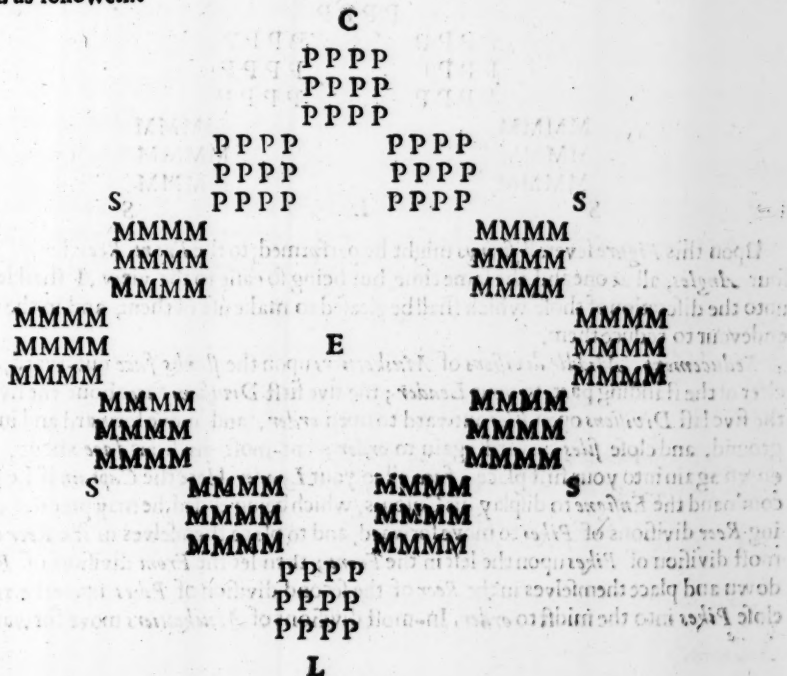


The first firing. Let the two last divisions of *Muskettiers* face about, and the other divisions of *Muskettiers* to face to the right and left outward, and let them give fire on the ground, they stand; and fall in the rear of themselves, the *Pikes* may charge on whilst the *Muskettiers* make ready again.

The second firing. Let them face all to the rear, and let the rear divisions move forth to the right and left outward, and give fire altogether, and fall in the rear of themselves.

The third firing. Let the four first divisions of *Muskettiers*, & the two first divisions of *Pikes* face to the front, and let them give fire to front and rear, and fall in the rear of themselves, then face all to the front, and proceed farther.

Command. The front and rear divisions to move onward two paces; rear division of *Pikes* upon the left face about, rear divisions of *Pikes* move three foot before the front & rear, to your leader; divisions that moved outward, close inward to your first ground, and they will stand as followeth.

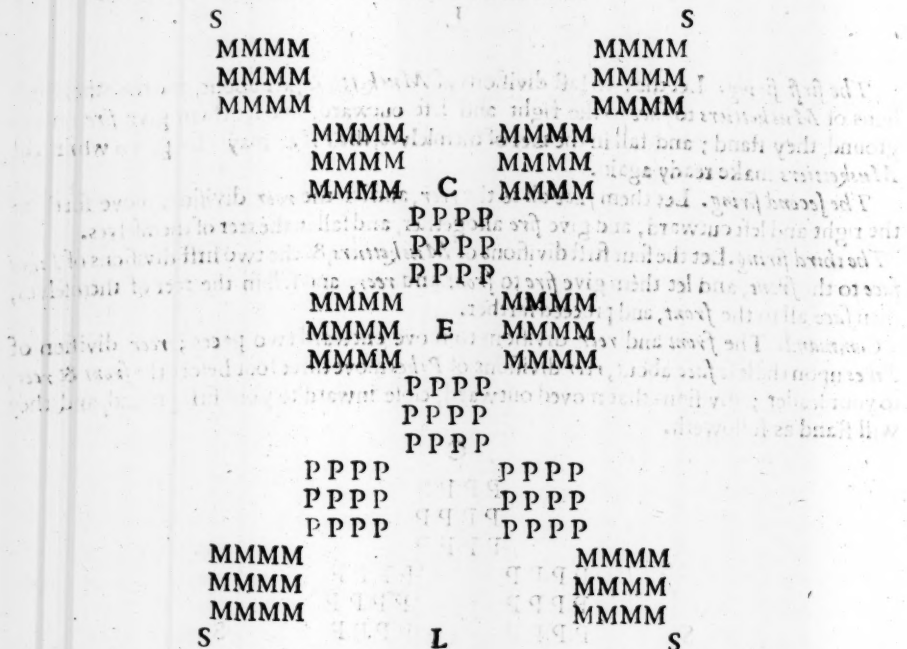


The first firing. Let the first divisions of *Muskettiers* give fire to the front and fall in the rear of themselves, then face outward, and march cleer of the standing part, then face to their Leader, then let every division of *Muskettiers* come successively into that ground, fire and fall in the rear of themselves, then face about and move down into their places, then let the Front divisions of *Pikes* charge on, and after retreat back into their places.

The second firing. Let them face all to the Rear, and let every division give fire on the ground, they stand and fall in the Rear of themselves.

The third firing. Let half the *Muskettiers* and three divisions of *Pikes* face about to the right, and give fire to Front and Rear on the ground they stand and fall in the Rear of themselves, then let the *Pikes* charge on, and after retreat back into their places, face all to their Leader.

Command. The out-most Divisions of *Muskettiers* face outward and move two paces, to your Leader; the other divisions both *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* open your files outward to open order; the five first Divisions face about, the five first and the five last Divisions move streight forward and interchange ground, and after face to their Leader, and close files inward again to order; then lead up the two out-most Divisions of *Muskettiers* to stand even a breast against the middle Divisions of *Pikes*, face all to your Leader; then move the two out-most Divisions to the right and left inward, to stand streight in the middle of the Front and Rear Divisions of *Muskettiers*.



Upon this Figure severall firings might be performed, to the Front, Rear, both Flanks, and four Angles, all at one and the same time, but being so easie to the view, I shall leave them unto the discretion of those which shall be pleased to make use of them, and in the next place endeavour to reduce them.

Reduccement. Middle divisions of *Muskettiers* upon the flanks face out-ward, and move cleer of the standing part, to your Leader; the five first Divisions face about, the five first, and the five last Divisions open files outward to open order, and move forward and interchange ground, and close files inward again to order; out-most divisions face about, and move down again into your first places, face all to your Leader. Here the Captain if he please may command the Ensigne to display his Colours, which being ended, he may proceed, commanding Rear divisions of *Pikes* to move forward, and to place themselves in the Rear of the out-most division of *Pikes* upon the left in the Front; then let the Front division of *Pikes* move down and place themselves in the Rear of the second division of *Pikes* upon the right, then close *Pikes* into the midst to order. In-most divisions of *Muskettiers* move forward to order, and

and march up even with the *From; Reer* divisions of *Muskettiers* face outward, and move untill they stand streight with the out-moſt divisions of *Muskettiers*, then face to their *Leader*, and cloſe ranks forward to order, and march up and make an even *Front*, and cloſe files into the miſt to order; they are reduced.

CHAP. XXXVI.

The eleventh Exercise with 24 Files ſix deep.

The Souldiers being met unto the place appointed and the Officers being vigilant and carefull in their ſeverall places, in drawing forth the files, and joyning them into a Body; the *Leader* without any farther delay may crave their ſilence, and cloſe their ranks and files to order, and after ſome diſtances and facings ſhewn unto them, drawn forth from the former rule, he may proceed to this following doubling, making every man a file-leader, according to ſucceſſion, and after reduce them again.

Command. Ranks to the left double.

Command. Files to the left double.

Command. Half-files double your front to the left.

Command. Files double your depth to the left.

Command. Bringers-up double your front to the right.

Command. Double your files to the left intire advancing.

Command. Bringers-up double your front to the left.

Command. Double your files to the right intire advancing.

Command. Ranks to the right double.

Command. Files to the right double.

Reduement. Files, rank to the left into the front.

Rank, file ſix to the left, they are reduced.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Eight Counter-marches with their Reduement.

Command. **B**ringers-up ſtand to the left, paſs thorough to the right, and place your ſelves behind your Bringers-up. The reſt face about.

Command. File-leaders and Bringers-up ſtand, the reſt paſs thorough to the right, and place your ſelves before your Leaders and Bringers-up, half-files face about.

Command. Ranks to the left hand counter-march maintaining ground; face to the left.

Command. Right and left half-ranks counter-march from the miſt of files maintaining ground; face inward.

Command. File-leaders face about the reſt, paſs thorough to the right and place your ſelves behind your leader; to your leader.

Command. Counter-march your front and reer half-files from the miſt of ranks loſing ground; front half-files face about.

Command. Ranks to the right hand counter-march loſing ground.

Command. Counter-march your right and left half-ranks every man placing himſelf one the outſide of his right and left hand-man, they are reduced.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Eight ſeverall Wheelings with their Reduement.

Command. **W**heel your right and left half-ranks inward to the miſt of files. Face outward.

Command. Wheel the battail off by diviſion from the reer;

Command. Wheel the battail inward to the right flank, from

left. Face to the left.

Command. Wheel front and reer half-files inward to the miſt of ranks. Half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your right and left half-ranks by diviſion from the miſt of files. Face inward.

Command.

Command. Wheel off your front and reer half-files by division from the midst of ranks; front half-files face about.

Command. Wheel off your front by division.

Command. Wheel your battail inward to the left flank from the right; face to the right.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Plain Firings and Figures of Battail.

The first firing. **L**et them give fire to the front by introduction, where first command them to open their files outward to open order, and then let the first rank give fire on the ground they stand; then let the next rank move forward and place themselves before the first rank, and give fire likewise, and stand, and so successively every rank is to move forward and place themselves before the rank that fired, untill all have given fire; this being twice performed redunceth them, and is term'd a firing of gaining ground.

The second firing. Let them fire by files inward to order, and fire on the ground they stand, and fall off to the right and left into the reer of themselves.

The third firing. Let them close their files ranking outward into one intire rank into the front, all at one and the same time, and to file again as they were.

The fourth firing. Let the Muskettiers double ranks to the right and left outward, and give fire three ranks together, the first kneeling, the second stooping, the third standing upright, and after to double files to the right and left inward.

The fifth firing. Let them fire again, and fall off to the right and left, and flank the Pikes, who may after charge on, and after retreat back again into their places.

The sixth firing. Let them face outward and give fire to both flanks on the ground, they stand and fall in the reer of themselves.

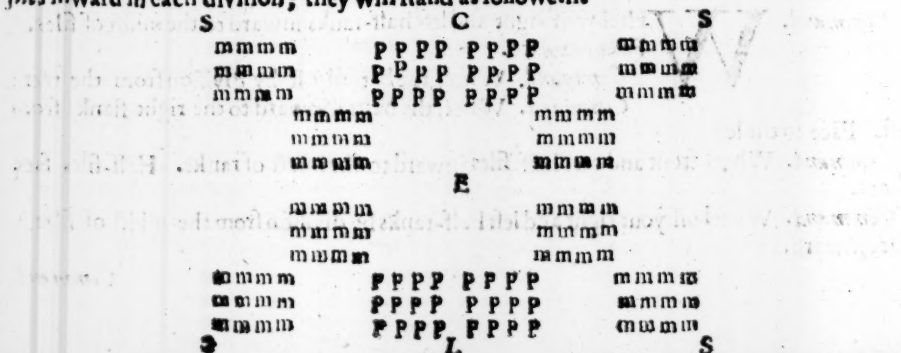
The seventh firing. Let the half-files of Muskettiers face outward, and move cleer of the standing part, then let every division give fire again, and fall in the reer of themselves, and then close their divisions.

The eighth firing. Let them give fire eight ranks together (*viz.*) two kneel down, two stooping, two standing upright, & the last two to be drawn forth & so fire them altogether.

The ninth firing. Let the four first rank upon each flank fire again, and fall off to the to the right and left and flank the Pikes, and, let those Muskettiers face to front and reer, and draw forth the last rank of Muskettiers upon the flanks to the right and left outward, and place them in the midst of those intervalls upon the angles, the Pikes being impaled, then fire them to front, reer, and both flanks and four angles, and fall in the reer of themselves. This firing may be continued as long as a leader shall think fit; then face about those files standing at the angles, and move them into the reer of those divisions of Muskettiers upon the flanks from whence they were first drawn forth; then let them face all to their leader.

The tenth firing. Let the Muskettiers in front & reer face outward, and march cleer of the standing part, then let them face to front & reer, and give fire, & fall in the reer of themselves, then let the reer divisions of Muskettiers face to the front, and the outmost divisions of Muskettiers in the front face to the reer, then let the outmost divisions move, and close ranks forward to order, and let the Pikes charge on, and being retreated back again into their places, face all to the front and proceed to figures of battail according to the next direction.

Command. Half-files of Pikes face about; half-files of the four outmost Files of Muskettiers face to the reer; the four outmost files, and the body of Pikes, move forward cleer of the standing part, to your leader; then let them face outward, and move two paces, then face to front and reer and move the like, face all to your leader, and close ranks forward, and files inward in each division; they will stand as followeth.



The first firing. Let the *reer* divisions *face* about, then let the first divisions give *fire* and fall in the *reer* of themselves, then *wheel* off to the right and left and fall in the room or place of the next divisions, and they at the same time are to move up into their ground giving *fire*, and falling off in like manner.

The second firing. Let them give *fire* on the ground they stand in each division and fall in the *reer* of themselves, then let the *Pikes* charge on whilst the Muskettiers make ready again.

The third firing. Let the *reer* divisions of Muskettiers move up, and range even a breast with the first divisions, then let them *fire* altogether and fall in the *reer* of themselves, then let those that formerly moved up *face* about and march down again into their places, then let the *Pikes* charge on again as before, and being retreated, let them *face* all to both flanks, and give *fire* in form and manner as they did to *front* and *reer*.

The fourth firing. Let the middle divisions of Muskettiers advance forward untill they be clear of the standing part, then let them all *fire* and fall in the *reer* of themselves, and the middle divisions to move back again into their places, then *face* to their leader, and move the inmost division of Muskettiers upon the right in the *reer*, to the left three paces, then proceed.

Command. Inmost divisions of Muskettiers in the *reer* double to the right *file-wise*, and after, that division that doubled to *face* about, and pass thorough the intervalls of *Pikes* and place themselves three foot behind the *reer*, and the other division that was doubled to advance forward through the interval of *Pikes*, and place themselves three foot before the *front*; then *face* to their leader. Let the second divisions of Muskettiers from the *front* stand, and all the rest move forward three paces; then move the second divisions of Muskettiers to the right and left inward, untill they stand streight between the *front* and *reer* divisions of *Pikes*; *front* division of Muskettiers *face* about, and let them and the *reer* division move forward & inward three paces, and after *face* to their leader.

```

          MMMM
          MMMM
          MMMM
      PPPP   C   PPPP
      PPPP   E   PPPP
      PPPP           PPPP
S      MMMM           S
      MMMM           MMMM
      MMMM           MMMM
          MMMM       MMMM
          MMMM       MMMM
          MMMM       MMMM
      MMMM           MMMM
      MMMM           MMMM
      MMMM           MMMM
S      PPPP           PPPP
      PPPP           PPPP
      PPPP           PPPP
          MMMM
          MMMM
          MMMM
          L

```

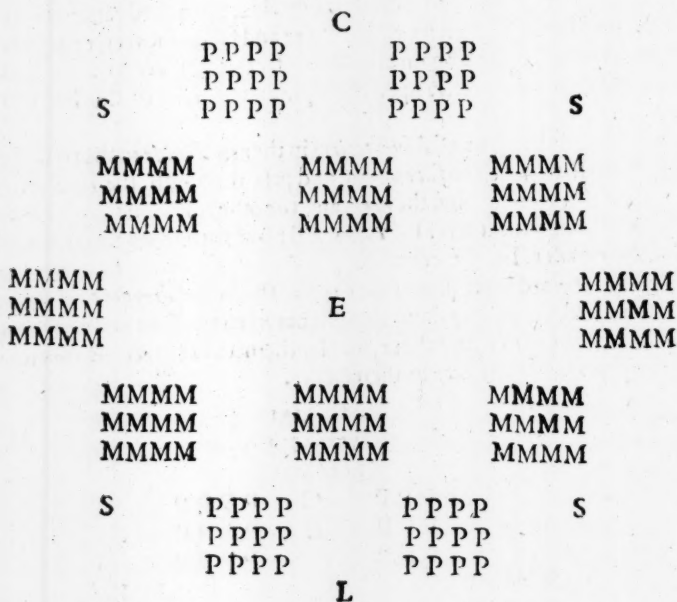
The first firing. Let the *front* division of Muskettiers *fire* and fall in the *reer* of themselves, then *wheel* off to the right by the outmost divisions of Muskettiers and come down into the place or room of them in the *reer*; and they at the same time are to move streight forward up into the *front*, and to give *fire* and fall in the *reer* of themselves, then to *wheel* off to the right as the *front* division did untill they come into their places again. Then let the first outmost divisions give *fire* and fall in the *reer* of themselves, and after *wheel* off to the right and left into the ground of the *reer* divisions, who at the same time are to move forward into their places, and give *fire* and fall off as the former did. The same firings may be perform'd to the *reer*, they being thither faced.

S

The

The second firing. Let them face to both flanks and give fire and fall in the rear of themselves in each division, then let the *Pikes* charge on to both flanks, and being retreated back again into their places, let the rear division of *Muskettiers* move forth cleer of the standing part, then let them double ranks to the right in each division and give fire altogether, after let them double files to the left, and fire again four ranks together, two kneel down, and two stand upright, then let the *Pikes* charge on, and being retreated, you may farther proceed.

Command. Front divisions of *Muskettiers* face about and march into your first places, face all to your leader; middle divisions of *Muskettiers* face outward, and move cleer of the standing part, front division of *Muskettiers* face about, front division, and rear division of *Muskettiers* move forward untill you be cleer of the next divisions of *Pikes* that stands before you, face all to your leader, and they will stand as followeth.



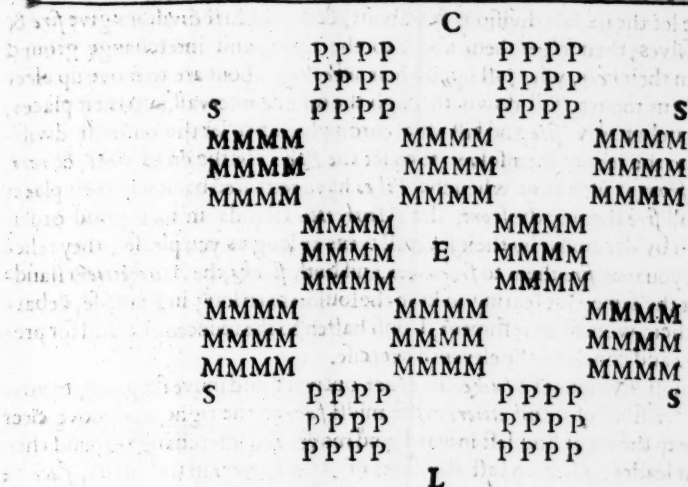
The first firing. Let them face all to the right flank, & let the front division give fire & fall in the rear of themselves, then let them wheel down into the rear, they at the same time moving up into their ground firing, and falling off, and moving down accordingly into their first places; Then let the other six divisions fire after this manner, first the Front divisions and fall in the rear of themselves, then wheel off to the right and left into the rear of their own range, and the next divisions may move forwards into their ground, give fire and fall off in like manner, and so successively let every division move up into their first ground relieving each other, untill they have fired two or three times over in this manner.

The second firing. Let them face to both flanks, and let the inmost divisions of *Muskettiers* move forth to the right and left untill they be cleer of the *Pikes*, who are to port, then the *Muskettiers* in each division may give fire and fall in the rear of themselves, then the *Pikes* may charge on, whilst the *Muskettiers* make ready again, and being retreated into their places again you may proceed to another firing.

The third firing. Let the outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* face to Front and Rear, and the *Pikes* to the four angles, then let them give fire to Front, Rear, and both flanks, on the ground they stand, in each division, and fall in the rear of themselves; then let the *Pikes* charge on to the four angles, and being retreated into their places, move in the outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* into their places again, and then face all to their leader.

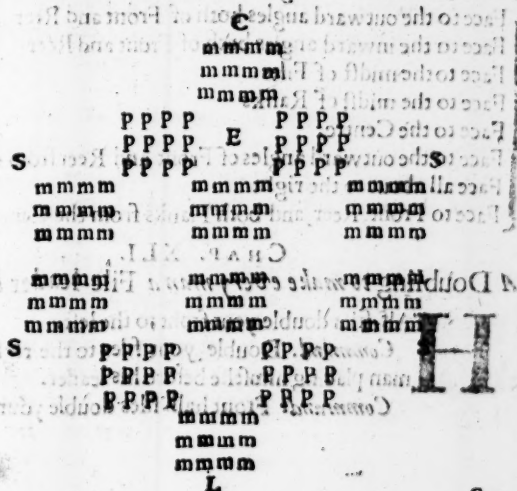
Command. Outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* face to the right and left inward and march untill you range in the midst of Front and Rear divisions of *Pikes*, to your leader.

Upon



Upon the former figure let the *front* divisions of *Muskettiers* upon the *flanks* move even with the *front* of *Pikes*, then let them *fire* and fall in the *rear* of themselves, then *wheel* about to the right and left into the place of the *rear* divisions, who are to move forward into their ground & to *fire* and fall off accordingly. Then let the middle divisions of *Muskettiers* in the *front* move forward likewise untill they range even a breast with the *front*, give *fire*, and fall in the *rear* of themselves, and then move clear forth, and *wheel* off to the right about into ground of the *rear* division of *Muskettiers* standing behind them, and they at the same time to move up into the *front*, and to give *fire* in like manner, and to fall off accordingly, untill they have attained their first places. Then let the three last divisions of *Muskettiers* and the *rear* divisions of *Pikes* face about, and let the two middle divisions of *Muskettiers* *face* outward, and move clear of the standing part, then let the *Muskettiers* in *front* and *rear* move forward clear of the *Pikes*, and let them *fire* to *front*, *rear*, and both *flanks*, and fall in the *rear* of themselves, then the *Pikes* may charge on to *front* and *rear*, and being retreated back into their places, the *Muskettiers* in *front* and *rear* may *face* about and move down again into their first ground, and the *Muskettiers* upon the *flanks* are to *face* inward, and to move into their places where formerly they stood, then *face* them all to their leader, and proceed.

Command. *Rear* division of *Muskettiers* in the midst *face* about, middle divisions of *Muskettiers* move forward three foot before the *front* and *rear*; division of *Muskettiers* in the midst upon the right, *face* to the left *angle*, and move untill you stand even and straight in the next range of *Muskettiers*, the next division of *Muskettiers* in the midst upon the left *face* about, and then likewise *face* to the left *angle* and move down into the next range of *Muskettiers* to them and to stand straight in the *rear*, of the *rear* division, *face* all to your leader, produceth the next.



Upon the former figure let the six last divisions *face* about, & let the first divisions *give fire* & fall in the rear of themselves, then *wheel* them about to the right, and interchange ground with them that stand in their rear, who just upon their *wheeling* about are to move up cleer of the *Pikes* to make them room to fall down through the middle intervall, into their places, who also are immediately to *give fire* and fall off accordingly. Then let the outmost divisions *give fire*, and fall in the rear of themselves, then let the *Pikes* charge on to front, & rear, *face* them after to the front at such time when the *Pikes* have retreated back into their places again. Now if you will *fire* them to the front, the *Muskettiers* stands in such good order, that you may *fire* them by divisions, by their severall turns as long as you please, they relieving each other. After you may *fire* them to front, rear, and both flanks, the *Muskettiers* standing in fit condition for the same. But fearing to keep the souldiers too long in Exercise, debarring them thereby of there wonted refreshment, I will hasten to the reducement, and for present, lodge the *colours* and conclude the eleventh exercise.

Reduement. Outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* *face* outward and move six paces, to your leader; the two first divisions of *Muskettiers* in the midst *face* to the right, and move cleer of the *Pikes*, then *face* to the right and left inward, and move, and interchange ground, then stand, and *face* to your leader; The two last divisions of *Muskettiers* in the midst, *face* to the left, and move cleer of the *Pikes*, *face* all to your leader; then let every division close forward to order, and move up even a breft with the *Pikes*, they are reduced.

CHAP. XL.

The twelfth Exercise consisting of 24 Files, six deep.

THe place of Exercise appointed for the souldiers to meet, they upon a just summons make full appearance, being indeed the very life of any Exercise, affording much comfort to him that shall lead them. And therefore seeing their readinesse, & forwardnesse (as in duty they are concern'd) the leader cannot chuse but forthwith to give order unto his officers, for the compleating up of the body; who knowing his commands, goe nimble and cheerfully to work in drawing forth the *files*, and joyning them together, after fetching the *colours*, and bringing them to the head of the company. So that nothing being wanting, the leader craves their silence, and attention, commanding them to their distance of order, both in *rank*, and *file*, and after some few distances shew unto them, he may proceed in the next place to such *facings* as followeth.

	Face to the right, and left outward, and move four paces	
	Face to Front and Rear, and move three paces	
	Face to the outward angles in the Front	
	Face to the inward angles in the Front	
	Face to the inward angles of the right Flank	
	Face to the inward angles in the left Flank	
	Face to the outward angles in the Rear	
Command.	Face to the inward angles in the Rear	As you were to your Leader.
	Face to the outward angles both of Front and Rear	
	Face to the inward angles both of Front and Rear	
	Face to the midst of Files	
	Face to the midst of Ranks	
	Face to the Centre.	
	Face to the outward angles of Front and Rear from the centre	
	Face all about to the right	
	Face to Front, Rear, and both Flanks from the Centre.	

CHAP. XLI.

A Doubling to make every man a File-leader by dignity.

Command. **H**alf-files double your front to the left.
Command. Double your files to the right intire advancing every man placing himselfe before his leader.
Command. Front half-files double your rear to the left.

Com-

Command. Double your files to the left intire advancing every man placing himselfe before his leader.

Command. Bringers-up double your front to the right.

Command. Files double your depth to the right, every man falling behind his bringer-up.

Command. Half-files double your front to the right.

Command. Double your files to the left intire advancing.

Command. Ranks to the right double.

Command. Files to the right double.

Command. Bringers-up double your front to the left.

Command. Files double your depth to the left every man falling behind his bringer-up.

Reducement. Ranks to the left double.

Files to the left double.

CHAP. XLII.

Several Wheelings with their Reducements.

Command. **W**heel off your reer half-files and double your front by division.

Command. Right and left half-ranks double the depth of your battail by wheeling inward to the reer. Face to the reer.

Command. Double the length of your battail by wheeling inward to front and reer. Half-files face about.

Command. Front and reer half-files double the depth of your battail by wheeling outward to the right flank. Half-files face about, and wheel to the left, front half-files wheel to the right.

Command. Front and reer half-files double the length of your battail by wheeling inward to the left flank; face all to the left.

Command. Front and reer half-files double the depth of both flanks by wheeling to the right and left outward. Half-files face about.

Command. Front and reer half-files double the length of the battail by wheeling inward to the midst of ranks. Face inward.

Command. Front and reer half-files double the depth of your left flank by wheeling to the right and left outward. Half-files face about.

Command. Front and Reer half-files double the length of your battail by wheeling inward to the right flank. Face to the right, and as they then stand, right half-ranks wheel to the left, and left half-ranks wheel to the right untill the right flank meet together, they are reduced.

CHAP. XLIII.

Plain Firings and Figures of Battail.

The first firing.

Let two ranks advance forward ten paces and give fire, and fall in the reer of themselves, and after wheel off to the right and left outward, and move down in the reer of their own divisions of Muskettiers, and then the next two ranks are to move forward, and to give fire, as the former did, and so consequently all the rest untill all have fired, and reduced back again into their places.

The second firing. Let them fire even with the front and fall in the reer of themselves, and let the Pikes charge on whilst the Muskettiers make ready again.

The third firing. Let single files be drawn off and rank inward into the front, and fire, &c file again, face about, and move down into their places, then let two files be drawn off cleer, and let the inmost files rank inward, the outmost files rank outward, and give fire, and file again as they were, and fall into their places.

The fourth firing. Let the four out-most files upon each flank be drawn off untill they be cleer of the front, then let them close before the front of Pikes, face then the in-most files of Muskettiers to both the flanks, and let them give fire to the front, and both flanks on the ground they stand and fall in the reer of themselves.

The fifth firing. Let them give fire altogether six ranks at once in the front, and four in the flanks, observing the former rules of firing so many ranks together, as you may find in the place of the description of firings.

The

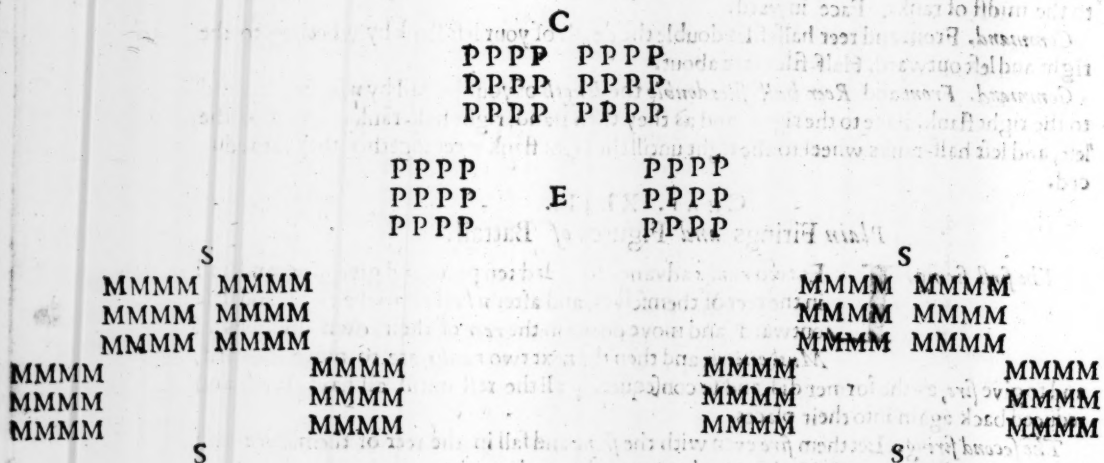
The first firing. Let those *Muskettiers* upon the flanks face to the rear and move clear of the *Pikes*, then close to the right and left inward to order; then let the *half-files* of *Pikes* face about, and let the *Muskettiers* give fire to front and rear, and fall in the rear of themselves.

The seventh firing. Let the *Pikes* move forth to the right and left outward untill they be clear of the *Muskettiers*, then let the *Muskettiers* give fire in an oblique manner, thus, let every two *files* open to the right and left outward to something more than open order, then close the two first *ranks* of the four in most *files* to the front to order, and let the other two *ranks* close likewise almost to that distance, but the two last *ranks* only are to face to their front, & after in the same kind close the four *ranks* inward to the rear of the four outmost in manner and forme there, as the other *files* were to the front, and so let them give fire in each division, an oblique way, two *ranks* kneel down, two kneeling, & two stand upright.

The eighth firing. After the former firing, close the four inmost files to the right and left outward to order, and to joyn with the outmost files, when their aspects being to the outward angles of front and rear, let the *Pikesport*, and *Muskettiers* give fire to the four angles and fall in the rear of themselves, then let the *Pikes* charge on whilst the *Muskettiers* make ready again, and after retreat back into their places again.

The ninth firing. Let them give fire again the first rank in each division and wheel about to the right, and move down into their first places where before they were drawn forth, and every rank consequently fall in the rear of them, then let the Pikes close into the midst to order, and face all to their leader.

Command. Musketeers *face* to the right and left outward, and move twelve paces, then *face* to the *reer* and move likewise twelve paces, after *face* to their leader. *Front half-files* of each division move forward three paces; right and left *half-ranks* of each division move outward two paces; *Front* divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* stand, *reer* divisions of both arms move to the right and left outward untill you be clear of the *front* divisions, then close *ranks* and *files* in each division to order, and *face* to their leader, they will stand in the first figure.

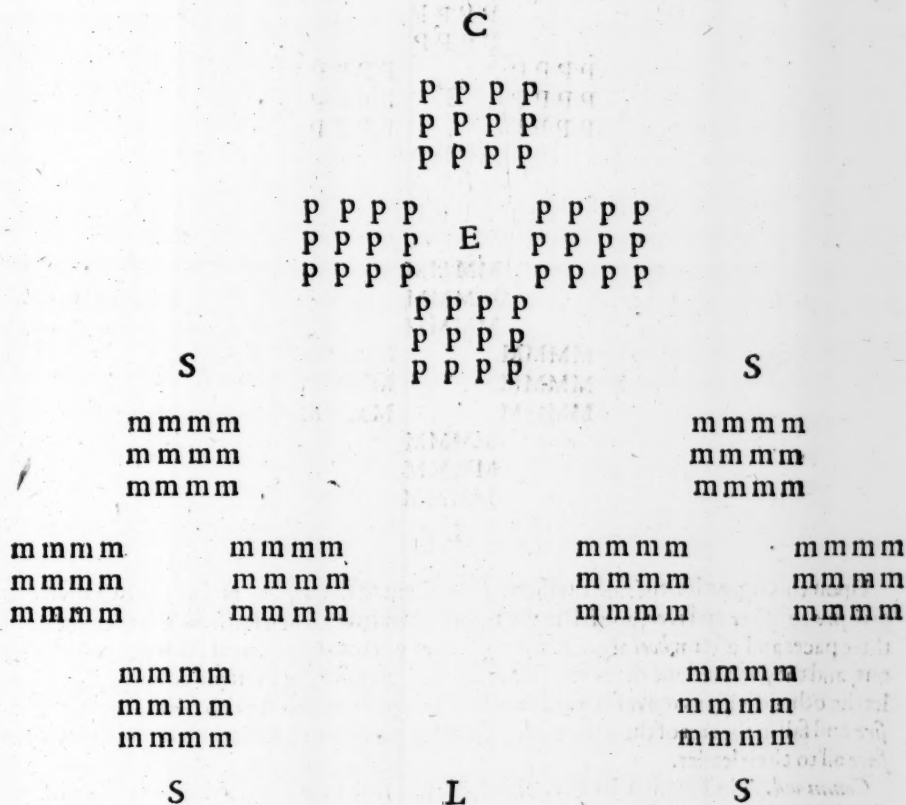


The first firing. Let the *front* divisions of *Muskettiers* move forward and range even a breast with the *front* of *Pikes*, give fire and fall in the rear of themselves, then face about and move down into their own ground again, and face to their leader, then let the outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* move in like manner as the former did, and give fire, and fall off in like manner, and down again into their places. Let the *Muskettiers* in the next place face outward and move three paces, and after face to the *front*, then let the *rear* divisions of *Muskettiers* advance forward untill they range even a breast with the *front* divisions, then let them give fire altogether in each division, & fall in the rear of themselves, and after let the outmost divisions that moved up, move down again into their places, then let the *Pikes* charge on, and after retreat again into their places.

The

The second firing. Let the out-moſt *diviſions* of *Muskettiers* in the *Front* move forward, before the *Front* of *Pikes*, and the in-moſt *diviſions* of *Muskettiers* in the *Front*, let them likewise move at the ſame time before the *Reer* *diviſions* of *Pikes*, then let the *Pikes* port, and *Muskettiers* in each *diviſion* give fire on the ground they ſtand, and after fall in the reer of themſelves, and thoſe *Muskettiers* that formerly moved forth from their places, let the *Serjeants* wheel them off to the right and left into their firſt ground, and face to their Leader.

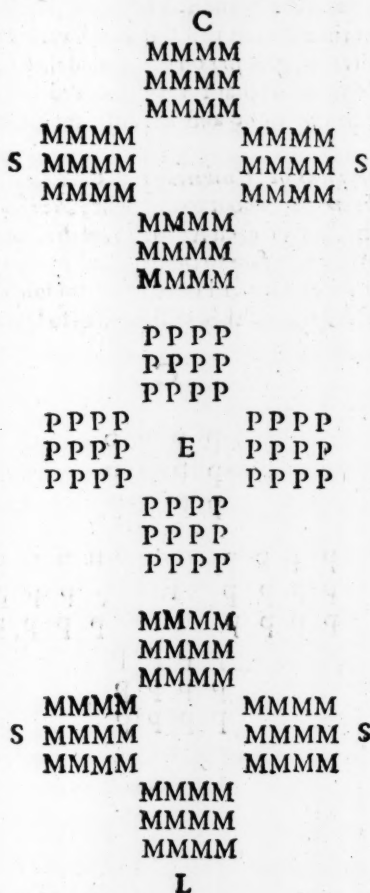
Command. In-moſt *diviſions* of *Muskettiers* in the *Front* face to the *Reer*, *diviſions* of *Pikes* upon the left in the *Front* face about to the right; *diviſions* that are thus faced, move down three foot clear of the *Reer* of each Arms. *Front* *diviſions* both of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers*, and thoſe that laſt moved, face to the left, and move two paces, face all to your Leader, and *Muskettiers* move forward untill your middle *diviſions* range even a breſt with the *Reer* *diviſions* of *Pikes*, and they will ſtand as followeth.



Upon this Figure let the *Front* *diviſions* give fire, and fall in the *Reer* of themſelves, and then wheel off to the right and left, into the ground of the *Reer* *diviſions*, and they at the ſame time are to move up into their places, and to give fire, and fall off accordingly into their firſt places. Then let the middle *diviſions* move forward untill they range even with the *Front* of *Pikes*, and let them give fire, and fall firſt in the *Reer* of themſelves, and after face about, and move down into their places again, and face to their Leader, then let the *Pikes* charge on, and after retreat back again into their places. They may fire to the *Reer* after the ſame manner as they did to the *Front*, they being thither faced, and after they have all fired, face again to their Leader.

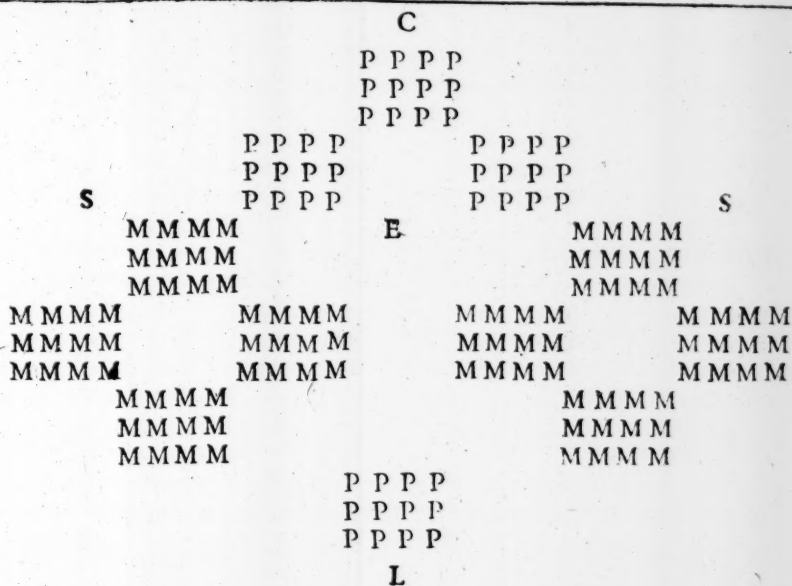
Command. Let the four *diviſions* of *Muskettiers* upon the right to move away, and let the *diviſions* of *Pikes* fall in the *Reer* of them, and the four *diviſions* of *Muskettiers* on the left to fall in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*, then ſtanding ſtreight in their *diviſions* both rank-*wiſe* and file-*wiſe*, and they will ſtand as followeth.

Upon



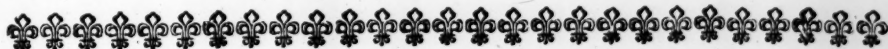
Upon this figure let the *reer* divisions *face* about to the right, and let the first divisions give fire to *front* and *reer*, and fall in the *reer* of themselves, then let them advance forward three paces and after *wheel* about to the right, and interchange ground with the *reer* divisions, and they at the same time are to move up and give fire, and fall off accordingly. Then let the other divisions move forward untill they range even a breast with *front* and *reer*, give fire and fall in the *reer* of themselves, after *face* about and move down into their places, then *face* all to their leader.

Command. The four first divisions stand, the rest *face* to the left and march clear of the standing part; then let the *Pikes* *face* to the *front*, and march up even a breast with the *Muskettiers*; *Reer* divisions of *Muskettiers* *face* to the *front*, and move up likewise; *Muskettiers* *face* inward, move all three or four paces untill they stand in form of the second figure, *face* all to your leader; *Reer* division of *Pikes* *face* about and move down three foot clear of the *reer*, to your leader, which produceth the last figure.



Upon this figure let the reer division of *Pikes* face about, and *Muskettiers* face outward, then let *Pikes* port, and let the first divisions of *Muskettiers* give fire and fall in the reer of themselves, then face about and interchange ground with the reer divisions, and face again to front and reer, and let those that came up into their room give fire in like manner and fall off & down again into their places. Then let the next divisions give fire, & fall in the reer of themselves, and let the *Pikes* charge on, and being retreated back again into their places, command the two middle divisions of *Muskettiers* to face to the reer and move down and range even with the reer, then let every division of *Muskettiers* give fire on the ground they stand to both flanks and reer, and fall in the reer of themselves, the *Pikes* may charge on again, and those *Muskettiers* that moved down into the reer may face about and move back again into their places and face all to the front.

Reduement. Reer division of *Pikes* advance forward to the left into the front, the two inmost divisions of *Muskettiers* face about and march clear of the reer, then face to the right and left outward and place themselves behind the reer divisions of *Muskettiers*; outmost divisions of *Muskettiers* face inward, and move streight in the reer of the front divisions, and let the *Pikes* fall in the reer of their front divisions, and face all to their Leader; *Half-files* of *Muskettiers* double your front to the right and left inward, and after move forward and even the the front, they are reduced.



The end of the second Book.



T

THE

L



THE COMPLEAT BODY OF THE ART MILITARY:

The Third Book.

CHAP. I.

Concerning the drawing up of Regiments, with their severall numbers, forms, manner and ways.



He that shall be desirous to be truly knowing in this point of *Military Discipline*, in the drawing up of *Regiments*, whether they be of lesser or greater Bodies, as in some 6, other 7, 8, 10, or 12 Companies, they must be drawn up into *Battalia*, either in one two or three *Squadrons* (or grand divisions) of *Pikes* flanked with *Muskettiers*, having alwayes in the *Rear* a sufficient number of *Muskettiers* for the guard of the *Bagage*, *Cannon*, or to be *Convoys* for to convey *Ammunition* and *Victuall* to the rest of their fellows: Who are to be drawn forth (by the discretion of the *Major*) from each particular Company according to their severall

strengths, as in greater Companies more files then in those which be lesser, ordering them timely reliefe, whereby the severall duties amongst the Souldiers throughout the *Regiment* by an equall way may take their turns. Now for as much as the true stating of the dignities of every particular Officer, in the opinions of many, differ very much, and our former *Military* Authors have been very sparing in their pains, in setting down their due places of honour; I shall, for the satisfaction of those which desire to be rightly inform'd, collect out of the many former practised abroad, and at home, one good way to perfect it.

But here, by the way, I must crave pardon from the courteous Reader by reason I foresee certain objections like rubs or blocks, lying in my way to digresse a little from my intended purpose, to give answers unto each of them, which are first, that I seem to lighten the pains of former Authors.

Secondly, that it will be a means to occasion much idlenesse in the Souldiers.

Thirdly, that it is too great a knowledge to be laid open to their view.

To the Reader.

To the first I answer, that the reason, as I conceive, why they have been so sparing of their pains in this kind, was not for want of abilities, or knowledge amongst any of them, whose works for the most part I highly honour and esteem, but rather believe that they left it forth for the curious search of such who are called unto *Field-officers* places, knowing well that before they are capable of that preferment they must be good proficientes in this part of *Military Exercise*.

2 Although many that knew but a little, may be puffed up with high conceits of themselves, conceiving what the Authour hath done, 'twere easie for any man to performe the same; yet to them of riper judgements, the more variety in this kind is presented to their view, the more painfull they are in the curious practise thereof, thinking every moment lost which is not spent in the searching after, and informing of their judgments in this point of *Military Discipline*.

If it had not been for the worthie paines and labours of our ancestors published to the view of the world, this our age might have been ignorant both in this, and all other Sciences, for from them we borrowed our first light, God putting it in their hearts to publish their severall gifts to after generatious, which though at this day much refined, yet for our first grounds and principles we are beholding unto them. Therefore, give me leave, according as God hath inabld me, not to conceale or keep back any thing which may concern the good and welfare of my country; for, I conceive, there is none worthie to receive benefit from those that have gone before him, if he conceales that good to such as shall come after him. And if I happen to lie under the hard censure of some for my paines, it makes no matter, so the major part receive benefit thereby, for as I gathered somewhat of others: so my desire is that others may doe the like by me.

The opinions of Souldiers in the drawing up of *Regiments* are very various both in their formes and figures, according to the custome of their Countries, commands of their Generals or Officers in cheife, which neverthelesse may prove very good and serviceable when need shall require, I shall therefore for the satisfaction of the ingenuous souldier set before them the best collections drawn from them all, such as may be most usefull for to fight against the enemy, according to the situation of the place, the number of men, and aptnesse of ground to contain them, which in the next place comes to be handled.

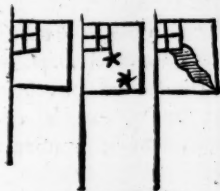
CHAP. II.

The manner of drawing up a Regiment consisting of six Companies, containing in it a Collonel, a Lieutenant Collonel, a Major, and three Captains, every one having 108 men in a Company, and the three Field Officers 144. which makes compleatly up 756 men, whereof two thirds are Muskettiers, and one third of Pikes, the Files being six deep.

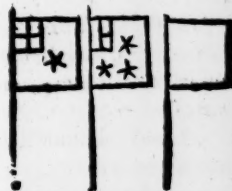
THe generall place of *Rendezvous* being appointed out unto the *Major*, it is his care to take a timely view thereof, that there be ground and room sufficient enough for the drawing them up. And having received orders from his *Collonel*, *Major General*, or other superiour officers for the *Regiments* marching thither, he may appoint the Companies to march either of these two ways, either by succession, or dignity. If by succession, first the *Collonels* Company moves away, next, the *Lieutenant Collonels* in the rear of him, then the *Majors* and so consequently all the rest from the eldest to the youngest who brings up the rear of all. If by dignity, first the *Collonels* Company, and in the rear of him the youngest *Captain*, and after him the eldest, then the *Majors*, then the second *Captain*, the *Lieutenant Collonel* bringing up the rear of all. But it concerns the *Major* before their marching to give notice unto the *Lieutenant Collonel* and the eldest *Captain* to countermarch their ranks of their two perticuler Companies as soone as they come into the place of the generall *rendezvous* before he shall draw them up, to preserve the honour of the right hand *File-leaders* and *Bringers-up* of both armes. He is likewise to be there before hand attending their marching in, and after the *Collonels* company have made *Alt* to draw up each perticuler company on the left of him, all in one even range, commanding them to close ranks forward to order, and files into the midst unto the same distance. He is likewise to informe himself of the *Captaines*, *Lieutenants* and *Serjeants* how many files of *Pikes*, and *Muskettiers* they have in each perticuler company, and accordingly he is to enter it down in his paper book, and to make use thereof as followeth.

He.

He is to require one single file apiece of *Muskettiers* to be drawn off from the three smaller Companies, and two files apiece from the greater, which makes 9 files, and contains 54 men, which are to be led away by an able *Serjeant* into the *Reer*, for to be a guard to the *Bagage* or other occasions. From thence he may proceed commanding all the *Muskettiers* to stand, and the *Pikes* to advance their Arms, and move forward 10 or 12 paces, and then to stand and close their files outward to order, three of their colours moving with their *Pikes* to the right hand, the other three moving away to the left. After he may command *Muskettiers* to close their files outward to order, and they will stand in four divisions, two of *Pikes*, and in the *reer* of them two of *Muskettiers*, as underneath is set forth, the *Captaines* being all upon the head of the *Pikes* with their *Ensignes*, and the *Lieutenants* in the *reer*, the *Serjeants* attending upon the flanks of each division.



This Squadron contains
22 files of Pikes.



This Squadron contains
20 files of Pikes.

This Squadron contains 39 files
of Muskettiers.

This Squadron contains 36 files
of Muskettiers.

This Squadron
contains 4 files
of Muskettiers.

This Squadron
contains 5 files
of Muskettiers.

This being done command each division of *Muskettiers* and *Pikes* to face outward, and to move to such convenient distance that being faced to the front there may be room sufficient upon the subdividing of each division of *Muskettiers* for their moving up, and flanking each body of *Pikes*. After which the *Major* may assigne unto every *Captain* and *Lieutenant* his due place of honour, as they stand all abreast; And that they may also naturally fall into their proper places upon the march, which shall be set forth in the next figure standing in two grand divisions the one in the *reer* of the other, which may happen sometimes for want of ground, but provided they have ground enough they ought to stand in one even range as in folio 5. The *Major* after they are thus drawn up in one even range will find three files of *Muskettiers* more in the second grand division, and two of *Pikes*, then is in the first, therefore he must take from thence one file of each Company, and adde them to those nine files in the *reer*, which makes them twelve; and then he will have ballanced the divisions equall, taking off one file of *Pikes*, and placing it amongst the eldest *Captains Pikes*.

Lieutenant Collonel.
The second Captains place.

The Collonel.
The eldest Captains place.



The Lieuten. Col.
Lieutenants place

This Squadron
contains 18 files
of Muskettiers.

This Squadron
contains 21 files
of Pikes.

The 2 Captains
Lieuten. place.

This Squadron
contains 6 files
of Muskettiers.

The Majors
Lieut. place.

This Squadron
contains 18 files
of Muskettiers.

The 3 Captains
place.

This Squadron
contains 18 files
of Muskettiers.

The 3 Captains
Lieuten. place.



This Squadron
contains 21 files
of Pikes.

The eldest Captains
Lieutenants place.

This Squadron
contains 6 files
of Muskettiers.

The Capt.
Lieuten. place.

This Squadron
contains 18
of Muskettiers.

The Capt.
Lieutenants bring

CHAP. III.

The Reasons follow for the placing of the Captains, their Colours, and their Lieutenants, after the manner before set down.

WHat hath formerly been declared concerning a *Rank* or *File*, six, a *breſt*, or six deep, may be ſatisfactory in ſome kind unto this point, which takes his rule from hence. For all private Companies, ſmaller Bodies, or ſingle *Files*, muſt, or ought to be as neer as they can conformable to greater Bodies, as to *Regiments*, and conſequently, they to *Brigades*. Therefore take notice that this rule ought ever to be obſerved in the drawing up of *Regiments*, that the right *flank* as neer as may be ought to be ſutable with the left, both in ſtrength, number, and dignity; and likewiſe to be ſo when they are drawn forth upon a long March, the *Front* equall with the *Reer*. Now, ſuppoſe, theſe two grand *Diviſions* ſtood even a *breſt*, we will begin to examine the firſt worth, which is the *Collonels*, and the fourth worth, which is the eldeſt *Captains*, and placed upon the right and left of the firſt grand *Diviſion*, with the ſecond and third worth, who are the *Lieutenant Collonel*, and *Major*, drawn up upon the right and left of the ſecond grand *Diviſion*; and you ſhall finde they are every way equivalent in number, worth, and dignity, with that of the firſt.

In the next place, there are no more to place, but the fifth and ſixth worth, who are the ſecond and third *Captains*: and therefore ſince it is the firſt place of honour among the *Captains* in a *Regiment*, to lead the firſt Body or Stand of *Pikes*, it muſt then conſequently follow, that the ſecond place of honour muſt be to lead the ſecond grand *Diviſion* of *Pikes*; and therefore the fifth worth is brought into, and placed between the ſecond and third, that he may aptly ſtand there to lead the ſecond Body of *Pikes*; wherein the *Lieutenant Collonel*, the *Major*, and his own *Colours* are placed: ſo that there remains no more but the ſixth worth, or youngeſt *Captain* to place, who is drawn up between the *Collonel*, and eldeſt *Captain*. Now if we ſhall further proceed to ballance it more cleerly, conſider them by dividing them by two's, in their places, as firſt, we will begin with the *Collonel*, the firſt worth, who hath joyned to him the youngeſt *Captain*, which is the ſixth worth, and they two make the number (7) then compare the *Lieutenant-Collonel*, who is the ſecond worth, unto the ſecond *Captain* joyn'd with him, which is the fifth worth, and they make a like the ſame number; after compare the *Major*, and eldeſt *Captain*, who are drawn up into the miſt of the *Regiment*, whoſe places carry the third and fourth worth, and their number is ſutable with the reſt. And thus much may be ſpoken in general, now I ſhall come more perticularly to give further ſatisfaction both for them, and for all the reſt; and therefore I will give reaſons for the placing of the Officers of the firſt grand *Diviſion*, and clearing that, the ſecond will quickly be laid open to the view.

CHAP. IV.

More perticular reaſons for the placing of the Captains, and Lieutenants, of the firſt grand Diviſion.

IN this grand *Diviſion*, there is the *Collonel*, the eldeſt *Captain*, and the youngeſt drawn up into the miſt, and they having each of them *Lieutenants*, take notice therefore of theſe reaſons for their placing thus. That always upon ſuch ſmall Bodies as theſe, the firſt honour is ever placed upon the right, and the ſecond upon the left, and that which remains, muſt of neceſſity be drawn up into the miſt; they ſtanding all a *breſt*. Theſe three Companies being ordered into a right and left *Flank*, and one Stand of *Pikes*, or *Van-guard*, *Reer-ward*, or *Main-battail*, as they may be term'd, the reaſons follow for the thus ſtanding of the Officers, whether marching all even a *breſt*, or upon a ſtand; it is the *Collonels* proper place to be on the head or miſt of his grand *Diviſion*; which is his chiefeſt place of ſecurity, and where he ought to fight; for ſtanding there, the other may more conveniently repair unto him for their orders, as occaſion ſhall require. Now the *Collonel* being a Field-Officer, is not abſolutely tied to any one place to fight, as the reſt are, many occaſions calling him from thence; the eldeſt *Captain* therefore is appointed to take charge of the Body of *Pikes*, whether it be upon a March to lead them, or upon a Stand to fight them, he ought never to forſake them, but upon ſpeciall command from his *Collonel*, or other Field-Officers. Now the reaſon why the firſt Body of *Pikes* is the moſt honourableſt place to lead, is, as I conceive, becauſe the *Collonels Colours* are there flying,

flying, and besides being the more ancienter Armes, far more honour it is to lead them; for most commonly the gallantest men of the *Infantry* desire rather to *trail Pikes*, then to carry *Muskets*; Moreover, it hath been a constant practise in most places, that the eldest *Captain* should have that place to lead on foot, although many times his *Collonel* being on horse-back, may be a little before him. Having spoken of these two, it remains to speak something of the youngest *Captain*, who is appointed either upon the Marching all a brest, or upon a Stand, to take charge of the *Reer-ward*, or left *Flank* of the first grand *Division* to fight them, but upon the long March, it is more honourable for him to fall down in the *Reer*, and to bring up his own *Lieutenant* coming up into his place; for it is greater honour (though many times not believed) to bring up a grand *Division*, then to lead a *Sub-division*. In the next place, it may be supposed, that the *Captain Lieutenants* place, is too honourable to lead the *Van-guard*, to which I answer, that the *Collonel* himselfe is con- signed thither; for upon the long-March he draws off the *Van-guard*, and leads them himselfe, being attended on horse-back by the *Martall* and *Quarter-master* of his own *Regiment*. Now leading away the *Muskettiers* of his own perticuler Company, the *Captain Lieutenant* being subservient unto him, marcheth a foot upon the head of the first *Division* of *Muskettiers*, and takes charge of them, as assisting to his *Collonel*, and fighting them, if he receives no command to the contrary, when they are all drawn up again even a brest, it concerning him especially to be there resident in the absence of his *Collonel*, for the better regulating of them. The eldest *Captains Lieutenant* is always placed in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*, either upon a *Stand*, or upon a *March*, it being very honourable unto him to bring up a grand *Division* of *Pikes*. The third *Captains Lieutenant* is ordered to bring up the left *Flank*, except it be upon the long-March, and then he is to exchange places with his own *Captain*. There is yet one place vacant, which is to bring up the right *Flank*, and the *Captain Lieutenants Bringer-up*, many times through courtesie is called a *Lieutenant*, therefore a *Major* may be so courteous as to assigne him that place; and here I shall conclude with the reasons of the places of the Officers of the first grand *Division*:

CHAP. V.

Reasons for the placing of the Officers of the second grand Division:

Although the *Collonel* is Commander in chiefe, yet his discretion is such, as to leave the ordering of places to his *Major*; and as he takes charge of the first grand *Division*, so he leaves the second to his *Lieutenant Collonel*, who stands upon the head or midst of the same, being drawn up all even a brest; and many times leads the second grand *Division*, as the *Collonel* doth the first, as was the practise in the *Regiments* upon their March, under the command of the *Earl of Essex*, *Generall* of the *Parliaments Forces*. To such as shall approve of this way (which may be very good) they shall not need to counter-match the *Ranks* of the *Lieutenant Collonel*, as is before expressed; before the drawing up of the *Lieutenants Collonels Company*, but draw them up on the right of that *Division*, and to counter-match the *Ranks* of the *Majors*, and draw his Company up on the left. But I shall leave that to the liberty of those that shall best fancie this kinde, and proceed to that which is of more use.

The second grand *Division* standing in an even range with the first, it will be convenient for the *Lieutenant Collonel* to be upon the head thereof. As concerning the *Major*, he being an Officer at will, hath no certain place assign'd unto him, by reason of his moving, as occasion shall require, to both *Divisions*, whereby he may give orders unto them all, minding the good order of the *Regiment*, throughout every part thereof. But if he will take his place, to march in the properest place for him, if they march all a brest, will be in the *Front*, between the *Collonel* and *Lieutenant Collonel*, but in the long-march in the midst of both grand *Divisions*, whereby he may have freer access unto them both, whose vigilant eye in the well ordering of the *Regiment* is chiefly concern'd, observing all the passages, whether there be need of sub-dividing their *Divisions*; and if at any time they shall be divided, when there is ground sufficient enough, he must give order again for the drawing them all up even a brest, it being far more gracefull to the *Regiments* marching. In the next place, the second *Captain* may claime it as his due, to lead the second Body
of

of *Pikes*, as the eldest *Captain* challengeth the first, and the reason given for his place, may suffice for both : The eldest *Lieutenant* in this grand *Division*, which is the *Lieutenants Collonels Lieutenant*, is assigned unto that place, where he is set down for to be an assistant there-unto his *Lieutenant Collonell*, for the well regulating of his men which march in the *Reer*, as the *Captain Lieutenant* is to the *Collonels* men, who march in the *Front*, and his *Lieutenant Collonell* bringing up the whole *Regiment* is the second place of honour. Some may conceive the *Majors Lieutenant* hath too great a place of honour in leading the *Van* of the second grand *Division*, to which I answer, if the *Lieutenant Collonell* marcheth not there himselfe, but shall bring up the *Regiment*, certainly it must be cleer, that it is the *Majors* due, for to march there himselfe at times convenient, and being so, there is good reason in his absence his *Lieutenant* should lead his men, or in his presence to be there as a helper unto him, for the well regulating of his men, as the other *Lieutenants* are to the other long *Field-officers* who every one of them according to their severall places may have severall occasions to call them off, their *Lieutenants* therefore ought to be at hand, and to march with them in their places, whereby they may receive orders from them, and know how to act in their absence concerning their own perticuler Souldiers. The second *Captains Lieutenant* is ordered to bring up the second Body of *Pikes*, which being a grand *Division*, it falls to him as due there, as the eldest *Captains Lieutenant* doth in the first, it being the greatest place of honour that can be given him in the *Reer* next to the *Lieutenant Collonell*. Having spoken thus much concerning every *Field-officer*, the *Captains*, and their *Lieutenants*, where their places are to march, with the reasons for the same, it will be expected to supply two places which are vacant in the *Reer* of the second grand *Division* ; to which I answer upon the long-march the *Lieutenant Collonell* himselfe moves down there, and brings up the *Reer* of the whole *Regiment* ; and therefore it is left vacant for him, but then you will say there wants an Officer to bring up the *Reer* of that *Division*, wherein the *Majors Lieutenant* is placed ; to which I answer, that there is none remaining to do it, except it be the *Majors Lieutenant* himselfe. For if the *Major* shall lead the second grand *Division*, then his *Lieutenant* may move down to bring up that perticuler *Division* for to supply the same, but in regard the *Major* (as hath been shewn before) hath many occasions to call him off, it concerns his *Lieutenant* to keep his place which was first assigned unto him, to avoid the trouble of moving up again in his *Majors* absence. Some are of opinion it would be convenient to place the *Lieutenant Collonels* eldest *Serjeant* there, but in my judgement it is very unhandsome to see any *Halbertier*, either to lead or bring up any *Division* marching in a *regimentall* way, and rather then I should do it, I would let it go unsupplied ; but if he shall be there placed to bring up, his best way of marching, is either with a *Pallizado*, or *Half-pike*, and not with his *Halberd*.

CHAP. VI.

The ordering of a Regiment to the Long-March, with the placing of the Officers, and the leading of Carriages.

THe *Major* giving to every *Captain* his proper place to march in, and what *Divisions* they are to lead, and what to bring up, in written notes under his hand, commands the *Drum-Major* to beat a March, and so consequently all the rest to take it from him. The Souldiers being warned thereby, begin to shoulder their Arms, and prepare to move ; the *Collonell* on horse-back being attended on by his *Martiall*, and *Quarter-master* draws off the first *Division* of *Muskettiers*, his *Captain Lieutenant* being some six foot behinde him, which *Division* is brought up by the *Captain Lieutenants Bringer-up*. The eldest *Captain* follows next, leading the first *Division* of *Pikes*, and brought up by his own *Lieutenant*. The next *Division* of *Muskettiers* is lead by the third *Captains Lieutenant*, and the *Reer* of the first grand *Division* is brought up by the third *Captain*. There ought to be full 18 foot of ground betwixt each *Division*, he that brings up a *Division*, ought to be six foot cleer behinde the same, and he that leads, to be six foot before, so that there will be six foot proportion of ground betwixt them both, for the better distinguishing of their *Divisions*, the *Leaders*, and *Bringers-up* thereof. And where there is not room sufficient for the marching so many a brest, as they are

NOW

now ordered, they must subdivide, being carefull to preserve their *Divisions*, marching in greater depths, at their due *distance* of open order in *rank*, and order in *file*. For the *Serjeants*, must not presume upon any sub-dividing to make any more *Divisions*, whereby they may be Leaders thereof, but it must be their care upon sub-dividing to bring them down in the *Reer* of them that march before, and keep them intire in all their respective *Divisions*. And it must be their observation to attend upon the *Flanks*, even a breft with those Leaders of *Files*, that were taken off, that when there is ground and roome enough, they may more readier know where to finde them, and to lead them up again as they were at first. Care likewise must be had upon any sub-dividing of the *Akes*, that there be none of the *Colours* divided who are in a *regiment* all way to march all three together, according to their first placing. These rules and observations concern both grand *Divisions*, now the first being led away, as is before exprest, there ought to be sufficient ground betwixt each grand *Division*; for the leading of the Carriages, and in the first place, there is to be considered that to most *Regiments*, there is allowed two Waggon, for the Bagage, & Ammunition, & two Field-peeces, or great Cannon, besides other Carriages, which more concern the victuall for the Souldiers, as occasion shall require; now concerning the ordering, and securest placing of all these upon the March, will be in the midst of the *Regiment*, and to have those which are ordered for their good, to be *Fire-locks*, or to have *Snap-hances*, for the avoiding of the danger which might happen by the Cole of the *Match*; and being placed where any attempt of the Enemy shall fall on either to *Front*, *Reer*, or either *Flank*, the Cannon may be easily drawn forth to fire upon them, and all the wood of the *Carriages*, with their Guard, to be ordered in the *Reer*, where ever the assault should happen, for their better security and safety. The *Major* in the next place, if he please, may lead the second grand *Division*; to which purpose he draws off (with the assistance of his own *Lieutenant*) the first *Division* of *Muskettiers*, his *Lieutenant* being six foot behind him, and so much before the *Muskettiers*. The next that followes, is the second Body of *Pikes*, which is led by the second *Captain*, and brought up by his own *Lieutenant*. The last *Division* of *Muskettiers* is led by the *Lieutenant Collonels Lieutenant*; and the *Reer* of the whole *Regiment* is brought up by the *Lieutenant Collonel*. The *Serjeants* are to march upon the *Flanks*, attending their own men, that when they are to be reduced into Companies, they may know more readier where to finde them, and according to order they may draw them off to compleat up their *Captains* Companies. As for the *Drums*, the care thereof belongs to the *Drum-Major* to place, and to ease them timely by reliefs, to beat as many, or as few as he shall think fit, to which purpose, he orders them to fall in betwixt the second and third *Rank* of *Muskettiers*, and *Pikes*, of each *Division*; but when they are all even a breft, the *Drums* are placed according as you see them marked: the figure for the long-March in the next place followeth.

The Collonel.

The Caprain Lieutenant.

This Squadron contains 18 files of Muskettiers.

The Caprain Lieutenants bringer-up.

The eldest Captain.



This Squadron contains 21 files of Pikes.

The eldest Captains Lieutenant.

The third Captains Lieutenant.

This Squadron contains 18 files of Muskettiers.

Third Captain.

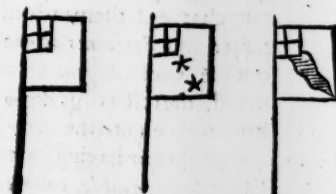
[The Carriages.]

The Major.

The Majors Lieutenant.

This Squadron contains 18 files of Muskettiers.

The second Captain.



This Squadron contains 21 files of Pikes.

The second Captains Lieutenant.

The Lieutenant Collonels Lieutenant.

This Squadron contains 18 files of Muskettiers.

The Lieutenant Collonel.

CHAP. VII.

The first Exercise of a Regiment in the plainest and easiest way.

THe Major finding the commodiousness of the ground, may draw them up all even a breast again, and proceed to exercise them in a regimentall way, conferring before-hand with the *Captains, Lieutenants, Ensignes, and Serjeants*, what he intends to do. Whether he will exercise every *Manniple*, or *Division* (as is usuall in a private Company) in all their plain *Motions and Firings*, which may be very proper, and easily done, or otherwise proceed to more variety in every *Division*, to give them commands as one man, either to *face, double*, or otherwise according to discretion. And having fully instructed them of all his intents and purposes, he must begin to consider of the best manner for the managing of the same. To which end, he shall do well to command the first grand *Division* to advance forward 12 paces clear of the second, and after *face* them to the left, and march them untill they stand streight before the second grand *Division*, then *face* them to the *Front*, and they will stand in manner as in *Folio 141*. After he must consider how many *Files of Muskettiers* there are, and whether he can *branch* them forth into equall *Divisions* suitable to the *Pikes*, but finding them to stand but 18 of a side, he shall do well for time of his Exercise, to draw off eight *Files of Muskettiers*, from the *Reer*, which were formerly appointed to guard the *Ammunition, or Baggage*, and adde two to every *Division of Muskettiers*, which will make them 20 *Files* of each side of the *Pikes*, and then he may thus proceed.

Command. Files to their *op order*, and *ranks* to close forward to *order* in each grand *Division*; every five *files of Muskettiers* of each *Division* close to the right to *order*; the first six *files of Pikes* in each grand *Division* close to the right to *order*, the rest of the *Pikes* close every five *files* to the right, to the same *distance*; then there will be in each grand *Division*, four *Divisions of Pikes* and eight of *Muskettiers*, in manner as set forth to your view in *Folio 147*.

Before the Major shall begin his Exercise, he shall do well to appoint unto each *Division*, the *Captains*, and their *Ensignes*, (whose *Colours* in the mean time may be stuck in the ground, or given to any of the *File-leaders of Pikes*, to hold during the time of Exercise) to take charge of them, to order them according unto every word of command, and the *Lieutenant and Serjeants* to each *Division of Muskettiers*, that after silence is craved throughout the whole *Regiment*, the Major by stretching out his voice in every word of command, therest as his *echo* are immediately to give it out a long the whole *Front*, and from thence unto the *Reer*, and every Officer to lead his men accordingly.

The Major having stated all things according to the former directions, may if he please, either *face, double, counter-march, or wheel*, to *Front, Reer*, or both *Flanks* in every perticuler *Division*. And may after fire them by way of *Divisions* drawn off ten or twenty paces before the *Front*, firing them 7 or 8 times over, relieving them by other supplies, marching up into their ground. And may after *face* the *Reer divisions* about, and fire them to *Front* and *Reer* on the same ground they stand, there being sufficient intervals for their *wheeling* off in the *Reer* of themselves. And after severall *firings* in this kinde, the *Pikes* may charge on; but before they begin their *firings*, the *Pikes* must close into the midst to *order*, and *Muskettiers* to close their *Pikes* to *open order*, and every *Division* to preserve so much ground betwixt each other for their conveniencie, that after firing they may *wheel* off.

Now if you will fire, or *skirmish* the one with the other, then draw off the *Reer*, or second grand *Division*, and move them away, and draw them up in opposition 100 foot distance of ground betwixt each *Front*, and let the *Lieutenant Colonels Company* be drawn up upon the right, and the *Majors* upon the left of that grand *Division*, that it may carry some answerableness with that of the *Colonels*. The *Muskettiers* having six foot interval of ground betwixt each other, before they begin to fire, they may continue their *firings* of this nature, as long as they please, and the *Pikes* may after charge on to such convenient distance, as that they come not within three *Pikes* length one of another, for avoiding doing hurt the one to the other, the *Muskettiers* still continuing their firing, and falling in the

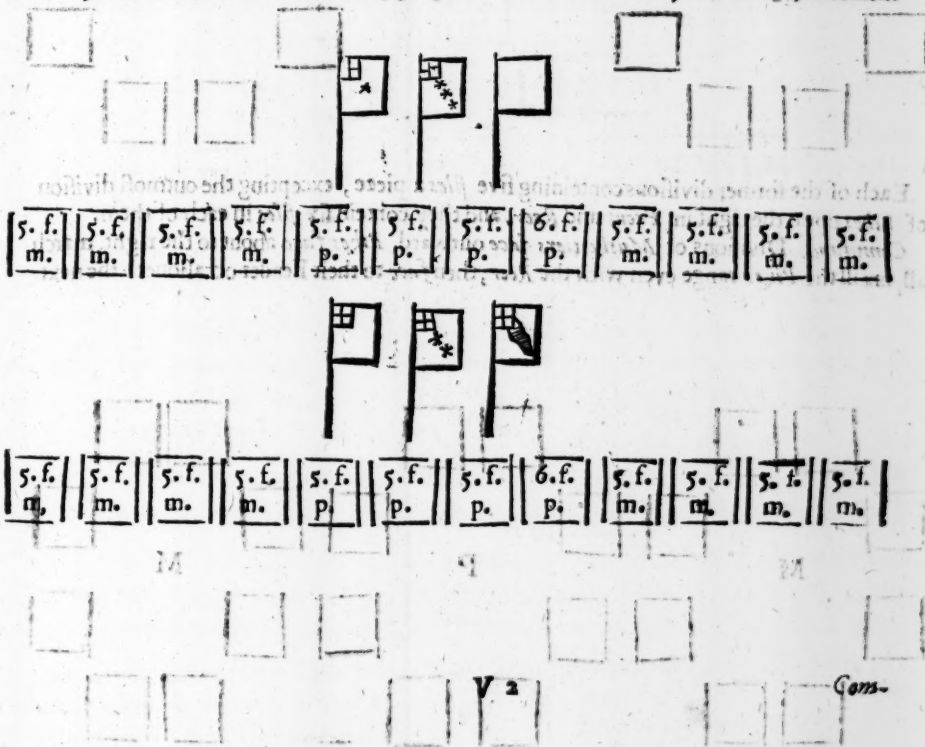
Reer

Retire of themselves; and when they come within distance, not to present above knee height, for the above-named reasons. Now the Soldiers being almost tired, and all their powder spent, and retreating from each other, that Side which falls out to be the strongest, (as being the *Colonels* grand Division or party) may be a party, to invite the weaker to come into mercy, offering them all fair *Quarter*, provided they timely and presently receive it, and that they will cheerfully and willingly go along with them, and never any more revolt, but ever be on their side, to fight with them upon all just occasions, as shall be required. After which, the *Lieutenant Colonel* yeilding, they may wheel about, and march into the same ground from whence they were first drawn forth, and be reduced to the same order and condition as they were before they began to skirmish. And thus much shall suffice concerning the ordinary plain way of the exercising of *Regiments*: but those that shall desire a little more curiosity, they may observe such Exercises as in the next place shall be set forth unto them.

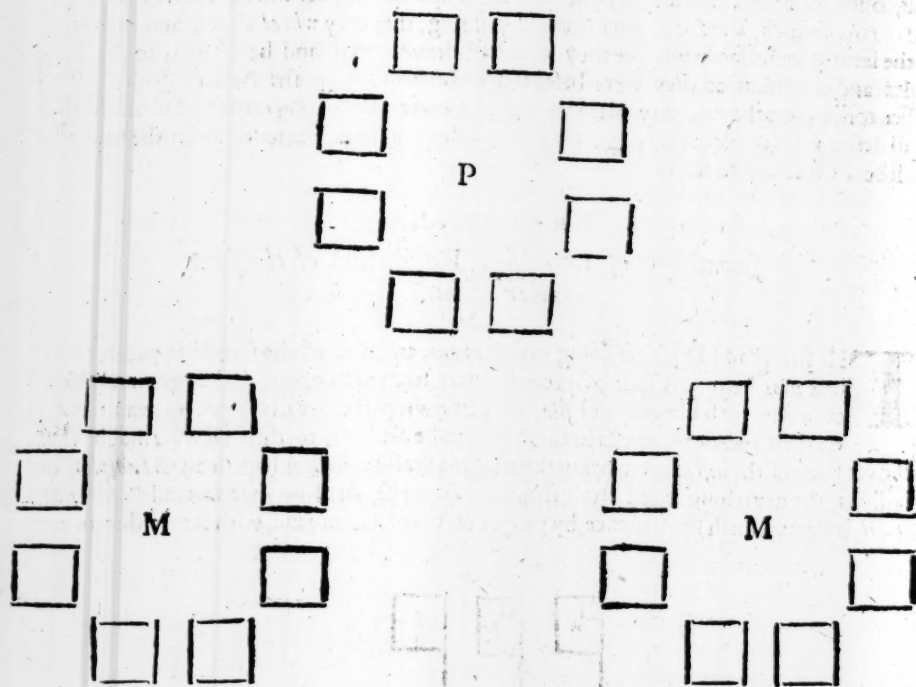
CHAP. VIII.

A second way of exercising Regiments of the same number of men.

THe first grand Division being in the *Front*, and cleer of the second 12 paces, every five files being 18 foot of ground a part from each other, and at their distance of order, both in rank and file, in their own perticuler divisions, as was mention'd in Folio 146. comes in this place to be set forth to their view. And having pass over some of the distances to bring them to this Station, in standing in 24 *Maniples*, or Divisions, the next thing that I shall shew for Exercise, shall be four severall *Figures of Battail*, branched forth from thence, by proper words of Command, with their reduction.

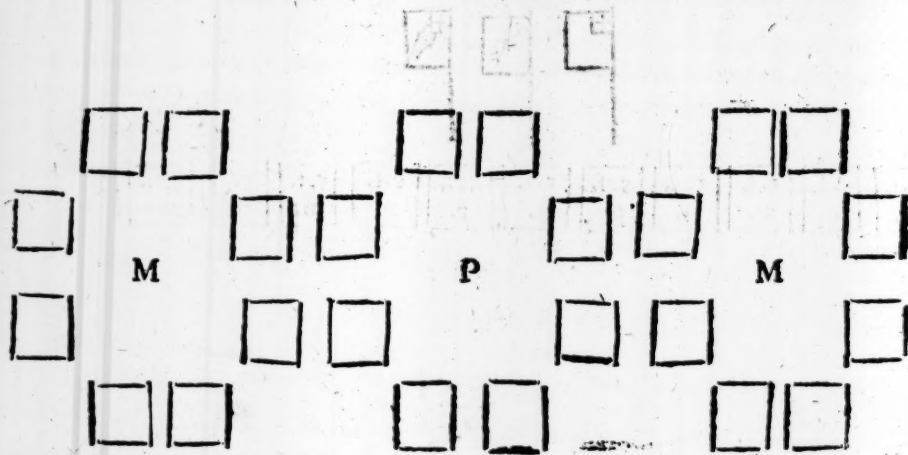


Command. Divisions of *Muskettiers* face outward, *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* march all 12 paces, and stand; to your Leader. The two middle divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* in the *Reer* next the *Flanks* face about: outmost divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* in *Front* and *Reer* face outward: march all four paces, and stand; Again, let the outmost divisions of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* face about to the right, then march all three paces then stand, and face to their leader, it produceth the first figure.

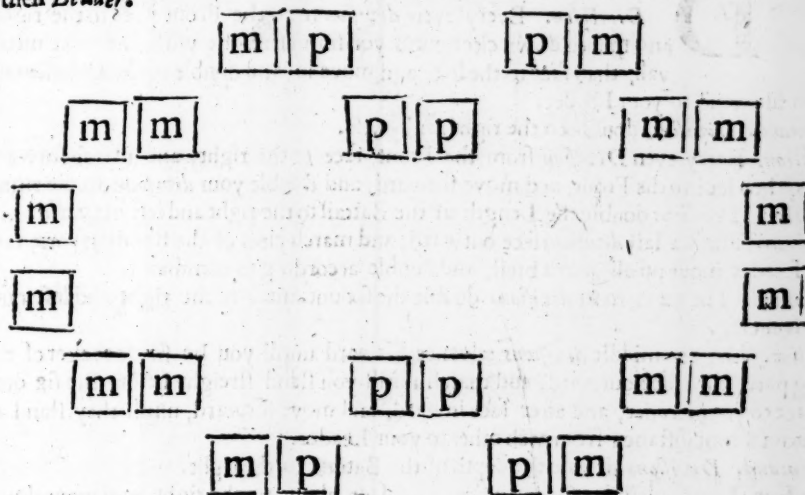


Each of the former divisions containing five files a piece, excepting the outmost division of *Pikes* upon the right in *Front* and *Reer*, and they contain six files in each of them.

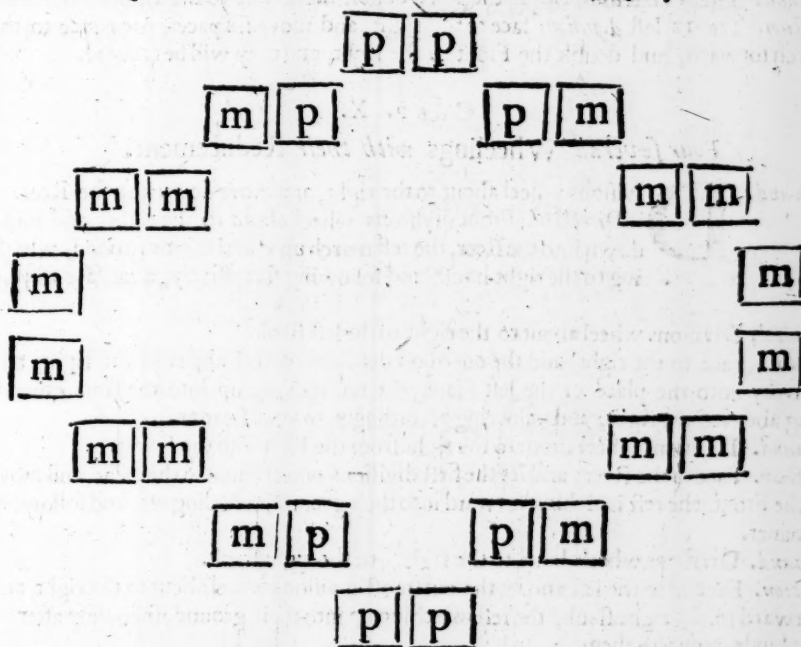
Command. Divisions of *Muskettiers* face outward, *Pikes* face about to the right, march all, untill the *Pikes* range even with the *Reer*, then face to their Leader occasioneth the next.



Command. The four last divisions of each arms in the midst, *face* about, the six outmost divisions of each arms *face* outward, the two middle divisions of *Pikes* in the *front* *face* about, march all four paces and stand, then *face* the six outmost divisions about to the right, and the four middle divisions of *Pikes* about to the left, then march all four paces, and *face* to their *Leader*.



Command. The two next divisions of *Pikes* in the midst from the *Reer* *face* about, middle divisions of *Pikes* move forward six foot before the *Front* and *Reer*, to your *Leader*.



Reduement. The 12 last divisions *face* about then let every division march forward untill they range even abreast with the *Front* and *Reer*, and *face* to their *Leader*; then let the *Reer* divisions move forward within 18 foot of the *Front* divisions, and they will be in two grand divisions, the one in the *Reer* of the other, as at first when they began their *facings*.

Having past over part of the *distances* and *facings*, the next which in order falls to be handled is *Doublings*, and having by command gained 18 foot *distance* betwixt every five *files*, if in their former motions they should chance to lose it, you may then proceed to *Doublings* by way of divisions, as shall be in the next place set down.

CHAP. IX.

Doublings belonging to a Regiment.

Command.

D

ivisions double to the right file-wise.

Direction. Every even division from the Front face to the right, and march down cleer untill you stand streight with the next interval, then face to the left, and move in, and double those Divisions on the right file-wise to your Leader.

Command. Divisions double to the right rank-wise.

Direction. Every even Division from the Front face to the right, and march forward six paces, then face to the Front, and move forward, and double your divisions to the right.

Command. Divisions double the Length of the Battail to the right and left outward.

Direction. The 12 last divisions face outward, and march cleer of the standing part, face to your Leader, move up all even a brest, and double according to command.

Command. The 12 in-most divisions double the six out-most to the right and left outward advancing.

Direction. The 12 middle divisions advance forward untill you be six foot cleer of the standing part, then face outward, and march untill you stand streight before the six out-most, face to your Leader, and after face inward, and move forward, untill they stand again unto 18 foot distance from each other to your Leader.

Command. Divisions double the depth of the Battail to the right.

Direction. Every even division from the right, face about to the right, and move down 18 foot cleer of the Reer, face to the left, and move untill you stand streight with those divisions on the right, which you are to double, to your Leader.

Command. The 12 last divisions in the Reer double the Front to the right.

Direction. The 12 last divisions face to the right, and move six paces, then face to the left, march forward, and double the Front to the right, and they will be reduced.

CHAP. X.

Four severall Wheelings with their Reducement.

Command.

D

ivisions wheel about to the right, and move down into the Reer.

Direction. Front divisions wheel about to the right, and move down into the Reer, the rest march up into the same ground, wheeling to the right hand, and following successively, after face to your Leader.

Command. Divisions wheel about to the right to the left flank.

Direction. Face to the right, and the out-most divisions wheel about to the right, and march away unto the place of the left Flank, the rest moving up into the same ground, wheeling about to the right, and following accordingly, to your Leader.

Command. Divisions wheel about to the right from the Reer into the Front.

Direction. Face to the Reer, and let the first divisions wheel about to the right, and move up into the Front, the rest marching forward into their ground, wheeling off, and following in like maner.

Command. Divisions wheel about to the right, to the right flank.

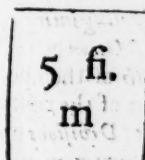
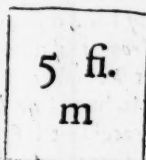
Direction. Face all to the left, and let the out-most divisions wheel about to the right, and move forward to the right flank, the rest marching up into their ground, following after in the same kinde, reduceth them.

CHAP. XI.

Counter-marches not fit to be used in the exercising of Regiments.

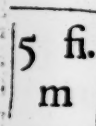
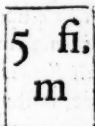
IT might be expected after *Doublings*, that I should shew some kinds of *Counter-marches* amongst the *Military* Motions, in the exercising of a *Regiment*; but being of very little use or practise amongst Commanders in these times, especially in such great Bodies, & for my own part, I fancy them not, & therefore have passed them over, & pitch upon such

The Forlorne.

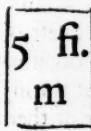
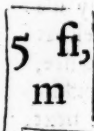


The third Captain.

Captain Lieutenant.

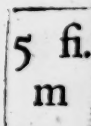
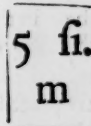


Collonel.

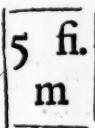


Second Captain.

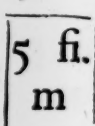
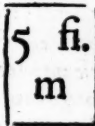
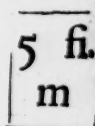
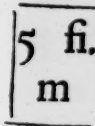
Eldest Captain.

The third Captains
Lieutenant.The Captain Lieutenants
Bringer-up.This Squadron contains 42
files of Pikes.The Lieutenant Collonels
Lieutenant.Second Captains
Lieutenant.Eldest Captains
Lieutenant

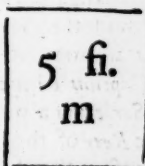
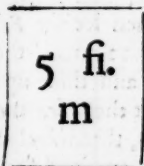
The Majors Lieutenant.



Lieutenant Collonel.



Reserves.



such *wheelings*, which by some are accounted *counter-marches*. Whose judgements my desire is better to informe by these severall reasons following, wherein, and in what kinde, they differ from them. As thus, by these *wheelings*, they keep their *distance* in rank and file unto order, and *wheeling insire* unto any hand down to the *Reer*, cannot be performed but by gaining in the *Motion* before the *Front*, and unto all places as they move so much ground as is the *Length* of their perticuler *Divisions*, and in the execution thereof they still preserve the honour of the right and left-hand *File-leaders*, and all others as are concerned in their perticuler *Divisions* unto any accidentall *Front* which they shal be brought unto. Now concerning *counter-marches*, they are to be performed either by *single files*, *ranks*, *half-files* or *half-ranks*, and at their *distance* of open order, their words of command having relation to all these perticulers. Their *counter-marching* of *Files* to the *Reer* gaineth no ground before the *Front*, in the *Motion*, but onely the room of one perticuler *File* upon the right; it preserveth not the honour of the right and left-hand *File-leader* at one time by any one word of command unto any of their *Motions* to such accidentall *Fronts* they shall make, but ever loseth it to some, and gaineth it to others. And, therefore, it may appear clearly unto any ingenious capacity, that the former *wheelings* cannot be accounted, or given in their *Motions* in that kind to the Souldiers for *counter-marches*, but by such terms as in their place are set down. In the next place I shall speak something of the great benefit, or use that may be made of these sorts of *wheelings*; as first, a Commander may use them in the *Motions* of *Doublings* to *Front*, *Reer*, right *Flank*, or left, or *double* either the *length* or *depth* of the *Battail*, unto all needfull places, as occasion shall require, which I shall forbear to set down, but leave them to the discretion of the ingenious Souldiers practise, when time and opportunity shall serve him to make use of them. In the next place they are very necessary to draw off any part, and to bring them unto such needfull places for Service as are in eminent danger. Therefore passing over for present what might be more spoken of in this kinde, I come in the next place to shew one *Figure* of *Battail* to fire upon, and then conclude my Exercise upon this *Regiment*, and go on unto the rest.

Command. *Pikes* close *Files* to the right to order, then let them in the *Reer* double their *Front* to the left *insire*; *Muskettiers* advance forward untill your *Front-Divisions* exceed six foot the *Front* of *Pikes*; the two inmost *Divisions* of *Muskettiers* in the *Front*, move forward 20 paces, and close inward to open order; the two inmost *Divisions* of *Muskettiers* in the *Reer* face about, and move down six paces, and close inward to open order, to your Leader; *Muskettiers* upon the *Flanks* close to the Body of *Pikes* to your open order: middle *Divisions* of *Muskettiers* in the *Reer* by each *Flank* face about; middle *Divisions* of *Muskettiers* by each *Flank* move forward six foot cleer of the standing part, face to your Leader, and it will set forth the Figure as it stands in *Folio* 151.

CHAP. XII.

Severall Firings to be performed upon the former Figure, and how to be mannaged by the severall Officers.

THe *Regiment* being drawn up into the former *Figure*, they may proceed to *Firings* upon it, first let the *Forlorns* fire five or six times over, being commanded by the eldest *Captains Lieutenant*, who is to be assisted by a couple of able *Serjeants*; after let him *wheel* them off to the right and left, and bring them down in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*. Then let the second *Captains Lieutenant* being assisted by two *Serjeants* lead up the *reserves* by the out-side of the *Pikes*, at such time when the *Forlorns* begin to come off, for the better securing of them from danger upon their *retreat*, then let them move forward to their ground, and give fire in like manner, falling in the *Reer* of themselves, and after *wheel* them off to the right and left, and bring them down in the *Reer* of those *Muskettiers* that are behind the *Pikes*. Then let the *Front* and *Reer Divisions* of *Muskettiers* next the *Flanks* advance forward 12 paces, the *Muskettiers* upon the right to be led away by the *Captain Lieutenant*, and those upon the left by the third *Captain*, being assisted by four *Serjeants* a piece, let them fire the first *Divisions* some six or eight times over, falling in the *Reer* of themselves, then *wheel* them off to the right and left into the ground of those *Divisions* that follow them, and facing again to their *Front*; then let

the

the *Reer* divisions advance forward into their places, and give *fire* in like manner, to the former : which being ended, let those four divisions be led down into their first places. Then let the next eight divisions by the *Pikes* advance forward untill they be clear of the standing part ; those four divisions upon the right, are to be led away by the *Majors Lieutenant*, and the *Captain Lieutenant Bringer-up*, and those four divisions upon the left, by the *Lieutenant Colonels Lieutenant*, and the third *Captains Lieutenant* assisted by 12 *Serjeants*, then let them *fire* some halfe a score times, the *Front* divisions falling in the *Reer* of themselves, after *wheeling* off to the right and left into the ground of their *Reer* divisions, they then moving up into their places, may *fire* after the same manner, and having ended they may be led down all again into their first places.

Then command the first divisions of *Muskettiers* to *face* about to the right, and let them and the two last divisions move forward, and range even a breast with those that stand before them, and after *face* all to the *Front* ; then let the *Muskettiers*, *face* outward, and move 12 paces, and after *face* again to the *Front* ; then move up those divisions that were the *Forlorne* hope to the right and left into the *Front*, unto their first places, and those that were the *Reserves* up even a breast with the *Reer*, from whence they were first taken, after let them *fire* in, and even *Front* altogether, some halfe a score times over, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves ; then let the *Colonels* eldest and second *Captaines* move forward the *Pikes*, and charge on if they please, the *Colours* falling in the second *rank* being *furled* up, and after let all *order* their *Armes*, and reduce them into *Companies* again.

Reducement. Left half-ranks of *Pikes* *face* about, and move down untill you range even with the *Reer* divisions of *Muskettiers*, *face* to your *Leader* ; Right half-ranks of *Pikes* advance forward, and range even a breast with the *Front* divisions of *Muskettiers* ; *Files* close to the left to order of each grand *Division*, then they will stand in two grand *Divisions* as at first, the one in the *Reer* of the other ; then draw up the second grand *Division*, provided there be room upon the left of the first. Then let a *Serjeant* of each perticuler *Company* draw off those 12 *Files* which before were taken off to ballance the *Divisions* into equall number, and were appointed for the guard of the *Ammunition*, or *Baggage*, and being then to joyn with their own *Armes*, with their *Captaines* *Companies* stands. Which being done, let every *Captain* draw off his own men, being assisted by his *Lieutenants* and *Serjeants*, and completing them up into a *Body* as at first ; his *Pikes* to be flanked with *Muskettiers*, they may after march away in single *Companies* after such manner, unto their severall *Quarters* as shall be appointed to them by the *Major* ; and here I shall conclude concerning a *Regiment* of six *Companies*.

CHAP. XIII.

The manner of drawing up a Regiment, consisting of seven Companies, containing in the four Captaines, twelve Files of Muskettiers, and six of Pikes, in each of their perticuler Companies, and in the three Field-officers, sixteen Files a piece of Muskettiers, and eight of Pikes, which amounts to the number of 864 men.

IT hath been my observation in the City of *London*, and the Suburbs thereof, there being 18 *Regiments*, nine of the *Trained Bands*, and nine of the *Auxiliaries*, that their *Regiments* in some have but six *Companies* ; others, and that for the most part, seven, and again, in some, &c but a few to have eight *Companies*. I shall therefore for the better satisfaction of such as remain unskill'd herein, go through them all, partly to shew the practise of this our City in their severall *drawings* up, with the reasons to confirme the same. And having passed over as much as is convenient, to satisfy any ingenuous Soldier concerning the drawing up of six *Companies* in a *regimentall* way, with the confirmation and reasons of every perticuler Officer, as he there stands, it may in many things give full light to this that follows of seven *Companies*. Yet, nevertheless, for more fuller satisfaction herein, I shall shew the true manner hereof, that I may not be wanting to any Soldiers benefit that he shall receive thereby. Where, note for better order herein, that I have pitcht upon a perticuler number of men, although it may many times fall out so, that

the *Captaines* Companies, and the *Field-officers* cannot be so full as I have here set down. Or again, it may chance to fall out (as in our *Trained Bands* of *London*) that they be a great deale fuller, as sometimes they are, for I have led a periculor Company my self upon a generall day being drawn into the *Field* consisting of above 300 men. Yet, nevertheless, whether the Companies be great or small, observe this generall rule, make two grand *Divisions*, and ballance their number equal in both Arms, and make no more *Subdivisions* then what you have *Captains* to lead, and *Lieutenants* to bring up; and let the *Sergeants* March by the *Flanks*, and not presume either to lead, or bring up any *Divisions*, being conceived by most to be very improper. And again, if you fight the *Regiment*, let your *Muskettiers* as neer as you can be equall alike in their *Subdivisions* as they may most conveniently fall out, whether four, five, or six a brest, it makes no great matter, always leaving in time of fight, between such number of *Files* six foot of ground intervall, for to wheel off their *Ranks* after they have fired.

Now, suppose, the whole *Regiment* were marching to their generall place of *Rendezvous*; the *Major* being there before hand, attending the Companies coming in, he orders to the *Colonels* Company the most convenient place for their drawing up, and next to him the fourth *Captains* Company upon the left, and next to him the third *Captain*, and after him, the eldest or first *Captain*, which makes the first grand *Division*. In the next place he orders the *Lieutenant Colonels* Company to be on the left of the whole *Regiment*, standing in even *Front* with the *Colonel*, upon the right of him, the second *Captain* is placed, and after him the *Majors* own Company, which makes up the second grand *Division*.

Having thus far proceeded, let the *Major* command the *Pikes*, and *Colours* to advance forward ten paces, before the *Front* of *Muskettiers*, then let him close the *Pikes* of the first four Companies, to the right to order, and the *Pikes* of the last to the left to order, and the like of the *Muskettiers* in the *Reer* to those hands to the same distance, then they will stand in four *Divisions*; two of *Pikes* in the *Front*, and two of *Muskettiers* in the *Reer*. In the next place let him count how many *Files* of *Pikes* there are in each *Division*, and he will finde in the *Colonels Division* 26 *Files*, and in the *Lieutenant Colonels* but 22. To make these even, he must take off one file a piece from the youngest *Captains*, and bring them into the midst of the *Lieutenant Colonels Division*, and then he will make them equall, there being in each grand *Division* 24 files of *Pikes*. The *Pikes* being made thus equall, let him move down into the *Reer*, and examine the *Muskettiers*, where upon the right he will finde 52 files, and upon the left but 44; to make these even in number, he must take off one file a piece from the four Companies of the first grand *Division*, and lead them away up into the midst of the second, and then there will be in each grand *Division* of *Muskettiers* 48 files a piece. In the next place let him face them to the right and left outward, and move them to such convenient distance, as he may after divide his *Muskettiers* into four *Divisions* to move up, and flank the *Pikes*.

This being performed, he ought to appoint unto every *Captain* and *Lieutenant* his place where to lead, and where to bring up, and what men upon all occasions they are to fight. To which purpose, there being in the first grand *Division* four *Captains*, there must be four places to lead, and four to bring up, and therefore having their four *Colours* upon the long-march, that Body of *Pikes* may be divided into two *Divisions*, and to march with two *Colours* in the first *Division* of *Pikes*, which are to be led by the eldest *Captain*, and brought up by the *Captains Lieutenants* Bringer-up; the second *Division* of *Pikes* is to be led by the fourth *Captain*, and to be brought up by the eldest *Captain Lieutenant*. The *Reer-guard* of *Muskettiers* in this grand division is to be led by the third *Captain*, and to be brought up by his *Lieutenant*, who upon the long-march his *Captain* if he pleaseth, may exchange places, being more honour to him to be there to bring up, then to lead that *Division*, as hath been formerly exprest. As concerning the *Captain Lieutenant* his place is to be fixed according as in the Figure to lead the first *Division* of *Muskettiers*, and to be brought up by the fourth *Captains Lieutenant*, but at such time when they are drawn up all a brest, they are to take their places as at first fixed, both in their leading, and bringing-up, as shall be set forth in the following Figure, with all their severall places appointed thereunto. As concerning all the rest, they are placed in manner as was shewed in my discourse of a *Regiment* consisting of six Companies.

But

But here it may be objected, that in the first grand *Division* I have placed the *Colonel*, eldest *Captain*, third, and fourth, and by casting up their number of dignity, we finde it to amount unto 18, and in the second grand *Division*, the *Lieutenant Colonel*, *Major*, and second *Captain*, whose number amounts but to 10: here we finde (say they) a great deal of difference, and alteration, your intentions principally tending to make them equall in dignity, for certainly, where the greater number is, there is the lesser dignity, and therefore a wrong unto that part where ever it so falls out.

To which, I answer, where there is no just exceptions to be made to the contrary, the former rule ought ever to be preserved in the keeping an equall *balance* of the number of dignity, but herein it doth not. For the *Colonel* ought always to have placed in his division on the eldest *Captain*, who is to lead his *colours*, and the first Body of *Pikes*, which is the first place of honour among the *Captains*, and in the second place the *Majors* Company is always drawn up, upon the out-moſt part, on the right of the *Lieutenant Colonels* grand *Division*, to carry an equall proportion of number, they being the second, and third worth, unto that of the first, or fourth, as is in the *Colonels*. In the next place, the second *Captains* turn comes to be regarded, who by the ſame rule, as the eldest *Captain* layes claim to carry the first honour, by leading the first Body of *Pikes*, & the *Colonels colours*: ſo the second *Captain* cannot expect any other, but to be placed to lead the second Body of *Pikes*, & the *Lieutenant Colonels colours*. Now, there being an odd *Captain*, he muſt be either placed upon the right, or left, he is therefore thought in diſcretion to be rather placed with the *Colonel* in his *Division*, that his *colours* may there lie, marching four together, being far more honour and gracefull, then that of three, as in the *Lieutenant Colonels*, and therefore where there is an honour in that kind which cannot be divided, it is very fit and requiſite to place and fix it with him that is the Commander in chiefe. As for number of men, both *Diviſions* are equall a like, and therefore, I conceive, what hath been ſpoken may take off all objections of this nature.

And now, according to my promiſe, I ſhall ſet forth the manner of the ſtanding of ſeven Companies in a *regiment* all way, with all the ſeverall places of honour appointed forth unto them, either marching, or ſtanding alſeven a breſt. If they be upon the *long-march*, they are to obſerve that manner ſet down in ſix Companies, onely to minde that alteration before expreſſed, the Figure of their drawing up, and the Officers ſtated in their proper places, follows in Folio 156.

From which Figure, I will draw up another, placing the Souldiers in *Battalia*, which may be very uſefull for them to fight upon.

Command. *Pikes* in both *Diviſions* face inward, in moſt *Diviſions* *Muskettiers* face outward, march, and interchange ground each with other, face to your Leader. The four inmoſt files of *Muskettiers* next the *Pikes* face about, and march ſix foot cleer from the *Pikes*, and ſtand, then cloſe their *Files* to the right and left to order in their own perticuler divisions, then face inward, and march all together, untill they ſtand ſix foot cleer of each other, face to your Leader. The next five Files of *Muskettiers* in each ſide of *Pikes*, advance 18 foot before the *Front*, then cloſe their *Files* into the miſt to order, and *Ranks* forward to order; *Pikes* cloſe your *Ranks* forward to order, and *Files* into the miſt to order; Every five Files of *Muskettiers* cloſe inward to order, and *Ranks* forward to order, then face to the *Pikes*, and march forward, being betwixt every five Files of *Muskettiers*, ſix foot of ground diſtance each from other and the ſame diſtance from the Body of *Pikes*, face all to your Leader. The 12 out-moſt Files of *Pikes* and *Muskettiers* advance forward ſix foot cleer of the ſtanding part, then move forward the three out-moſt divisions of *Muskettiers* 12 paces, then face them inward, and move them untill they ſtand ſtreight before the five remaining divisions, face all to your Leader. The middle division of *Muskettiers* of thoſe three taken off before from each *Flank* move forward ſix foot cleer of the ſtanding part; the three middle-moſt divisions of the five remaining upon each *Flank*, move up untill you ſtand ſix foot ſhort of the divisions which are before you; the two out-moſt divisions of the laſt three that moved, face outward, and march ſix foot cleer of the former divisions before them: the two remaining divisions by the out-ſide of *Pikes* move inward, untill you ſtand ſtreight in the *Rear* with the two *Front* divisions, facing all to their Leader, they will ſtand as is ſet forth unto your view in Folio 156.

Let them be at open order in their Ranks and Files; and the two grand Diviſions ſtanding in one even Front together.

Notwithstanding the former directions of drawing forth the Figure, make this alteration; wheel off the first two divisions of *Muskettiers* before the *Pikes*, and place them six foot behinde the *Reer* of those upon the *Flanks*, and before you reduce them, carry them into their first places.

In this Figure, you have *Forlornes*, aptly standing to the *Wings*, and *main Body* of *Pikes*, with *Reserves* to them all, so that I shall not need to trouble my selfe for to describe what *firings* might be here performed upon the same, they lying so apparant to the view, the divisions being cleer each of other, any ingenious Commander may fire them according unto his own best discretion, continuing the same as long as he shall think fitting, and therefore passing it by, and leaving it to their own liberty, I come in the next place to reduce them again into private Companies.

Reducement. *Pikes* of the *Main Body*, advance forward, and range even a breast with the *Pikes* before you, the two last divisions of *Muskettiers* in the *Reer* move up, and flank the *Pikes*; the two divisions of *Muskettiers* before the *Front* face about, and move down upon the right and left of the other two divisions of *Muskettiers*, to your Leader. The two last divisions of *Muskettiers* in the *Reer* of the *Flanks* advance forward to the right and left, and range even a breast on the out-side of those three divisions that stands before you; Single divisions of *Muskettiers* in the *Front* of each *wing*, face about, and move down even a breast with the *Reer* of the next divisions; The eight divisions of *Muskettiers* upon each *wing* face about, the five first divisions move down, and range even a breast with the *Reer*; the three last move to the right and left outward untill you be cleer of the rest, face to the *Reer*, and move down in like manner, and rank even with the rest, after face all to the *Front*, and they will all stand in one even *Front*. Next command the *Pikes* to face outward, and the five in-most divisions of *Muskettiers* in each flank, face inward, then march and interchange ground each with other, and face to their Leader; they will stand again in two grand Divisions all even a breast in the *Front*. In the next place let those six files be taken off by the *Serjeants* of their own Companies from the two grand Divisions, and be brought into their first places. After the *Major* may give order to every *Captain*, to draw off his men, and put them into Companies again, which is easily done, after the *Regiment* may be ordered to march home in single Companies, either by *succession* or *dignity*, which he pleaseth. And here I shall conclude concerning a *Regiment* of seven Companies.

Lieutenant Collonel.

Collonel.

The 2 Captain.

The 4 Cap. Eldest Captain

The Lieu. Col.
Lieutenant.

This Squadron
contains 24 files
of Muskettiers.



This Squadron
contains 24 files
of Pikes.

Majors Lieu.

This Squadron
contains 24 files
of Muskettiers.

The 3 Captain

This Squadron
contains 24 files
of Muskettiers.



This Squadron
contains 24 files
of Pikes.

The Captain
Lieutenant.

This Squadron
contains 24 files
of Muskettiers.

The 2 Captains
Lieutenants place.

The third Cap-
tain's Lieutenants

The 2 Cap. The Capt
Lieutenant Lieutenant
dringer up

The 4 Captains
Lieutenants.

The Lieutenant Collonels
Lieutenant.

The third Captain.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

The Major.
2 Captains.

Lieu. Collo.
Eldest Capt.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

The Collonel.

The fourth Capt.

This Squadron
contains 12
files of Pikes.

This Squadron
contains 12
files of Pikes.

The 4 Captain
Lieutenants.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

The Majors Lieute-
nant.

This Squadron con-
tains 24 files of
Pikes.

The eldest Capt.
Lieutenant.

The Captain Lieutenant.

5. f.
m.

5. f.
m.

The Captain Lieutenants
Bringer-up.

CHAP. XIV.

The manner of drawing up, and placing the Officers, of a Regiment, consisting of eight Companies, having in it a Collonel, a Lieutenant Collonel, a Major, and five Captains, their number of men in each Companie, being equall with the former Regiment, they amount unto 972 men.

If concerns a *Major* (provided he have room enough) to draw up every Company even a *Brest*, and to give unto every *Captain*, his due place of honour, after which, he may proceed to order them in a *regimentall* way. Wherefore, briefly thus, observe the manner of the *dignity* of every *Captain*, how they ought to be placed; first the *Collonels* Company being drawn up in it's convenient place, next to him upon the left stands the third *Captain*, and next to him the fourth, and the next that follows, is the eldest, these four *Captains* being drawn up after this manner, makes the first grand *Division*; and therefore I shall endeavour to give reasons for to confirme this, before I shall proceed upon the second, as being the right *half-ranks*, which ought to carry an equall proportion of *worth*, *honour*, and *dignity*, with that of the last. Where, first, take notice, that the *Collonel* being the most worthiest man, is placed upon the right, and is the first place of *honour*, and the out-most upon the left, is the eldest *Captain*, which is the fourth worth, there being, the *Collonel*, *Lientenant Collonel*, and *Major*, above him; now consider that the first and fourth worth makes the number five, betwixt these two is drawn up the third and fourth *Captains*, which are the sixth and seventh worth, whose number carries 13, add them to that number above, and it makes 18. In the next place, since it is the judgement of most Souldiers, that there should be an equall proportion of *skill*, *valour*, and *worth*, the *Reer half-files* answerable to them of the *Front*: so likewise the same rule is to be observed between the right and left half-ranks. That whether we consider the *Front* divisions, or *Reer*, right, or left half-ranks, they may be so ballanced in every kind of respect, with true proportion; so neer as the knowledge of the Souldiers, and number of men will give leave. To which purpose, I will proceed to draw up the second grand *Division*, and compare it to the first; the *Lientenant Collonels* Company being drawn up, upon the left of the whole Regiment, upon his right, is the second *Captain* drawn up, and next to him the fifth *Captain*, after the *Major*, upon the right of the *Lientenant Collonels* division. Now, if we consider, the *Lientenant Collonel* he is the second man of *honour*, and therefore ought to be upon the out-most part of the *Front* on the left, when the Companies are marching all even a *Brest*, but upon the *long-march* he is to fall down into the *Reer*; the out-most upon the right of his Division is the *Major* Company placed, and he is the third man of *honour*. Now the third worth and second will carry an equall ballance of number with that of the first and fourth, and so have I set forth the four first places of *honour*, which, I suppose, no knowing Souldier can deny. Betwixt the second and third worth is drawn up the second *Captain*, and fift, the second *Captain* is the first worth; and the fifth *Captain* is the eighth, which makes the number 13; and will carry an equall weight of number with those in the midst of the first and fourth worth. Now having stated the severall worths. of the second grand *Division*, being compared together makes a like number of 18 unto that of the first division. And to take off all objections that might be made concerning the second *Captain*, and fift, why they should not rather be placed in the first division, then in the second, because it hath been held by the opinion of some, it should be so, but never any substantiall reason to be given for the same. Therefore, unto this I shall say, that they ought to be there where I have placed them, in respect of what I have formerly said, that as it is the first place of *honour* amongst the *Captains* to lead the first Body of *Pikes*, where the *Collonels* colours flies; so I say, it must necessarily follow the second place of *honour* must be appointed to the second *Captain*, which is to lead in chiefe the second Body of *Pikes*, where the *Lientenant Collonels* colours does lie, and to make them of the second division equall in number with the first, the youngest *Captain*, which is the eighth worth, is brought in, & joyned to the second *Captain*, who is the fifth, and therefore a *File* or a *Rank* ought to be set forth in *dignity*, after this manner.

in respect there is no truer stating the *dignity* of a single *File*, or *Rank*, then that which shall conforme to

2 5 8 3 | 4 7 6 1.

18

18.

greater

greater Bodies as that of *Regiments*. And thus much briefly shall suffice to be spoken concerning the second grand Division, for the placing the second and fifth *Captains* betwixt the *Lieutenant Colonel*, and the *Majors*, in respect of the second *Captain* stands aptly there to receive his proper place, and the youngest *Captain* is brought in to *ballance* their *Dignities* unto that of the first.

In the next place, I shall shew how they ought to be drawn up in a *regiment* all way, being all even a-breast as before, command *Muskettiers* to *face* about, and to *march* down 12 foot cleer of the *Reer*, then *face* to the *Front*, after close *files* outward to order of each *Armes*, then subdivide each division of *Muskettiers*, and move them up to *flank* each Body of *Pikes*. And having accounted and cast up the number of *files* of each *Armes* in each grand Division, you will finde in the *Colonels* division to have in it 25 *files* of *Pikes*, and 52 *files* of *Muskettiers*; next the *Lieutenant Colonels* division, being examined, you will finde there to have in it 28 *files* of *Pikes*, and 56 *files* of *Muskettiers*; now to make these equall in number, there must be taken forth one *file* of *Pikes*, and two of *Muskettiers* from the second grand Division, and place one a piece in the midst of the first division, in every one of their perticuler divisions, and they will contain equall a like in each grand Division 27 *files* of *Pikes*, and 54 *files* of *Muskettiers*. In the next place, the *Major* may assigne unto every *Captain* and *Lieutenant* where his place shall be to lead, and where to bring up; the *Colonel* being upon the head of his Division, and the *Lieutenant Colonel* upon the head of the second grand Division, the *Major* in the *Front* betwixt them both, or where else he pleaseth, being an Officer always to act through the whole *Regiment*. And in the first place he appoints the *Captain Lieutenant* to be on the head of the first division of *Muskettiers*, and to be brought up by the fourth *Captains Lieutenant*; next he orders the eldest *Captain* to be on the head of the first division of *Pikes*, and to be brought up by the *Captains Lieutenant Bringer-up*, and the fourth *Captain* to be on the head of the second division of *Pikes*, and to be brought up by the eldest *Captains Lieutenant*; and the second division of *Muskettiers* he appoints unto the third *Captain*, and to be brought up by his own *Lieutenant*, and upon the *long-march*, let him and his *Captain* change places untill such time they shall draw up again. After he orders his own *Lieutenant* to be on the head of the third division of *Muskettiers*; and the third division of *Pikes*, he appoints to the fifth *Captain*, and to be brought up by his own *Lieutenant*; the fourth Division of *Pikes*, is ordered to be the second *Captains* place, and brought up by his own *Lieutenant*, the *Lieutenant Colonels Lieutenant* is appointed to the fourth and last division of *Muskettiers*, the *Lieutenant Colonel* upon the *long-march* bringing up the whole *Regiment*. It might be supposed the *Captain Lieutenant*, *Lieutenant Colonels* and *Majors Lieutenants*, have too great places of honour, but to answer them all, their *Captains* being *Field-officers* and upon severall occasions moving off, their *Lieutenants* do officiate there in their rooms, and are but as assistants unto them, for likewise upon severall occasions they come to those places themselves to lead *marching* there before their *Lieutenants*. As concerning the placing of all the rest of the other Officers, they lie cleerly, for as much as formerly hath been spoken in their proper places, without (as I conceive) the exceptions of any.

Secondly, upon the *long-march*, the *Colonel* draws off the first division of *Muskettiers*, and leads them, *marching* some 12 foot before his *Captain Lieutenant*, and that division is brought up by the fourth *Captains Lieutenant*, the colours *marching* two and two upon every division, whereof the first is drawn off, and led by the first *Captain*, and brought up by the *Captains Lieutenants* and *Bringer-up*, the next division of *Pikes* falling in the *Reer* of the first, and led by the fourth *Captain*, and brought up by the first *Captains Lieutenant*; the second division of *Muskettiers*, is led by the third *Captains Lieutenant*, and brought up by his own *Captain*; the fourth or first division of *Muskettiers* in the second grand Division is led by the *Major*, when he pleaseth, some 12 foot before his own *Lieutenant*; and the third division of *Pikes*, is led by the fifth *Captain*, and brought up by his own *Lieutenant*, the fourth and last division of *Pikes* is led by the second *Captain*, and brought up by his own *Lieutenant*, the fourth and last division of *Muskettiers* is by the *Lieut. Col. Lieutenant*, the *Reer* of the whole *Regiment* being brought up by the *Lieut. Col.* thus

thus every *Division* is to march by *succession*, the one in the *Reer* of another, keeping 18 foot *distance* betwixt every *Division*, untill they shall have room to *march* all even a *brest*, and then with very little alteration with the third *Captain*, changing places, with his own *Lieutenant*, they are all to take their places again as at first.

Having now set forth the true *dignity* of every *Captains* and *Lieutenants* place, what men they shall take charge on to *fight*, where to lead, and where to bring up, I shall spare the figure in respect I shall shew (with very little alteration) the manner of *drawing* up and *marching* of divers *Regiments* that were under the command of the late *Earl of Essex*.

The first grand *Division* in respect of every Officer and place, is to be ordered as the former; only in the second, there will be this small alteration, the *Lieutenant Colonels* Company, and the *Majors* are to interchange places, the rest are to remain as they were, only with this alteration following; the *Lieutenant Colonels* *Lieutenant* is to lead the first *Division* of *Muskettiers*, untill such time that his *Lieutenant Colonel* shall come unto that place, and then he is to bring up that *Division* being neer at hand, that if his *Lieutenant Colonel* should upon some just occasions be called off, he may immediately move up, and lead there in his absence. For upon the *long-march*, as the *Colonel* leads the first grand *Division*, so it is conceiv'd by some, (they *marching* in two grand *Divisions* some 20 paces distance from each other in manner of two *regimental marchings*) that the *Lieutenant Colonel* ought to lead the second. Next, let the first *Division* of *Pikes* be led by the second *Captain*, and to be brought up by the fifth *Captains* *Lieutenant*, and the second *Division* of *Pikes* to be led by the fifth *Captain*, and brought up by the second *Captains* *Lieutenant*; the last *Division* of *Muskettiers* to be led by the *Majors* *Lieutenant*, and the *Reer* of the second grand *Division* being left for the *Major* to bring up, at such time as with conveniency he may be spared. Therefore, to *march* thus, it being a very good way, and with very little alteration to be made, I was unwilling to passe it by, leaving it to the discretion of every ingenuous Souldier, to make use of which way he best pleaseth, or likes of, whilst I in the next place, shall set forth the *Figure*, which follows in page 161; affording more variety in the same.

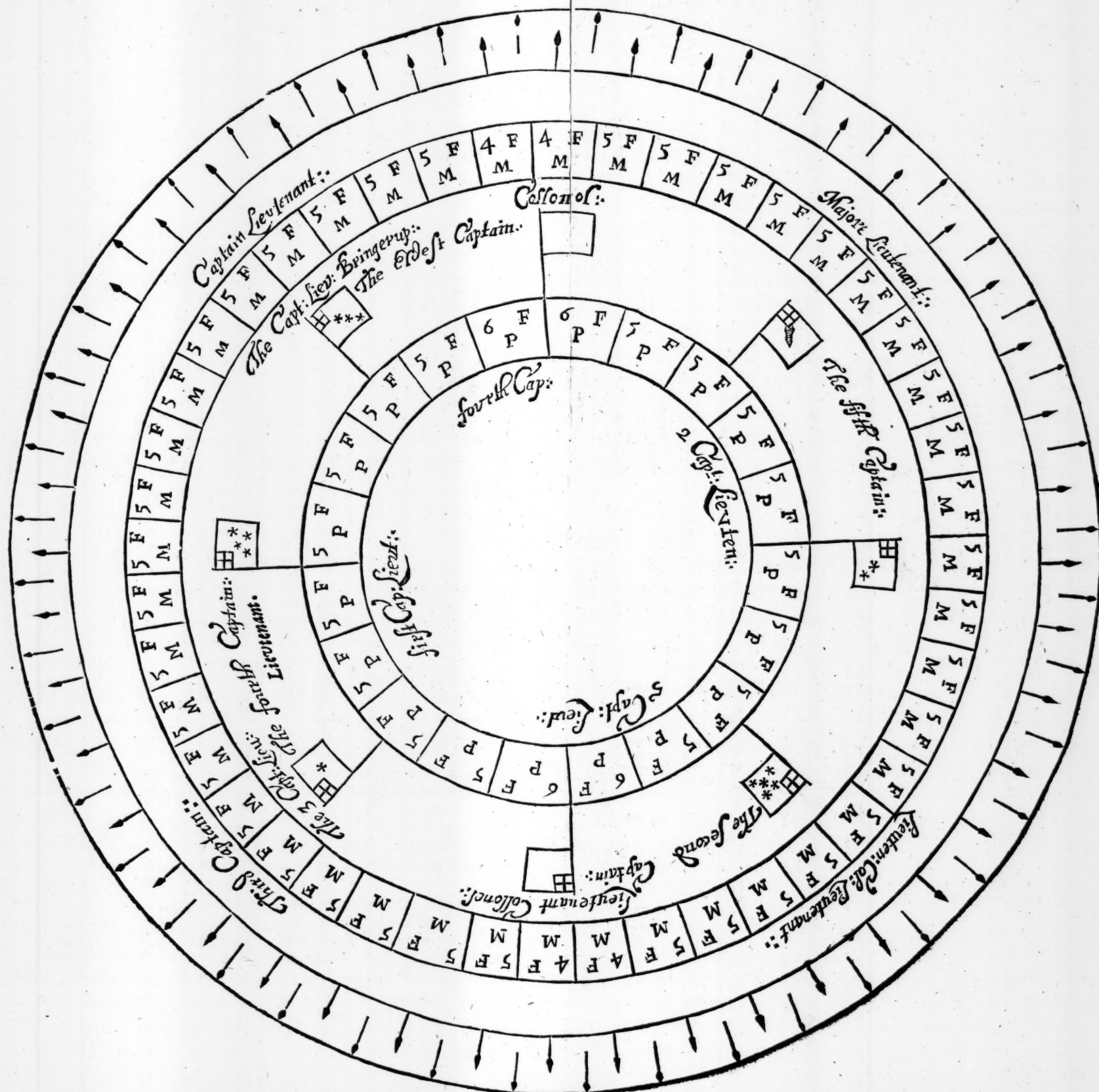
CHAP. XV.

How to make the Figure of a Ring, with it's use and service.

THe way to make this *Figure* in the most readiest manner, is to be performed after this kind; both the grand *Divisions*, standing all a *brest* in even *Front*; first move forward all the *Muskettiers* some ten foot cleer of the *Pikes*, after let them close *Files* both of *Muskettiers* and *Pikes*, into the midst to *order*, then they will stand in two *Divisions*, one of *Muskettiers*, and in the *Reer* of them, one of *Pikes*; then open the *files* outward to open *order* of each *Armes*, and after let them double the *Front* to the left of both *Armes* by *Bringers-up*, and they will be but three deep of each *Armes*, having in the *Fronts* the best Souldiers; then command them to *face* all to the right, then *wheel* them about still to the right of both *Armes*; the *Pikes* *wheeling* all in the in-side of the *Muskettiers*, untill you have brought them into two *Rings*, provided thus that you close your *Rings* unto that place which was your first *Front*, then *face* them all to the *Center*, and after *face* them about to the right, and they will then be *faced* round and stand suitable to the following *Figure* (page 163.) and to have in it two *Rings*, the one of *Muskettiers*, the other of *Pikes*, some ten foot short on the in-side of them. And by reason it cannot be well otherwise, in respect there are as many *Muskettiers* again as there are *Pikes*, and the Officers following the Souldiers in their places formerly fixed in this Motion will also naturally stand in manner and forme as is set down in the *Figure*.

But, me thinks, I hear some say, of what use or service upon any occasion may this *Ring* be unto the Souldier. To whom I answer, that it is one of the most serviceablest *Figures* that can be made, to secure the Souldier from danger against the furious charge of *horse* in *Campania*, the accomplishing or making of it up, being easily and suddainly performed, the *Muskettiers* having *Pallizadoes* may advance forward three or four paces, and stick them down in such manner, as that they may keep the *horse* from breaking in among them. And after if they should be charged round, they may give *fire* over them, against their *Enemies*, and fall in the *Reer* of themselves; yet nevertheless, if the *horse* should be undaunted, and attempt

Place this Figure of the Ring between Folio 160 and 161.



attempt to come on again, they may resist them with a more desperate charge after this manner, bringing all hands to fight, and to pour out their shot, or to fire altogether after this kind. Command first the *Pikes* to move forward, untill they be three foot behind the *Muskettiers*, then let every file rank to the right, which will make them to stand but one a breast in one single ring behind the *Muskettiers*, now that all hands may be brought to fight together, command the first rank of *Muskettiers* to kneel down, the second stoop, and the third stand upright, then let all close forward to close order, and let the *Pikes* as occasion shall require charge betwixt the *Muskettiers*, who may fire altogether, and the *Pikes* may charge on whilest the *Muskettiers* make ready again. The *Palliards* formerly stuck keeping off the horse from breaking in upon them, they may fire after this manner, as often as they please; and so much may suffice to be spoken concerning the service and use that may be made of it in time of fight, and now in the next place I come to reduce them into *Companies* again as at first.

Let the *Pikes* that ranked to the right, file three to the left as they were, and let the *Bringers-up* that doubled face about to the right, and march forth into their places. Then let the *Major* come to that place where he closed the *Ring*, and break it off, wheeling them all a long about to the left untill he hath brought them to stand in one even *Front* as at first, the same in like manner to be performed of the *Pikes*, and to stand in the *Rear* of the *Muskettiers*. Next, let the *Muskettiers* and *Pikes* face outward, and move to such convenient distance, that after the *Muskettiers* may be subdivided again, and the *Pikes* move up, and double their *Front* inward untill in each grand *Division*. Which being brought into that forme, each *Captain* may draw off his men, being so commanded by the *Major*, and compleat up his *Company* again, and be after disposed of to farther duty, or to march home to their *Quarters* according to command; and here I shall conclude this *Regiment* of eight *Companies*.

Lieutenant Collonel.

Collonel.

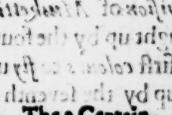
The 5 Cap. The 3 Cap.

The 4 Cap. The 1 Captain

The Majors
Lieutenant.



The
Lieu. Col. Lie.



The 3 Captain.



The Captain
Lieutenant.

This Squadron
contains 27 files
of Muskettiers.

This Squadron
contains 27 files
of Pikes.

This Squadron
contains 27 files
of Muskettiers.

This Squadron
contains 27 files
of Muskettiers.

This Squadron
contains 27 files
of Pikes.

This Squadron
contains 24 files
of Muskettiers.

The 2 Cap.
Lieuten.

The 5 Cap.
Lieuten.

The third Cap.
Lieuten.

The 1 Cap.
Lieuten.

The 4 Captains
Lieuten.

The 4 Captains
Lieuten.

Y

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

The manner of drawing up a Regiment, consisting of ten Companies, having in it seven Captains, and three Field-Officers, being in each perticuler Company, the former numbers, which in all amounts unto 1198 men.

THE Major laying ground sufficient for the drawing up the Regiment, after the Colonel's Company hath made *Alt*, next to him upon the left he draws up the youngest Captain, which is the tenth, and the next to him the third Captain, which is the fixt, after that the fourth Captain, which is the seventh, then the first Captain which is the fourth. Then the Majors which is the third, next to him the fifth Captain which is the eighth, and after that the second Captain, which is the fifth, then the fixt Captain, which is the ninth, all these being drawn up upon the left of the Colonel's Company, the cloister of all upon the left, is the Lieutenant Colonel's Company, whose figure carries the number 2. Place now all these numbers of dignity according to the former figures, and they will stand as followeth in a rank: 2: 9: 5: 8: 3: [4: 7: 6: 10: 1:

27

28.

In the next place compare the dignity of the right half-ranks, with the left, and they are ballanced as near as can be possible to be equal, there being one odd, which of necessity must be cast upon the right half-ranks for the reasons formerly exprest, in placing the second Captain into the Lieutenant Colonel's division. Then according to the former rule draw forth the Pikes, and ingrosse them into two Bodies, and the like of the Muskettiers, after sub-divide the Muskettiers, and make them four divisions, and move them up to flank the Pikes, and then they will be in two compleat grand Divisions. In the next place, let the Major order forth unto the Captains and Lieutenants, their severall places to lead, and to bring up, after this manner. There being two grand Divisions, having in them five Captains, and five Lieutenants, it will be necessary to appoint out five severall Charges in the first grand Division to lead, and five to bring up, after this manner. As first, divide the Van-guard into two divisions, the first to be led by the Captain Lieutenant, and brought up by his Bringer-up; the second division of Muskettiers in the Van to be led by the third Captain Lieutenant, and to be brought up by the fourth Captain Lieutenant. The first division of Pikes is to have the three first colours to fly upon the head of them, and to be led by the eldest Captain, and brought up by the seventh Captain Lieutenant, the next division of Pikes to be led by the fourth Captain, having his own, and the eldest Captain's colours flying upon the head of them, and to be brought up by the seventh, or youngest Captain in the Regiment; the Reer-guard of Muskettiers of the first grand Division to be led by the third Captain, and brought up by the eldest Captain Lieutenant, who upon the long-march these two are to inter-change places if the third Captain desire it, and having such permission from the Major, being more honour to bring up, then to lead, as was said before in the former Regiments.

Next follows the placing of the Officers in the second grand Division; let the Van-guard of Muskettiers there be led by the Majors Lieutenant, or by himselfe when he pleaseth, and be brought up by the fifth Captain Lieutenant; next let the first division of Pikes there be led by the fifth Captain, having two colours flying on the head of them, the Majors, and his own, and to be brought up by the fixt Captain Lieutenant; let the next division of Pikes be led by the second Captain, having three colours flying on the head of them, the Lieutenant Colonel's, his own, and the fixt Captain's, and let that be brought up by the second Captain Lieutenant, let the last division of Muskettiers, be led by the fixt Captain, and brought up by the Lieutenant Colonel's Lieutenant; the Lieutenant Colonel upon the long-march bringing up the Reer of the Regiment, some 12 foot behinde his own Lieutenant.

I shall in the next place shew the reasons for the thus placing of the *Officers*, where first I shall endeavour to cleer the first grand *Division*, which will occasion the second to be more easily resolved. Where briefly thus, as concerning the *Collonel*, eldest *Captain*, third *Captain*, & *Capt. Lieutenant*, I shall passe them over, having formerly spoken sufficient to satisfie any Souldier therein. It follows therefore to speak of the fourth *Captains* place, which is the next man of honour after the former, and therefore is placed to lead the second *division* of *Pikes*, which is more honour to him to lead there, then to lead a sub-division of *Muskettiers*. In the *Van-guard* next to him in honour in this *division*, is the seventh *Captain*, who is appointed to bring up the first grand *Body* of *Pikes*, which likewise is more honour unto him, then to lead or bring up any sub-division of *Muskettiers*, as before expressed. Having thus resolved of all the *Captains*, and *Captains Lieutenants* place, next follows the reasons of the *Lieutenants* places, where first take notice that the eldest *Captains Lieutenant* is appointed to bring up the *Reer-guard*, which next the *Pikes* is the greatest place of honour in the *Reer*, and a very honourable place unto him; or if he alters places with the third *Captain* upon the *long-march*, yet neverthelesse he hath the chiefest place of honour after the *Captain Lieutenant* amongst all the *Lieutenants* unto those places he is ordered unto. The third *Captains Lieutenant* is assigned to the next place, who leads the second *division* of *Muskettiers* in the *Van-guard*, which is more honour to him then to bring up any such *division*; after follows him the fourth *Captains Lieutenant*, who brings up the *Reer* of the *Van-guard*, which is more honour to him, of the places remaining to be there, then to bring up either the first *division* of *Muskettiers*, or the first *division* of *Pikes*. Lastly, the seventh *Captains Lieutenant* is placed to bring up the first *division* of *Pikes*, which being the more honourable *Arms*, it adds more honour to him to be there to bring up, then the first *division* of *Muskettiers*, which being the last place of honour, it is given to the *Captain Lieutenants Bringer-up* to be there; and thus much shall suffice for the reasons of the places of the first grand *Division*.

Now for placing of the *Officers* of the second grand *Division*, I shall not need to speak any thing concerning the *Lieutenant Colonels Major*, Second *Captain*, and the *Majors Lieutenants* place, in regard in the former *Regiments* I have endeavoured to give the Souldier satisfaction therein. Therefore next to those in this grand *Division* follows to be spoken is the fifth *Captain*, who is the next man of honour, and therefore hath his due place appointed out to him to lead the first *division* of *Pikes*, where the *Majors* and his own *colours flye*, which is more honour to him to lead there the *Van* of the *Pikes*, then the *Reer-guard* of *Muskettiers*. Next to him is the sixth *Captain*, which next the *Pikes* hath his due place of honour, remaining to him to lead the *Reer-guard*. Having thus resolved the *Captains* places, I shall in the next endeavour to shew the *Lieutenants*, where first it falls to the *Lieutenant Colonels Lieutenant* to be placed first, who is ordered to bring up the *Reer*, to be an assistant unto his *Lieutenant Collonel*, who is a *Field Officer*, and may have many occasions to fall off, and therefore he requires his *Lieutenant* to be present with his men there, as the *Collonels* doth his in the *Front*. And as much may be said of the *Majors Lieutenant*, but passing him by, I come next to the second *Captains Lieutenant*, who is appointed to bring up the *Reer* of the second *Body* of *Pikes*, which is the greatest place of honour that is in the *Reer* next to the *Lieutenant Collonels Lieutenant*. After him follows the fifth *Captains Lieutenant*, who is placed to bring up the *Reer* of the *Van-guard* of this *division*, which is more honour then to bring up the *Van* of the *Pikes*, whose turn being the last place of honour falls to him that is the youngest *Lieutenant*, which is the sixth *Captains Lieutenant*.

And thus as briefly as I could I have run over all the reasons for the placing of the *Officers* in the *Regiment* drawn up after this manner, that I might not be wanting unto the desire of any such who are willing to be informed herein, being always ready to imploy my selfe in as plain a way as I can for the benefit of all true loving Souldiers, who are concerned herein. And therefore, for their better satisfaction, let them cast their eye upon the Figure as it is demonstrated between *Folio* 161 and 162, where they shall see every man placed according to my former discourse.

CHAP. XVII.

The manner both of the drawing up, and the order of the Long-march of Collonel Rainsborough his Regiment, bringing up the Reer of the foot of the Army, under the Command of the Lord Generall Fairfax, at their first marching through the City of London, on the seventh of August, 1647.

THe first order of drawing up the *Regiment* at their first place of *Rendezvous*, before they marched or joyn'd with the *Army* was thus; The *Collonels Company* being upon the out-moſt part of the right of the *Regiment*, next to his left by ſucceſſion was drawn up the ſecond, ſixt, fiſt, and firſt *Captains*, which make up his *division*, or the right *half-ranks* in their firſt drawing up to be compleat, and may in their figure of *dignity* ſtanding in a *rank* be demonſtrated as followeth, 4: 8: 9: 5: 1. This number of *worth* being caſt up amounteth to 27, and thus much for the *Collonels Division*.

Now for the left *half-ranks*, or *Lieutenant Collonels Division*, (as many times it is ſo ordered and appointed) his own *Company* being drawn up upon the out-moſt part on the left of the *Regiment*, and next to his right after each other is drawn up the third, ſeventh, fourth, and *Majors Company*, whoſe figure of *dignity* ſtanding *rank-wiſe*, may be thus deſcribed, 2: 6: 10: 7: 3. and their number of *dignity* in all amounteth to 28. Where you may perceive a rule that the diſcretion of the *Major* walketh by, in the drawing up of the *Regiment*, to ballance with as neer proportion as he can the number, worth, and *dignity* of his right *half-ranks*, or right *flank*, ſutable with that of the left. For it would be unreaſonable that all the beſt men ſhould be on the right, and that the left of the *Regiment* who are to oppoſe the *Enemies* right ſhould have the weakeſt or meaneſt men of *worth*; therefore without all queſtion that Body of men that ſhall be drawn up ſo as to make all parts of equall *worth*, and *ſtrength*, as the right *flank* with the left, the *Front* with the *Reer*, ſo that where ever the *Enemy* ſhall fall on to charge any one of theſe parts, being all made equall in *ſtrength*, and *worth*, it muſt needs prevent all murmuring complaints, and carry beſt approbation to all knowing *Commanders*; And thus much briefly may be ſpoken in the commendation of the ordering of his *Regiment* thus far.

The *Captains* now ſtanding by their own *colours*, on the head of the *Pikes*, and their *Companies* being drawn up all, and ſtanding in an even *Front*, the *Major* next commands the *Muskettiers* to ſtand, the *Pikes* and *Colours* to troop forth ſome ten or twelve paces cleer of the *Muskettiers*, and then they likewiſe to ſtand, and after to cloſe their *files* to the midſt to order.

Next he commands the *Muskettiers* in their *files* to cloſe outward to order, commanding them afterward to move up, and flank the *Pikes*, after which he orders the Body into thirteen remarkable *diviſions*, four *diviſions* of *Muskettiers* upon each ſide of the *Pikes*, and the *Pikes* into five *diviſions*, having their *colours* flye by two and two, and to be led by thoſe *Enſign-bearers* that do belong to each of them, excepting the firſt and middle *diviſions*, for they have Leaders in chief, as the firſt and fiſt *Captain*, and the third *Captain*, to bring up the *Reer* of the whole Body of *Pikes*. For more fuller illuſtration of the leading and bringing up of each *diviſion*, in the *Regiment* upon their *Long-march*, obſerve theſe following directions.

1 The *Regiment* being upon their *March*, the firſt *diviſion* upon the right, is led by the *Collonel*, his *Captain Lieutenant* marching in the *Reer* of him ſeverall paces, and that perticuler *diviſion* is brought up by the *Captains Lieutenant Bringer-up*.

2 The ſecond *diviſion* of *Muskettiers* is led by the ſecond *Captain Lieutenant*, and brought up by the firſt, or eldeſt *Cap. Lieutenant*.

2 Captain



Major Adjutant

This Squadron contains
33 files of Musketeers

This Squadron contains
16 files of Pikemen

This Squadron contains
17 files of Pikemen

This Squadron contains
33 files of Musketeers

2 Captain

2 Captain

2 Captain

2 Captain

Adjutant Colonel



10 files of
Pikemen

10 files of
Pikemen

13 files of
Musketeers

12 files of
Musketeers

12 files of
Musketeers

12 files of
Musketeers

11 Regiments of Foot
The first Regiment of Foot
The second Regiment of Foot
The third Regiment of Foot
The fourth Regiment of Foot
The fifth Regiment of Foot
The sixth Regiment of Foot
The seventh Regiment of Foot
The eighth Regiment of Foot
The ninth Regiment of Foot
The tenth Regiment of Foot

Adjutant Colonel

Zieutenant Collonel.

Major.

2 Captain.

5 Captain.



6 Captain.

This Squadron contains
33 files of Musket-
tiers.

Lie. Col. Lieu.

This Squadron
contains 17 files
of Pikes.

2 Capt. Lieu.

This Squadro
contains 16
files of Pikes.

6 Cap. Lie.

Majors Lieuten.

This Squadron contains
33 files of Musket-
tiers.

5 Capt. Lieute.

Place this betwe

Lieu. Col. Lie.

13
files of
Musketti.

7 Caprain

12
files of
Musketti.

7 Cap. Lieu.

3 Cap. Lieu.

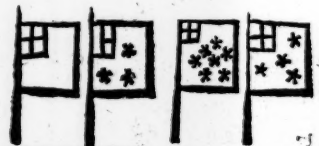
12
files of
Musketti.

Majors Lieu.

2 Caprain.

13
files of
Musketti.

3 Capt.



10
files of
Pikes.

3 Capt.

10;
files of
Pikes.

This Regiment being thus draw
Front or Battalia, 150 abreft, and
Muskettiers, and one of Pikes, their
particular Company consisting of
men a piece, but the Field-Officers C

Place this betwe

Mojar.

Collonel.

4 Captain,

1 Captain



3 Captain

This Squadron contains
33 files of Musket-
tiers.

This Squadro
contains 16
files of Pikes.

This Squadron
contains 17 files
of Pikes.

3 Cap. Lieu.

This Squadron
contains 16 files
of Muskettiers.

Cap. Lieu.

This Squadron
contains 17 files
of Muskettiers.

1 Capt. Lieu.

7 Capt.

7 Cap. Lieu.

4 Cap. Lieu.

Ca. Li. bringer-up.

s between page 162 and 163.

Collonel.

5 Capt.

1 Capt.



10
files of
Pikes.

10
files of
Pikes

10
files of
Pikes.

1 Cap. Lieu.

13
files of
Musketti.

4 Cap.

6 Cap.

12
files of
Musketti.

6 Cap. Lie.

2 Cap. Lie.

12
files of
Musketti.

1 Cap. Lieu.

Cap. Lieure.

13
files of
Musketti,

Ca. Li. Bring up

Lieutenant Collonel.

thus drawn up they stand in the length of their
rest, and six in their depth, having two thirds of
kes, their number amounting in all to 900 men, each
ting of 15 files, and containing in each of them 90
Officers Companies are many times larger.

this between page 164 and 165.

Đời vua đời vua



1070

215

• 2750 •

to files of Pikes	to files of Pikes	to files of Pikes
-------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------

to 2011
2011

Picks
to sales

10-11-1944

•

2011

1997

100

100

[illegible]

3 The third division of *Muskettiers* is led by the fixt *Captain*, and brought up by his own *Lieutenant*.

4 The fourth division of *Muskettiers* is led by the fift *Captains Lieutenant*, and brought up by the fourth *Captain*.

5 The first division of *Pikes* is led by the eldest *Captain*, having the *Colonels*, and second *Captains colours* flying on the head of them.

6 The second division of *Pikes* is led by the fift and fixt *Captains Ensignes*, having their own *colours* flying upon the head of the same.

7 The third division of *Pikes*, is led by the fift *Captain*, having the *Majors* and eldest *Captains colours* flying upon the head of the same.

8 The fourth division of *Pikes* is led by the fourth and seventh *Captains Ensignes*, having their own *colours* flying upon the head of the same.

9 The fift and last division of *Pikes* is led by the *Lieutenant Colonels*, and third *Captains Ensignes*, having likewise their own *colours* flying upon the head of the same, and the *Rear* of the *Pikes* is brought up by the third *Captain*.

10 The first division of *Muskettiers* on the left flank is led by the second *Captain*, and brought up by the fourth *Captains Lieutenant*.

11 The second upon the left is led by the third *Captains Lieutenant*, and brought up by the *Majors Lieutenant*.

12 The third division is led by the seventh *Captain*, and brought up by his own *Lieutenant*.

13 The fourth or last division of *Muskettiers* is led by the *Lieutenant Colonels Lieutenant*, and the *Rear* of the *Regiment* is brought up by the *Lieutenant Colonel*.

Notwithstanding, I have thus laid down the manner of the Divisions, with the placing of the Officers, there are also from all these divisions both of the *Pikes* and *Muskettiers*, subdivisions drawn off upon the *long-march* betwixt every fift or fixt *file* as they can equally divide them, with even proportions to march. And for the leading of such divisions there are *Serjeants* cast in that properly belong unto them which do lead, and bring them up, so that upon this account they make in their *long-regiment all-march* some thirty divisions, by reason, as I conceive, upon any *Alt*, or convenient place of drawing them all up even a brest, the *Serjeants* as well as the rest of the superiour Officers may be helpfull to bring up the *file-leaders* again as at first into their proper places. And thus far I have endeavoured for the satisfaction of all ingenuous Souldiers to set forth the manner of *Collonell Rainsborough's Regiment* of their drawing up, disposing of *colours*, and placing of Officers, as was the Observation of my ever honour'd Friend, and most exquisite knowing Souldier *Thomas Walker*, one of the *Captains* of the same *Regiment*, and a true lover of the *Military Art*, who friendly communicated to me the practise of their *Regiment*. Which although it differs from the drawing up of all others in our *Army* (as I am inform'd, they varying in one kind or other by their severall ways) I question not, but this may be as good as any of the rest, which I leave to the judgement of the curious searchers into this *Art*; whilst I proceed to shew the *Figures* following.

CHAP. XVIII.

A third way of drawing up a Regiment of ten Companies, after the manner used amongst the Swedes.

THe Companies meeting altogether, whether it be in the *Alarm* place, otherwise at their generall *Rendezvous*, where they have ground and room sufficient enough for their drawing up; The *Major* appointing forth unto the *Lieutenant Collonels* Company a place most convenient to stand, he draws all the rest of the Companies upon the left of him after this manner. The seventh and the second *Captain*, then the *Colonel*, after him the sixth, fourth, and first *Captain*, then the *Major*, after him the fifth, and third *Captain*, who closes up the left of the whole *Regiment*, the figures of their *dignity*, standing after this manner.

6: 8: 3: 4: 7: | 9: 1: 5: 10: 2.

28

27

Here you may perceive they follow a rule to *ballance* their number of *dignity* as neer as they can, carrying their odd number on the left *half-rank*, and not upon the right, for these reasons, as, I conceive, following. Their *Regiments* being so full of men, they draw them up for the most part into three *Squadrons*, or grand *Divisions*, giving unto the *Lieutenant Collonel* the right *wing*, the *Major* the left, and the *Colonel*, the *Main-battail*. The *Collonels* grand *Division* consists of the four middle Companies, where you are to take notice, being drawn off some ten paces cleer from the rest, they stand after this manner by way of figure 4: 7: 9: 1. The *Lieutenant Collonels* *Division* after this manner, 5: 10: 2. and the *Majors* after this kind, 6: 8: 3. Wherein I do observe in each grand *Division* this rule, that by succession and degrees they put the best *Souldiers* upon the right, and the second according to course upon the left, and the rest between them. As first, the *Collonel* being the chiefest man of honour is placed upon the right of his *Squadron*, next to his left is the sixth and fourth *Captain*, and the closing up of his grand *Division*, is placed the first or eldest *Captain*. The *Lieutenant Collonel* being the second man of honour is likewise placed upon the right of his *Squadron*, and next to his left the seventh *Captain*, his grand *Division* being closed up by the second *Captain*. In the next place, the *Major*, he being the third man of honour, is placed upon the right of his *Squadron*, and upon his left, the fifth *Captain*, and his grand *Division* is closed up upon the left by the third *Captain*. So that you may observe in the closing up of every *Division*, that as every *Field-Officer* is upon the right of their *Squadrons*, so they take by degrees upon the out-moſt of their left to close their *Divisions*, the *Captains* according to their degrees by succession. As first, and more cleerly, the *Collonel* takes the eldest *Captain* to him on his left, who will aptly fall in to lead his *Body of pikes*, and *colours*; the *Lieutenant Collonel* takes the second *Captain*, for to lead his *Stand of pikes* and *colours*; the third *Captain* being placed upon the left of the out-moſt part of the *Majors Squadron*, to lead likewise his *colours*, and *Body of pikes*. And further if you observe the number of *worth*, and *dignity*, that the right *wing* hath with the left, you will finde them to be equally ballanced, and to be 17 a like in number. Now in respect there cannot be an equall *Division* of the *colours* by threes, there is very good reason that the odd should be placed in the *Collonels Squadron*, who is *Commander in chiefe*, and to whom it properly belongs unto.

In the next place, I shall shew you how to draw them forth in a *regimentall* way; the four middle Companies being advanced forward ten paces cleer from the three out-moſt Companies, may stand, then draw forth the *Pikes* of each *Squadron*, untill they be ten foot cleer of their *Muskettiers*, then close *Pikes* into the midſt in their *files* in each *Division*, and they will be in three *Bodies*, after close the *Muskettiers* into the midſt^e to order, then sub-divide them in as equall a way as you can, and let them move up upon the right, and left, and flank each *Body of Pikes*. Then let the *Major* examine the *files* in the *Collonels Division*, how many they exceed in number the other two, and he will finde twelve *files* of *Muskettiers*, and six *files* of *Pikes*, more then in the rest. Now to make them

Collonel.

6 Captain Eldest Capt.



4 Caprai n

Ca.Lieu.

this Squadr. contains 15 files of Mus.	This Squadron contains 22 files of Pikes.	this Squadr. contains 15 files of Mus.
--	---	--

4 Capt.Lieu. EldestCap. Cap.Lieu. sixth Cap.Lieu. bringer up.

fix files of Mus. ketiers

fix files of Mus. ketiers

The Major.

Lieuten.Col.

The 3 Captain.

The 2 Captain.



5 Captain

Major's Lieure.

this Squadr. contains 15 files of Mus.	This Squad. contains 22 files of pikes	this Squadr. contains 15 files of Mus.
--	--	--

5 Cap.Lieu. 3 Cap.Lieu.

fix file of Mus. ketiers

fix files of Mus. ketiers



7 Captain

Lieut. Colle. Lieur.

this Squadr. contains 15 files of Mus.	This Squad. contains 22 files of Pikes.	this Squadr. contains 15 files of Mu.
--	---	---------------------------------------

7 Captain 2 Captain Lieuren. Lieure.

fix file of Mus. ketiers

fix files of Mus. ketiers

them equally like in each *Squadron*, let him take off from each perticuler Company of the *Collonels Squadron*, one file of *Pi'es*, and place two of those four in the midtt of the *Lieutenant Collonels Squadron*, and the remaining two in the midtt of his own *Squadron*, which being done each Body of *Pikes* will have in it 22 files. After let him take off from each Company two files of *Muskettiers*, which will be eight files, and let him place two files in the midtt of each flank of *Muskettiers*, both in the *Divisions* of the *Lieutenant Collonels*, and his own, and then there will be in each perticuler *division* of *Muskettiers* 21 files. This being likewise a very good way to draw up a *Régiment* of so great a number of men, I was unwilling to passe it by, but to present it unto the view of all loving Souldiers, which will more fuller appear in the figure following (*Folio 167*) in which figure I shall shew the severall places of the *Captains*, and their *Lieutenants*, where they are to lead, and where to bring up.

But before the former figure be drawn up, it will be convenient for the *Major* to take off from every Company four files of *Muskettiers*, (excepting the *Collonels*) and move them down by 12 files a piece some ten foot cleer of the *Rear* of *Pikes* of each *division*, and then close them in their files inward to order, and face them after to the *Front*, and they will stand there ready upon all occasions to be *Reserves* unto the *Wings*, or any other part of the Body, or to be *Convoys* to fetch in *Victuall*, *Ammunition*, or any thing else that shall be wanting unto the *Régiment*. I shall not need to draw any other Figure of *Battail* from this, they standing in a very good form to fire upon, opening every five files cleer from each other six foot that the *Muskettiers* may have room enough, to fall off, and to move down in the *Rear* of themselves, after such time their *ranks* have fired. Neither shall I need to give any further reasons for the placing of the Officers, in respect it lyes cleer and easie to the view of every ingenuous Souldier to apprehend. As for matter of *marching*, if they have ground sufficient, it will be very gracefull to them for to preserve this figure; but if they have not room, but must be constrain'd to draw off, and *march* in perticuler *divisions* it will be convenient to keep this *decorum*, if the *Collonel* thinks fit to change places every day, after this manner. He that leads the *Van-guard* one day, falls off to the *Rear*, and bring up the *Rear-ward*; and he that before led the *Main-battail*, comes to lead the *Van*, and he that led the *Rear-ward*, comes to be in the place of the *Main-battail*. And thus they change, and take their turns by course, to lead the *Van*, the *Battail*, and the *Rear-ward*. They ought likewise in their *March* to have thirty foot of ground distance betwixt each grand *Division*, and when they have ground sufficient, they may draw up again into their first figure. Now in respect I purpose to go on upon the next drawing up of a *Régiment* of 12 Companies, I shall break off to discourse any more of this. For the reducing of them again into Companies, it will be easie, let the *Serjeants* of each perticuler Company fetch off those men of theirs which were drawn off for *Reserves*, and to make the *Squadrons* even in number, bring them to joyn with their own men; then let every *Captain* take off his *Pikes* and *Muskettiers*, and compleat them up into one Body, they will be ready to receive Orders, and to be in a condition for *marching* away, either to their *Quarters*, or other duties, which they shall be appointed unto by their *Major*.

CHAP. IX.

The way of drawing up a Regiment consisting of 12 Companies, the nine Captains, having 18 Files in each Company, and the three Field-officers every one them 24 Files, whereof, there are two thirds of Muskettiers, and one of Pikes, in each perticuler Company, amounting in all to 1404 men.

THe Major having convenient place, he first orders where the *Colonels Company* is to stand, and after draws all the rest of the Companies upon the left of him, after this manner. The ninth, the fourth, the third, the sixth, and the first, *Captains*; then the Major next the seventh, the fifth, the second, and the eighth *Captains* and the out-most of all upon the left, the *Lieutenant Colonels Company*, in manner of the dignity of a *Rank*, as they thus stand.

2: 11: 5: 8: 10: 3:] 4: 9: 6: 7: 12: 1.

39.

39.

The *dignity* of places cannot be better stated, then in this of 12 Companies, as first, the right *half-ranks* is equall with the left in number of *dignity*. Again, divide them into three parts, and their number of *dignity* falls out to carry a long with it an equall number of 26 all even a like. Consider likewise, the stating of every *Captain* in the *Regiment*, and they are qualified equall throughout, the best, and the youngest *Souldiers* joyned together, as by examining them how they stand by two's, their number of *worth* and *dignity* throughout carries 13 all equall a like. In the next place, draw forth all the *Pikes*, and ingrosse them into two Bodies, then divide the *Muskettiers* into four parts, and move them up, and flank those *Standes* of *Pikes*, and they will be in two grand *Divisions*; then place the Officers after this manner; beginning first with the *Colonels division*, make two *divisions* of *Muskettiers* in his *Van*, let the first be led by the *Captain Lieutenant*, and be brought up by his *Bringer-up*, let the next *division* of *Muskettiers* be led by the fourth *Captains Lieutenant*, and brought up by the third *Captains Lieutenant*; let the *Pikes* be divided into three *divisions*, the *Colours* flying two and two upon the head of them, let the first *division* be led by the eldest *Captain*, and brought up by the ninth *Captains Lieutenant*, let the next *division* be led by the sixth *Captain*, and brought up by his own *Lieutenant*, let the last *division* be led by the fourth *Captain*, and the whole Body of *Pikes* be brought up by the ninth *Captain*. Then let the *Rear-guard* of the *Colonels division* be led by such observations as is set forth in other *Regiments* by the third *Captain*, and brought up by the first *Capt. Lieut.*

Having placed the Officers in the first grand *Division*, he may proceed unto the next, let the first *division* of *Muskettiers* be led by the *Majors Lieutenant*, and brought up by the fifth *Captains Lieutenant*. Let the *Pikes* be divided into three parts, the *Colours* likewise flying, two and two upon the head of them; then let the first *division* be led by the fifth *Captain*, and brought up by the eighth *Captains Lieutenant*, next let the second *division* be led by the eighth *Captain*, and brought up by the seventh *Captains Lieutenant*; Lastly, let the third *division* be led by the second *Captain*, and brought up by his own *Lieutenant*, let the last *division* of *Muskettiers* be led by the seventh *Captain*, and brought up by the *Lieutenant Colonels Lieutenant*; The *Colonel* is to be on the head of his *division*, and the *Lieutenant Colonel* upon the head of his, and the *Major* between them both in the *Front*. The Officers before they are thus placed, are to have their grand *divisions* of both *Armes* equally ballanced for number of *worth*, observing still the former rules in the execution of the same. It might be here expected I should shew reasons for the thus placing of the Officers, after this manner; but to satisfy such, if they please but to observe and take notice of the reasons given in the former *Regiments*, which will give satisfaction unto this, carrying with it the same order and way. And likewise it might be expected, that I should here set forth a figure for the thus drawing them up as before exprest, and placing of the severall Officers. But since this *Regiment* falls out to be so full in number, I shall set it forth after the manner of drawing up a *Brigade*, according to the *Swedish* practise.

CHAP. XX.

The manner of drawing up a Regiment, according to the Swedish Brigade.

After that the *Major* hath plac'd the *Lieutenant Colonels* Company in such a convenient place, that he may draw all the rest up on the left of him, he thus proceeds in bringing up the Companies; he first places to him the eighth *Captain*, then the fifth, after that the second, then the *Colonels* Company, next to him the ninth *Captain*, then the sixth *Captain*, and first *Captain*, after the *Majors*, then the seventh *Captain*, after the fourth *Captain*, then upon the out-moſt part of the left, is placed the third *Captain*, in manner and form, as they thus stand.

6 : 7 : 10 : 3 : 4 : 9 : | 12 : 1 : 5 : 8 : 11 : 2.

39

39

Having thus far proceeded, he may command the four out-moſt Companies upon each *Flank*, to advance forward ſome ten paces cleer from the four middle Companies, then let them ſtand, and after let him draw forward the *Pikes* cleer from the *Muskettiers*, and cloſe their *files* outward to order, then let the *Muskettiers* be divided into four parts, their *files* being cloſed to order, let them move forward, and flank thoſe two Bodies of *Pikes*. After in the ſame manner move forward the *Pikes* in the four middle Companies untill they be cleer of the *Muskettiers*, and cloſe their *files* into the miſt to order, and divide their *Muskettiers*, into two parts, and let them move forward, and flank that Body of *Pikes*, and then they will ſtand in three *Squadrons*, or grand *Diviſions*, their *dignities* ſtanding after this manner in the *Colonels diviſion*, thus, 4 : 9 : 12 : 1. In the *Lieutenant Colonels diviſion*, thus, 5 : 8 : 11 : 2. and in the *Majors*, thus, 6 : 7 : 10 : 3. So that you may perceive this to be a very good way amongſt the reſt, each perticuler *Squadron* bearing the number of 26, and having unto every one of them their *dignities* and *worſhs* equally divided, and ſtated a like. In the next place, the *Major* ought to inquire of the number of men they carry in each *diviſion* of both *Armes*, where as firſt, he ſhall finde in the *Colonels Squadron*, to have in it 26 *files* of *Pikes*, and 52 *files* of *Muskettiers*, and examining all the reſt, they will fall out to the ſame proportion of number. So that in each *diviſion* there conteines, whether they be *Pikes*, or *Muskettiers*, to have in every perticuler thereof 78 *files*. In the next place he ſhall do well to appoint firſt unto them their ſeverall places to lead, and bring up ; and firſt, of the *Colonels* grand *Diviſion*, he being on the head thereof, the *Captain Lieutenant* leading the firſt *diviſion* of *Muskettiers* in his *Squadron*, being brought up by his *Bringer-up* ; the firſt two *Colours*, and his halfe Body of *Pikes* to be led by the eldeſt *Captain*, and brought up by the ninth *Captains Lieutenant*, the next two *Colours*, and halfe Body of *Pikes* to be led by the ninth *Captain*, and brought up by the eldeſt *Captains Lieutenant*, the laſt *diviſion* of *Muskettiers* in his *Squadron* to be led by the ſixt *Captain*, and brought up by his own *Lieutenant*. The firſt *diviſion* of *Muskettiers* in the *Lieutenant Colonels Squadron*, is led by his own *Lieutenant*, and brought up by the eighth *Captains Lieutenant*, his firſt two *Colours*, and halfe Body of *Pikes* is led by the ſecond *Captain*, and the next two *Colours*, and halfe Body of *Pikes*, is led by the eighth *Captain*, and brought up by the ſecond *Captains Lieutenant*, his laſt *diviſion* of *Muskettiers* is led by the fifth *Captain*, and brought up by his own *Lieutenant* ; himſelfe ſtanding as the *Colonel* doth, upon the head of his *Squadron*. The firſt *diviſion* of *Muskettiers* in the *Majors Squadron* (himſelfe being upon the head) is led by his own *Lieutenant*, and brought up by the ſeventh *Captains Lieutenant*, his firſt two *Colours*, and halfe Body of *Pikes* is led by the third *Captain*, and the next two *Colours*, and halfe Body of *Pikes*, is led by the ſeventh *Captain*, and brought up by the third *Captains Lieutenant*, his laſt *diviſion* of *Muskettiers* is led by the fourth *Captain*, and brought up by his *Lieutenant*, as in the next place, in the Figure ſet forth in Folio. 170, more fully appeareth.

They

1st Captain

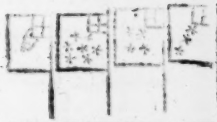
2nd Captain

1st Lieutenant

2nd Lieutenant

3rd Lieutenant

4th Lieutenant



1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th	9th	10th	11th	12th	13th	14th	15th	16th	17th	18th	19th	20th	21st	22nd	23rd	24th	25th	26th	27th	28th	29th	30th	31st	32nd	33rd	34th	35th	36th	37th	38th	39th	40th	41st	42nd	43rd	44th	45th	46th	47th	48th	49th	50th	51st	52nd	53rd	54th	55th	56th	57th	58th	59th	60th	61st	62nd	63rd	64th	65th	66th	67th	68th	69th	70th	71st	72nd	73rd	74th	75th	76th	77th	78th	79th	80th	81st	82nd	83rd	84th	85th	86th	87th	88th	89th	90th	91st	92nd	93rd	94th	95th	96th	97th	98th	99th	100th
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	-------

1st Sergeant

2nd Sergeant

3rd Sergeant

4th Sergeant

5th Sergeant

6th Sergeant

7th Sergeant

8th Sergeant

1st Captain

2nd Captain

3rd Captain

4th Captain



1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th	9th	10th	11th	12th	13th	14th	15th	16th	17th	18th	19th	20th	21st	22nd	23rd	24th	25th	26th	27th	28th	29th	30th	31st	32nd	33rd	34th	35th	36th	37th	38th	39th	40th	41st	42nd	43rd	44th	45th	46th	47th	48th	49th	50th	51st	52nd	53rd	54th	55th	56th	57th	58th	59th	60th	61st	62nd	63rd	64th	65th	66th	67th	68th	69th	70th	71st	72nd	73rd	74th	75th	76th	77th	78th	79th	80th	81st	82nd	83rd	84th	85th	86th	87th	88th	89th	90th	91st	92nd	93rd	94th	95th	96th	97th	98th	99th	100th
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	-------

1st Sergeant

2nd Sergeant

3rd Sergeant

4th Sergeant

5th Sergeant

6th Sergeant

4 Captain.

4 files
of mu
skett.

Serjeant Major.

7 Capt.

3 Cap.

Majors Lieu.

4 files
of mu
skett.



4 files of mu skett.	4 files of mu skett.	4 files of mu skett.	This Squadron con- tains 26 Files of Pikes	4 files of mu skett.	4 files of mu skett.	4 files of mu skett.
----------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------	--	----------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------

Third Capt. Lieu.

4 files
of mu
skett.

4 Capt. Lieu.

4 files
of mu
skett.

4 files
of mu
skett.

4 files
of mu
skett.

7 Capt. Lieu

4 files
of mu
skett.

6 Captain

4 files
of mu
skett.

Collonel.

9. Captain.



4 files of mu skett.	4 files of mu skett.	4 files of mu skett.	This Squadron c ontains 26 Files of Pikes.
----------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------	--

1 Cap. Lieu. 9 Cap.

4 files
of mu
skett.

6 Capt. Lieu.

4 files
of mu
skett.

4 files
of mu
skett.

4 files
of mu
skett.

Place this between Page 1

5 Capt.

4 files
of mu
skett.

Lieuten. Col. Lieu.

Lieutenant Coll.

4 files
of mu
skett.

8 Captain 2 Captain.



4 files of mu skett.	4 files of mu skett.	4 files of mu skett.	This Squadron con- tains 26 files of Pikes.	4 files of mu skett.	4 files of mu skett.	4 files of mu skett.
----------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------	---	----------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------

2 Captain Lieutenant.

4 files
of mu
skett.

5 Capt. Lieu.

4 files
of mu
skett.

4 files
of mu
skett.

4 files
of mu
skett.

8 Capt. Lieu.

4 files
of mu
skett.

Captain Lieute.

4 files
of mu
skett.

Colonel.

1 Captain



quadrant co- s 26 Files Pikes.	4 files of mu skett.	4 files of mu skett.	4 files of mu skett.
--------------------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------

9 Capt. Lieu.

4 files
of mu
skett.

4 files
of mu
skett.

Cap. Lieu. bringer-up

4 files
of mu
skett.

Lieutenant Colonel

Lieutenant Colonel

2 Capt.

1st Lieut.
2nd Lieut.
3rd Lieut.

1st Lieut.
2nd Lieut.
3rd Lieut.

1st Lieut.
2nd Lieut.
3rd Lieut.

1st Lieut.	2nd Lieut.	3rd Lieut.	4th Lieut.	5th Lieut.	6th Lieut.	7th Lieut.	8th Lieut.	9th Lieut.	10th Lieut.
------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	-------------

Lieutenant Colonel

1st Lieut.
2nd Lieut.
3rd Lieut.

1st Lieut.
2nd Lieut.
3rd Lieut.

1st Lieut.
2nd Lieut.
3rd Lieut.

1st Lieut.
2nd Lieut.
3rd Lieut.

100000
MUSEUM

1st Lieut.
2nd Lieut.
3rd Lieut.

Lieutenant Colonel

1st Lieut.
2nd Lieut.
3rd Lieut.

1st Lieut.
2nd Lieut.
3rd Lieut.

1st Lieut.	2nd Lieut.	3rd Lieut.	4th Lieut.	5th Lieut.	6th Lieut.	7th Lieut.	8th Lieut.	9th Lieut.	10th Lieut.
------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	-------------

1st Lieut.
2nd Lieut.
3rd Lieut.

Lieutenant Colonel

and etc.

They standing according to the former directions in three Bodies of *Pikes* flanked with *Muskettiers*, before they come to the Figure set forth, you must command in each grand *Division*, the six in-most files of *Muskettiers* next the *Pikes*, to face about, and to march six paces clear of the *Rear*, and then close them inward to order. Afterward open every four files outward to open order, of those 12 files, and let the middle *division* there face about, and move down six foot clear of the *Rear*, and after face to their Leader. Then there will remain 20 files of *Muskettiers* upon the flanks of each Body of *Pikes*; after move forward the eight middle files of particular *division* of *Muskettiers*, some ten foot before the *Front*. Then command the left half-ranks, or the four files of *Muskettiers* upon the left of those *divisions* drawn forth to face about, and to move down ten foot clear of the *Rear*, and after face to the *Front*. Then let the 12 remaining files of *Muskettiers* close to the *Pikes* to open order, and let every four files of those remaining 12 upon the flanks open outward six foot of ground betwixt each four files, and move the *Front* and *Rear divisions* of *Muskettiers* just against the midst of those three *divisions* of *Muskettiers* that are the *Flankers* to the *Pikes*, and they will stand in the figure as it is placed in Folio 170.

They standing now in a perfect order of a *Brigade*, the number of men in this *Regiment* allowing it in a full manner according to the small *Brigades* of the *Swedes*, I shall not need to point out of what service this figure, or drawing up may be; in respect there is no ingenious Souldier but may clearly perceive they stand in a very good order to fight against an enemy: their *Commanders* being appointed forth to manage it accordingly. Therefore I shall leave it to the practice of such who in time of need shall have occasion to make use of it, and in the next place shew the manner of reducing them againe into Companies.

First move forward those 12 files of *Muskettiers* in the rear of each body of *Pikes*, six to the right, and six to the left, next to the out-side of their own body of *Pikes*; After command the rear *divisions* of *Muskettiers* to advance forward upon the left of those *divisions* of *Muskettiers* in the front, then face them about, and move them down into the midst of those *Muskettiers* that were the *Flankers*. After let every *Captain* draw off his *Pikes* and *Muskettiers*, and ingross them into particular Companies, and they will then be ready to march away to their severall quarters; and here I shall conclude concerning a *Regiment* of twelve Companies.

CHAP. XXI.

The manner of drawing up a Brigade or Tertia, being a third part of an Army, according to the practise of the Netherlands, under the command of the Prince of Orange.

BEfore I shall begin to draw up this *Tertia*, *Army*, or *Brigade*; I shall set down the observation of Coll. Hen. Hexam, in his Book treating of the Office of the three *Serjeant Majors* of the *Tertia*, otherwise called the three *Field Corporalls*. His words are these:

The States Army by order of his Highnesse is divided upon a March into three Brigades, or Tertia's, and a Serjeant Major of a Tertia, being one of the great Corporalls of the Field, receives his Order immediate from the Lord Generall, or the Lord Martiall, but most commonly of the Serjeant Major Generall of the Army, how he shall form and order his Brigade or Tertia, and how many Regiments of Horse and Foot, are to march under it, and with what Ordnance and Baggage. He assignes and shews him the place where they are to draw out into Battalia, and receives orders from the Serjeant Maior Generall, whether they are to march in the Van-guard, the Battail, or the Rear. So that in marching in every one of these he shall attend upon his Brigade and severall Divisions, and in the absence of the Serjeant Major Generall, see that the order of marching and embattailing be duly kept and observed. And every one of these three Serjeants, Majors of Brigades, are to be at the command of the Collonell Generall, or he that leads or commands that Brigade or Tertia, and is to be sent to the Lord Generall, Lord Martiall, or Serjeant Major Generall upon any occasion belonging to the service.

These three Majors of the Tertia's are to be lodged as near the Serjeant Major General as conveniently may be, and those three which attend upon the Van-guard, the Battail or Rear, which

the Serjeant Major shall make choice of ground for the placing of Guards, and assigne them to the Serjeant Majors of every Regiment. They are to go the Round, and to visite the Guard commonly every night, and at such an houre as the Serjeant Major shall appoint them either by day or night.

If any of these three Serjeant Majors of the Field shall finde any want of powder, Ammunition, or victuals, either in the Van-guard, Battail, or Reer, as well upon the March, as when the Troops are quartered, or during fight, he is presently to advertise the Serjeant Major Generall of the Field with the said wants. And then by his direction shall go with an Officer of every Regiment of that Tertia, to the Generall, or Lieutenant of the Ordnance, or to the Connellary Generall of the Ammunition, or Victuals.

A Serjeant Major of a Tertia, to conclude, having received his Orders from the Lord Generall, the Maittiall, or Serjeant Major Generall, gives them to the Serjeant Majors of every perticuler Regiment. But because the Word and Orders are to be sent to Quarters far distant one from another, the Serjeant Major of every Regiment cannot come conveniently to the Serjeant Major Generall. Therefore the Majors of every Brigade are to attend every morning, and evening, upon the Serjeant Major Generall, to receive their Orders, and to carry the word to the severall Quarters, whether the Serjeant Majors of Regiments comes to him, and from him receives the Word, and Orders.

The drawing up of *Brigades* in the next place comes to be handled after the way of the *Hollanders*; therefore, first, take notice, that *Brigades* are not tied to a set number of *Companies*, or *Regiments*, but are ordered according to the severall strengths of an Army. As sometimes they consist of 12 *Companies*, some of two *Regiments*, others of three, or four, having in them not a like number of *Companies* or men, which ought accordingly unto the severall divisions of a *Brigade* to be ballanced a like, both in number of men, dignity, and worth, as is in perticuler *Regiments* fully set forth. And in respect that severall divisions make a *Brigade*, and that according to the disposition of an Army, all the Officers and Souldiers are divided into three parts, called *Brigades*, or *Tertia's*, each of them having a severall name, to wit, the *Van-guard*, *Battail*, and *Reer-guard*. Now that *Tertia* which is to march first, is called the *Van-guard*, that which marcheth next in the middle, the *Battail*, and that which comes up last, the *Reer*. Every one of these upon march as was formerly expressed in the *Swedish Brigade*, take their turns interchangeably; for the second day of the *March*, the *Battail* becomes the *Van-guard*, and the *Reer* the second day the *Battail*, and the third day, the *Tertia*, that had first the *Reer*, is become the *Van-guard*. So likewise, there ought to be in every perticuler *Brigade*, or *Tertia*, a *Van-guard*, *Battail*, and *Reer-guard*, to each of them, which with more conveniency may be orderly brought to fight by him that shall be Commander in chiefe for the relieving each other, according as occasion shall require.

In the next place, for a *Brigade*, I shall point forth four *Regiments*, having in them eight *Companies* a piece, after the manner of a *Regiment* of eight formerly set down, which amounts to 3888 men, which number may serve for a third part of an Army of foot, and make up a very compleat and sufficient *Brigade*. And I shall order in this *Brigade* to have in it four divisions, that is to say, a *Van-guard*, *Battail*, and *Reer-guard*, represented in the three first *Regiments*, but the fourth shall be a *reserve*, standing in the *Reer* of the *Main-battail*, or *Brigade*, whereby upon all occasions of the other retreating; or being driven backward, that *Regiment* may move up to relieve each part thereof that shall be distressed. But upon the *long-march* of this *Brigade*, the two middle *Regiments* according to their order of dignity, are to make the *Battail*, which in the Figure were made the *Van-guard*, and *Reer-guard*, and that which formerly was the *Van-guard*, is become the *Battail*, and the *Reer-guard* the *Reserve*; but where they have ground sufficient it will be better to march in that forme of *Battails* set down according to the figure, *Folio 176*.

This *Brigade* consisting of four *Regiments*, must be drawn up according to the dignity of their *Captains*, but with this alteration of Armes, for the former *Regiments* consisting of two divisions, this hath but one, after this manner.

First, when the *Captains Companies* are all drawn up into an even brest in their true dignity, then let the *Pikes* be all drawn forth, and ingrossed into one Body, after let the *Muskettiers* be closed in their files into the midst into another Body, after let those *Muskettiers* as

[Faint, illegible markings]



1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----





2 Captain. Major

Lieuten. Col.

2 Capt. Lieut. 4 Capt

this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.

This Squadron 54 Files of

L.Col. 5 Capt. 3 Captain 3 Capt. Lieut. Lieut. Li



2 Captain Majors Lieuten. 1 Captain

Lieuten. Col.

2 Capt. Lieut. 4 Capt

this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.

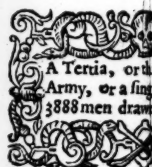
This Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes.

Colonel.

1 Capt. 3 Capt. Lieut.

this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.

L.Col. 5 Capt. 3 Capt. 3 Capt. 4 Capt. 1 Capt. Cap. Lie. Lieut. Lieut. bringer up



A Tertia, or the Army, or a single 3888 men drawn

2 Captain. Major

Lieuten. Col.

2 Capt. Lieut. 4 Capt.

this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.

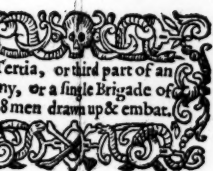
This Squadron 54 Files

L.Col. 5 Capt. 3 Captain 3 Capt. Lieut. Lieut. Li



Place this between

Major's Lieuten. 1 Captain.
Colonel.
Capt. Lieuten.
5 Capt. Lieuten.
this Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes.
this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.
3 Captains Lieut. 4 Captains Lieut. 1 Cap. Lieut. 1 Cap. Lieut. bringer up



tertia, or third part of an
ny, or a single Brigade of
8 men drawn up & combat.

2 Captain. Major's Lieutenant 1 Captain.
Lieuten. Col. Colonel.
2 Capt. Lieut. 4 Capt. 5 Capt. Capt. Lieut.
this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk. This Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.
1. Col. Lieut. 5 Capt. Lieut. 3 Capt. 3 Capt. Lieut. 4 Capt. Lieut. 1 Capt. Ca. Lieut. Lieut. bringer up



Major's Lieutenant 1 Captain
Colonell.,
Cap. Lieut.
5 Capt. Lieut.
this Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes. this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.
3 Captains Lieut. 4 Captains Lieut. 1 Cap. Lieut. 1 Cap. Lieut. bringer up



as neer as is possible be divided into two parts, (if there should be an odd file, let it be carried to the right) and let them move up, and flank the *Pikes* which will make up one compleat *Battalia*, or grand *Division*. Now let the Officers be placed according to the manner in the next place, as in every *Regiment* shall be set forth, which may be a satisfaction unto the Souldiers, to know a third way of drawing up, and placing the Officers of a *Regiment* consisting of eight *Companies*. Four *Regiments* thus drawn up makes a compleat *Brigade*, to be ordered according to *dignity* in their *Regiments* after this manner. The chiefeft Commanders *Regiment*, or eldest *Colonels*, is to be on the right of the *Brigade*, the next man of honour to be on the left, the third to be on the right of the second, and the fourth on the left of the first, after the manner of these figures, 2. 3. 4. 1. wherein it cleerly appears that their number of *worth* is equally divided. In the next place, as concerning Command, and ordering of such great Bodies into *Brigades*, the shortest and soonest way is the best, wherefore, command the out-moſt *Regiment* upon the right, or the *Van-guard* to advance forward 18 foot before the *Front*, then face to the left, and move until they stand straight against the midst of the two middle *divisions*, or *Main-battail* that was, then face to the *Front*, then let the out-moſt *Regiment* upon the left face about, and move down 24 foot cleer of the *Reer*, then face to the left, and move until they stand straight in the *Reer* of the two middle *Regiments*, or *Van-guard*, then face to the *Front*; next let the two middle *Regiments* move forth to the right and left, until they stand cleer for the *Reer-guard* or *Reserve* to come up, and relieve each part, as occasion shall require, they being all faced to the *Front* will stand in a compleat *Brigade*, as formerly was expressed. The former *Brigade* being imbattelled into so many *divisions*, and joyn'd so neer on the other, can best second & relieve each other, better then your great *Battalia's* which unwildy bodies being once broken, and routed, can hardly be rallied again, neither can they bring so many men to fight in that good order, as the lesser bodies will doe. As for example, three of these *Brigades*, or *Tertia's*, make a compleat Army of foot, the *Battail*, one of the *Tertia's* of the Army, being placed in the midst, that of the *Van-guard* may be drawn up on the right, and the *Reer* on the left flank of the *Battail*. The first *divisions* that are to fight are these that stand in an even line of the first range, and are so ordered, that if they should be over-charged, and forced to give ground, then the second range may move up, and relieve the first, and may give the second Charge against an Enemy, whilst the first move down into the midst, and rally again; or may move, and interchange ground with those that are the *Reserves*. The second range having fired, may be relieved by the third, who may move up into the ground of the first *divisions*, and their may take their turnes to give a third Charge, whilst the second *divisions* rally up again. And thus they may maintaine their fighting in this order, so long as there shall be just occasion: provided the *Muskettiers* make six foot ground intervall betwixt every five or six files, for their *ran's* to wheel off either to the right or left, and to rally themselves in good order in the *Reer* of their own *divisions*. There is likewise another way to make a *Brigade*, by ingressing all the *Pikes* of every *Regiment* into one Body, flanking them with *Muskettiers*; or by making them into two or three Stands of *Pikes*, and flanking each Body of *Pikes* with *Muskettiers*. But, I conceive, the former way to be one of the best, and chiefeft amongst them all; and therefore I shall spare the pains to make any other figure, having placed every Officer where he is to lead and where to bring up. And upon the *long-march* this rule must be observed in every *Regiment*, where they cannot march all a Brest, they must make in every *Regiment* seven *divisions*, three of *Pikes*, the first three *Colours* to fly upon the head of the first *division*, the next two *Colours* to fly upon the head of the second, and the three last upon the head of the third *division*; and they must likewise make two *divisions* of *Muskettiers* in the *Van* of their *Regiments*, and two *divisions* in the *Reer*, the Officers are accordingly placed down upon these *sub-divisions*, where to take their places both to lead, and to bring up. The *Regiments* are to march after this manner; first, his *Regiment* in the *Van*, who is Commander in chiefe, next to him the fourth man of honour, after him the third, these two making the *Battail*, and let the *Reer* be brought up be the second *Colonel*, or second man of honour, his *Regiment* likewise marching there; and here I shall conclude concerning a *Brigade*.

CHAP. XXII.

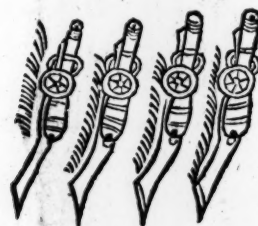
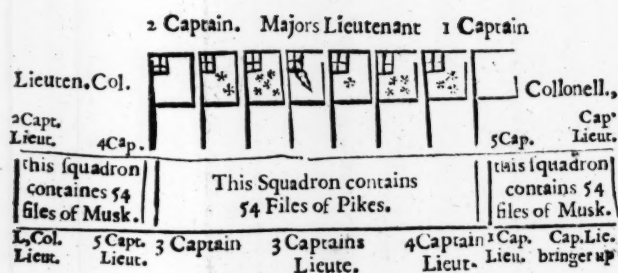
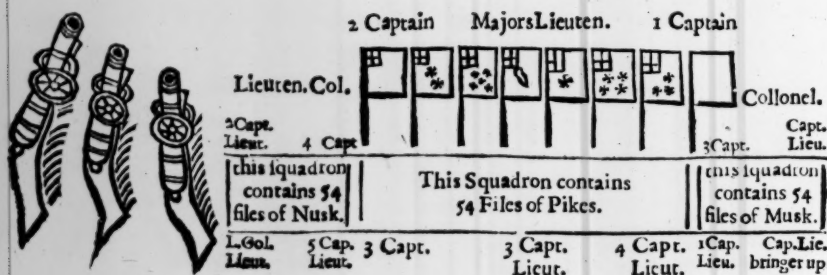
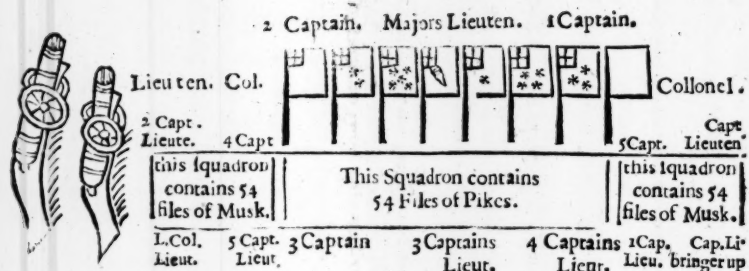
How to draw up an Army of twelve Regiments of Foot, and three of Horse, the Foot amounting unto 11664 Men, and the Horse unto 3000; in all 14664 Men.

THe drawing up of an Army most properly belongs to the *Serjeant Major General*, whose place and charge is of an high degree, his commands being full of action, and therefore ought to be a wise, grave, and able person, and an able experienced Souldier. In respect he hath the ordering and disposing of the *Divisions* and *Battalions*, according to that forme which the *Generall* shall command him. And upon all occasions he must be active, and stirring up and down, to spie out all advantages, which might offend an Enemy; and wisely to fore-see all disadvantages that may bring the *Troops* into any disorder or confusion. He hath absolute command over the three *Serjeant Majors* of the *Brigades*, otherwise called the three *Grand Corporals* of the Field, who are to be his assistants, and his mouth, as he is the mouth of the *Lord General*, or *Martiall* of the Field; and therefore must have a vigilant eye over all things, seeing that the *Generals* Command delivered to him be strictly kept, and observed, and withall, acquainting, and informing the three *Serjeant Majors* of the *Brigades* of the *Generals* pleasure, that they may forthwith put the same into execution.

Now the Method (that I shall observe,) shall be according to the forme of the former *Brigade*; wherefore, in the first place, the *Serjeant Major* shall do well to appoint out unto the eldest *Serjeant Major* of the *Brigades*, how to draw up that *Brigade* which shall be the *Battail*, wherein the *Lord Generals Regiment*, and the *Collonels*, is to be upon the right, and left of that *Brigade*, and betwixt them the youngest *Collonel*, and ninth *Collonel*, according unto this rule of dignity in the figure set forth, 4: 9: 12: 1. In the next place, let the next *Serjeant Major* of the *Brigades* in seniority draw up that which shall be the *Van-guard*, and place the second *Collonels Regiment* upon the right, and the fifth upon the left, and between them the eleventh and eighth *Collonels*, after this manner, of this figure, 5: 8: 11: 2. Let the last *Serjeant Major* draw up that *Brigade*, which shall be the *Reer*, and let him draw them up after this manner, the third *Collonels Regiment* upon the right, and upon the left, the sixth *Collonels*, and between them the tenth, and seventh *Collonels Regiment*, after this manner, 6: 7: 10: 3. This charge being given by the *Serjeant Major General*, unto the three *Serjeant Majors* of the three *Tertias*, or *Brigades*, how each perticular *Regiment* shall be drawn up, being every one single, and compared a like each to other, being rightly stated according to the rule of dignity avoiding thereby confusion and disorder. In the next place, for the better expedition in drawing up the Army, every *Serjeant Major* of each *Brigade* draws the former *Regiments* assigned unto them, unto such place as shall be appointed forth unto them by the *Serjeant Major General*, being helped, and assisted by the Field-officers of the same *Regiments*, the *Serjeant Major General* likewise being an assistant unto them all, seeing thereby all the Commands of the *Generall* rightly observed and fulfilled.

Having drawn up the 12 *Regiments* according to the former directions, let the *Serjeant Majors* of the *Brigades* order them to stand all even a breast according to the forme and figure of that single *Brigade* formerly set down. Wherein to every *Brigade* there will be a *Van-guard*, *Battail*, and *Reer-guard*, and *Reserves* to them all three. Next inquiry must be made of the severall strengths of the *Brigades*, some of them perhaps having many more files then the other, for remedy whereof, there must be files drawn forth (provided there be convenience of time) from each perticular *Company*, and *Brigade*, and added unto those which shall be weaker, to make their strengths equall a like. Next it lies in the breast of the *Lord General*, to appoint unto every one of these *Brigades* Commanders in chiefe, there being in every one of them Officers above the three *Field-Corporals*, or *Serjeant Majors* of *Brigades*. Wherefore, it is conceived, that he will appoint the most honourablest men to be Commanders thereof; as first, himselfe of that *Brigade*, which is the *Battail* in time of fight, the *Van-guard* to the *Martiall General*, and the *Reer-guard* either to the *Major General* or *Commissary General*. But whosoever the *Lord General*, shall appoint to be Commanders

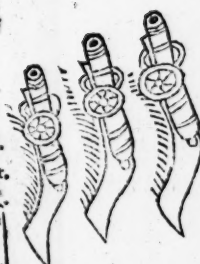
AN ARMY OF FOOT, OR THREE S



SINGLE BRIGADES, CONSISTING OF 11664



2 Capt. Lieut.		4 Capt.		5 Capt.		Capt. Lieut.	
this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.		This Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes		this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.			
L. Col. Lieut.	5 Capt. Lieut	3 Capt.	3 Capt. Lieut.	4 Capt. Lieut.	1 Capt. Lieut	Ca. Lieu. bringerup	



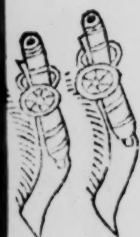
2 Capt. Lieut.		4 Capt.		5 Capt. Lieut.		3 Capt. Lieut.		3 Capt. Lieut.		4 Capt. Lieut.	
this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.		This Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes.		this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.							
L. Col. Lieut.	5 Capt. Lieut	3 Capt.	3 Capt. Lieut.	4 Capt. Lieut.	1 Capt. Lieut	Ca. Lieu. bringerup					

Let these three Sheets be pasted together at length, one

ES, CONSISTING OF 11664 MEN, DRAWN U



		2 Captain. Majors Lieuten.	
Lieuten. Col.			
2 Capt. Lieut.	4 Capt.		
this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.		This Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes.	
L. Col. Lieut.	5 Capt. Lieut.	3 Captain	3 Captains Lieut.



		2 Captain Majors Lieuten.		1 Captain	
Lieuten. Col.					Colonel.
2 Capt. Lieut.	4 Capt.				3 Capt. Lieut.
this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.		This Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes.		this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.	
L. Col. Lieut.	5 Cap. Lieut.	3 Capt.	3 Capt. Lieut.	4 Capt. Lieut.	1 Cap. Lieut. bringer up



		2 Captain. Majors Lieutenant	
Lieuten. Col.			
2 Capt. Lieut.	4 Cap.		
this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.		This Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes.	
L. Col. Lieut.	5 Capt. Lieut.	3 Captain	3 Captains Lieut.



three Sheets be pasted together at length, one after another, so that they may app

Lieuten. 1 Captain.



Colonel.

Capt. 5 Capt. Lieuten.

contains this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.

ins 4 Captains 1 Cap. Cap. Lie. 1 Lieut. Lieut. bringer up



ia.

2 Captain. Majors Lieutenant 1 Captain.

Lieuten.Col.

5 Capt. Lieut. 4 Capt.

this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.

L. Col. Lieut. 5 Capt. Lieut.



This Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes

3 Capt.

3 Capt. Lieut.

4 Capt. Lieut.

1 Capt. Ca. Lie. Lieut. bringer up

Colonel.

5 Capt. Capt. Lieut.

this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.



Lieuten.

5 Capt. Lieut. 4

this Squadron contains files of Musk.

L. Col. Lieut.

Lieutenant 1 Captain.




Colonel.

Cap. 5 Capt. Lieut.

contains this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.

4 Captains 1 Cap. Cap. Lie. Lieut. Lieut. bringer up






2 Captain. Maj
Lieuten. Col.
2 Capt. 4 Capt.
Lieut. 4 Capt.
this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.
This Squ... 54 File
L.Col. 5 Capt. 3 Captain 3
Lieut. Lieut.



Colonel.
Capt. Lieu.
adron
as 54
Musk.
a. Lieu.
ager up

2 Caprain Majors Lieuten. 1 Captain


Lieuten. Col.  Colonel.

2 Capt. 4 Capt. 3 Capt. 1 Capt.
Lieut. Lieut. Lieut. Lieut.

this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.	This Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes.	this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.
--	---	--

L.Col. 5 Capt. 3 Capt. 3 Capt. 4 Capt. 1 Capt. Cap. Lie.
Lieut. Lieut. Lieut. Lieut. Lieut. Lieut. bringer up



2 Captain. Maj
Lieuten. Col. 

2 Capt. 4 Capt.
Lieut. Lieut.

this Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.	This Squa... 54 File
--	----------------------

L.Col. 5 Capt. 3 Captain 3
Lieut. Lieut.



in. Majors Lieuten. 1 Captain.



This Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes. This Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.

tain 3 Captains 4 Captains 1 Cap. Cap. Li. Lieut. Lieut. bringer up



1 Captain. Majors Lieutenant 1 Captain.



tain. Majors Lieutenant 1 Captain.



This Squadron contains 54 Files of Pikes. This Squadron contains 54 files of Musk.

tain 3 Captains 4 Captains 1 Cap. Cap. Li. Lieut. Lieut. bringer up



Table with 2 columns and 10 rows. The text is mirrored and difficult to read, but appears to be a ledger or record book.



Small table with 2 columns and 2 rows.

Small table with 2 columns and 2 rows.

manders in chiefe, to them the *Serient Majors* of every perticuler *Brigade*, are to be servants, assisting them in all their Commands. These severall orders and directions, being thus equally divided amongst the Commanders of every *Brigade*, an Army may quickly be brought into any forme of Battail to fight against an enemy, according to the ground and scituation of the place, which may afford the best advantages for the same.

After this the *Generall* of the *Ordnance* his duty and care must be in the day of *battail*, to see that the *Ordnance* be well placed; for at such time his wisdom is most discern'd, keeping (with the assistance of his *Lieutenant*) the *Train of Artillery* together in good order. He must have a vigilant eye upon all accidents that may fall out, and make choise of such ground for their planting, as the *Generall* of the *Army*, and he shall think most fit and convenient. He must be carefull that all things be in a readinesse, putting the *Master Gunners*, *Gentlemen* of the *Ordnance*, and Commanders in minde of their duty, that they do their best endeavours, and acquit themselves like men. It is likewise partly his charge, to see that the whole Army be well provided with *Ammunition*, because the *Ammunition* marcheth under his *Train*. He must also be near the *Gen.* of the Army upon all occasions, to receive his directions and commands, and to know from him after what manner he will make his *battail*, that he may plant his *Ordnance* accordingly, finding out *kills* and *heights* to play over his own men. And when the Enemy shall present himselfe, and come up to charge, he must draw, and plant his *Ordnance*, as neer their horse as possible may be, to hinder them from breaking in upon the *divisions* of foot, taking a long with him *Saylours*, and *Pioneers*, to help to draw up the *Ordnance*, and sufficient *Guards* to defend them.

As concerning the planting of the *Ordnance*, when the *Battalia* is drawn up, they may be disposed off severall ways; as sometimes they are placed upon the head of the *Battalia*, others again, between them, by two and two, and others, by threes, upon the *flanks* and *wings* of the *Muskettiers*. Some are of opinion, that they ought to be planted upon the *flanks*, and in the *Rear* of the *Battalia*, by leaving a free place for *Armes* which may give no offence to their own men. But as concerning this last way, it might be answered; it can no way be expedient; for if an Enemy should perceive that the *Front* is left bare without *Ordnance*, it will give them cause to come up with more courage to fall upon the Charge. Therefore, the best way amongst the ancient experienc'd Souldiers, is, that the *Artillery* be divided, some here, some there, both before the *Front*, between the *Battalions*, and upon the *Flanks*, and to be placed some 50 or an 100 paces one from another, and then there will be no danger when the Enemy shall come up to *shock* to encounter you, or to offend our own men. Especially, when they are fastened to them by drawing *ropes*, and *iron rings*, that upon an instant they may be removed, and turn'd for the advantage of our own *Troops*, giving fire, as fast as they can charge and discharge against the Enemies *Troops*, it being a matter of great moment for the obtaining of a victory, and gaining the day from the Enemy.

But that many times the *Ordnance* cannot be planted in such convenient places as could be wished for, in respect an Army may be driven into such places, as the *Ordnance* must be planted according to the best ground it will afford, by reason of *woods*, *hills*, or *marshy grounds*, and such like disadvantageous places, may be oftentimes met withall, for which no certain rule may be given, but that the *Generall* by his wisdom and discretion may make choice of the best advantages which might annoy an Enemy most, and give the least offence to his own men, either by dazling them by the *Sun*, or by raising of the *dust*, observing the *winde* which drives the *smoak* both of the *Ordnance* and *small-shot* full upon them. To conclude, it is conceived, the best way for every *Captain* of the *Ordnance*, and *Master Gunner* to use some light *Field peeces* and small *Drakes*, which upon any occasion may be removed from one place to another, being with ease planted upon such places of advantage as may most annoy the Enemy.

In the next place, 3000 horse may be a good proportion for 10000 or 12000 foot, which ought to be equally divided in their *Troops*, and placed upon the *flanks* of the foot in such good order, as the *Troops* may come with conveniency to fight, for the relieving of each other. But in case you shall perceive the Enemies horse, as sometimes through necessity of ground, or by other politicall ends, may be inter-laced and placed between the

the intervals and divisions of their foot, it will be needfull then that we should observe the same form, and likewise have *horse* to come forth, and encounter with their *horse*, least they should break in upon our *divisions* of foot, which by this means, and good order, may be timely prevented; next follows the Figure of the Army, as before described, and ordered to be drawn up, *Folio 176.*

CHAP. XXIII.

The severall duties belonging to the Foot in a Regiment as followeth by degrees from a private Souldier unto a Collonel of the same: and first of a private Souldier.

A Private Souldier ought to be very active, not slothfull and idle, informing himself of his duty, learning from his Corporall, or other Officers the true use, and well handling of his armes, alway keeping them neat, clean, and well fixed. Upon the beat of the Drum he is to repair to his Colours, Squadron, or Company, upon the march he must observe his Leader, and his right, and left hand men, that he may march straight in file, and even in rank; in time of Exercise he must be silent in the body, well minding the words of command and directions which are given forth by the leader. He ought likewise to be well versed in all the ordinary words of command, and to mind the place wherein he stands, that he may the more readier move, and not be to seeke at such time when he shall be commanded, whether it be to face, double, counter-march, or wheel. He must inform himselfe of all the severall beats of the drum, as first of a Call, second a Troop, third a March, fourth a Preparative, fifth a Battle or Charge, sixth a Retreat, and also of the Revallay and the Tattoo.

By the first, he is summoned to hear present proclamation, or else commanded to repair to his colours, upon the beat of the second he is to advance his armes, and to close in rank, and file, to the distance of order, and to troop along unto such places, and services, as he shall be commanded unto, upon the hearing of the third he is presently to shoulder his arms, and to take his distance of six foot in rank, and three foot in file; upon the fourth he is to close both in rank and file, unto the fighting distance which is called order, and to prepare himself for skirmish; upon the beat of the next, he is undauntedly to move forward, boldly stepping in good order into the place of his fellow souldier that shall happen to fall down dead before him. Upon the beat of the last he must orderly fall back either for releife, or advantage of ground, or other pollicicall ends whereby he may draw the enemy into a snare. The first of the remaining two gives warning in the morning for some of the Sentinels to fall off, or to be taken in; the latter is used in the night to give notice unto the souldiers or others for their repairing to their severall guards, watches, and lodgings. To conclude, a private souldier ought to avoyd all quarrelling, mutinies, swearing, cursing, or lying, and to be content with his wages, and likewise to be a good husband in the well managing of his means, keeping himselfe neat and handsome in his apparell, avoyding drunkennels, and all manner of gaming, truly to serve and feare God, and to be obedient unto all the commands of his superiours, cheerfully going on upon all duties, and to be loving, kind, and courteous, unto all his fellow souldiers.

The duty of a Sentinel.

A Sentinel must be very vigilant, carefully casting his eyes about him, and harkning whether he heare the noyle or approach of any drawing neer him; which if he perceive, he is presently to command them to stand, presenting his Musket or Pike to their brest, and after calling his Corporal for to take the word, unlesse he should be commanded to come in silently. He is not to come off until he be relieved by the Corporall or Landskadoe.

His proper posture being a Muskettier is to have his Musket rested, and loaded with powder and bullet, his match cockt, and his pan guarded, being a pike-man, if he stand Sentinell in the night, he must have his pike cheek'd, if in the day, his pike ordered. Or it may be a very proper posture for a pikeman to stand sentinell with his pike in his left hand, holding it a little below the cheeks thereof, and with his sword drawn, being held in his right hand, which I leave to judge, or to be made use of according to discretion, and as occasion shall require.

of

Of a Gentleman of a Company.

A Gentleman of a company ought to have such worth in him as may make him capable to be a file-leader, or Captain of his file, and he more especially above the rest ought to be well skill'd in all the postures of such armes he weares, and at convenient times instructing and teaching his file in the neat and gracefull handling of their armes. He ought to be of an undaunted courage and gallant resolution, for the better example and imitation of the rest, whose worth and valour many times indears them so much into the favour of their Comanders that they raise them up to greater places of preferment. In the Low Countries a Gentleman of a Company hath his full pay, having nothing kept back for after reckonings, as common private souldiers have. At his first entrance he sometimes stands Sentinell to informe himselfe of the duties thereof; but most commonly he is placed to be a Sentinell per-due in time of imminent danger, either in the field or upon approaches. He is to lie perdue with his sword and pistoll, not removing from his place till he be relieved, nor is he to retreat for one man, but in case of more, then he is to fall back to the second; and discovering an enemy he is to come off betimes, and silently to give the alarm, whereby the Corps du Guard, or company may be provided for their own defence. A Gentleman of a Company doth many times goe the round with the Captain of the watch, or his fellow Gentlemen who are likewise rounders, either in the field, or in garrison, and doe give the Corporals of the Guards the word, charging the Sentinells to looke well about them. To conclude, he ought truly to love, respect, and obey his Captain, and to stick close unto him, vindicating him upon all just occasions, when he shall be wronged, and injured by any mutines of the common souldiers, or others.

Of a Barber Chyrurgion.

IN every Company there ought to be a Barber Chyrurgion for the trimming of the souldiers, who ought likewise to have some skill in Chyrurgery, that when the souldiers are upon the watches, and guards, where imminent danger may be, he may be then at hand, to be ready in the absence of the Chyrurgion of the Regiment to bind up, and dresse the hurt and wounded men. He is free from duties belonging to the Company, and in some places is allowed to be an Officer in the list of their armies, which, I conceive, it ought so to be, in respect they allow but of one Chyrurgion to a Regiment, and if it should happen many to be wounded, as oftentimes in field fights there are, one man is not able scarce in three dayes to bind up the wounds, and dresse the sores, of them that are maimed. And therefore it concerns every Captain to be provided, and to have in the absence of the Chyrurgion, a Barber Chyrurgion attending on his Company.

Of a Clerk of a Company.

His carriage ought to be very just and honest, his cheifest duty is to keep the muster Roll, and to have it ready upon all occasions for the entering of his men upon the muster Roll, and pay bill. He is many times intrusted to receive the service money of the Company, and payes such moneyes unto the souldiers as shall be ordered him from his Captain to pay. He must inquire out in their quarters where they lie, and duly for to pay them, and every pay day to deliver up a true bill, giving an account unto his Captain of all such moneyes he hath either received, or paid forth.

Of a Drum Major.

There ought to be in every Regiment a Drum Major, being skilfull in his profession, instructing the others in the true beating of a march, with all other points of war. A Drum-Major must likewise be well skill'd in severall languages, and tongues, and to be wise and courteous when he shall be employ'd or sent to an enemy; He is in a discreet manner upon the marching of a Regiment to order part of the Drums where they shall bear,

seeing them timely and duly relieved by the others for the better performance of their service. For upon the march if all the Captains Drums should beat together, it would quickly tire them out, therefore for their ease, it is his place and duty to order them according to discretion to take their turnes to beat, and to be relieved by each other. He is moreover to take in to his charge such Drums as shall be brought in from the enemies by their Drummers, when they come to ransom their prisoners, and upon their returne to deliver them again unto them. He ought to be lodged near the Serjeant Major in respect he is to give instructions to the rest of the Drummers, and may upon fail of their duties give them correction.

of the Drummers to a private Company.

EVery Captain ought to have two good Drummers that knows how to beat all the severall points of war before mentioned. It is likewise expedient that he should be a good linguist, in respect sometimes he may be sent unto an enemy for the ransoming of prisoners. His duty is coming to the camp, or garrison of an enemy, having his Generals Pass in his hat to beat a call, till he is fetcht in; and because he shall not discover the weakness of guards, works, or trenches, he is led blind-fold, and so carried to the Commander, and place where his prisoners are; With whom (after he hath ransomed them) he is to returne to his own quarters, giving an account of such things he hath seen or heard, which may prove advantageous to his own party, or of any other thing he had opportunity by their neglect to take notice of.

of a Gentleman of Arms.

His duty is to see that the souldiers keep their armes neat and clean, and that they be well fixed, and if any thing be amiss or broken, he is to have them carried to the Armourers to be repaired. And if any souldier shall be sick, dead, or have leave to returne to his own country, he is to bring his armes to his own lodging, there preserving, and keeping them clean, untill he shall have occasion to deliver them to some other newly entertained. He is likewise to mark and figure the armes of the Company, and to preserve and keep a list what number of figure each souldier shall bear upon his armes. He is likewise to keep the powder, bullet, and match, and to deliver it forth upon occasions to the Corporalls, or Lanspassadoc.

of a Lanspassadoc.

His duty is concerned in the absence of his corporall to officiate in all things belonging unto his place, and is at all times to be an assistant unto him, for his ease & help-mate upon all occasions, for the better managing of his place, and many times they are rounders and Sentinell perdues in time of great necessity.

The duty of a Corporall.

The Corporalls of a Company are nottied to a set number, but to be ordered according to the severall strengths and divisions of the same, for each to take his charge and care of every Squadron thereof. And unto each of them there is a Lanspassadoc for an assistant, for their rule of dignity, I conceive, it makes not much more matter then to make them the right hand file-leader in every perticular division; but if any will be so curious to order them according to that, let them apply themselves unto the former rules for directions to the same. The Corporalls duty in his Squadron is to teach and instruct them in the use of the Pike, and Musket, and to have a Roll and list of his men in his division or Squadron. And when a souldiers name is crossed out he is to give notice unto his Serjeant, and when a new one shall supply his place his care must be to instruct and enable him in the postures of such armes as he shall bear. Being with his Squadron upon his guard he is to provide them with wood, coale, candle, and light. Having an out-guard his care must be to strengthen it, his little Corps due guard and sentinels must be set forth according to the avenews or commings on of the enemy, whereby he prevents their cuttings off, or surprisall, the negligence whereof proves both dangerous to themselves, and the whole army. Wherefore it behoves hi

to be very carefull, and vigilant to visit them, after giving them an especiall charge to be both faithfull and carefull in the great trust reposed in them. He must likewise preserve and keep the word constant in his memory, when the *Captain* of the *Watch* goes the first *Round*, he shall with his *Sword* drawn against his breast give it him, and receive such orders from him as he shall command him; but afterwards when the *Round* shall come again, he shall cause the *Rounders*, or *Gentlemen* (with his *Sword* drawn) to give the word to him before they passe. He ought never to go alone, being called forth by the *Sentinell*, but to have a *Guard* of three or four *Muskettiers* a long with him, selected out of his *Corps* due *Guard*. He must advise his *Sentinels* how to demean themselves upon the discovery of an *Enemy*, either to give an *Alarm*, or else to give notice without making an noise. And if upon his *Guard* he shall either observe, or be advertized by his *Sentinels* of the approach of the *Enemy*, then he is to have his men in readinesse with *bullets* in their *Muskets*, and their *matches* lighted, himselfe secretly comming in, giving intelligence unto his *Captain*, or other superiour *Officer*, whereby they may all be in a readinesse before the *Alarm* be given. He is likewise to distribute the *victual*, *powder*, *bullet*, and *match*, unto his *Squadron*, and to take notice of the best experienced men, and accordingly to employ them upon action upon the *Watches*. He must cause respect to be given to the *Corps* due *Guard*, and silence to be kept, whether it be about the *Walls* or *Gates*, that so the noise may not hinder the hearing of the advertisement from the *Sentinels*. He is likewise to have an eye to their lives and manners, and to take care of the *baggage* and *money* of such as are hurt, or sick, and to be in his own carriage sober, wise, and discrete, for the avoiding ill example unto others.

Of the Martiall of a Regiment.

HE ought to take into his custody all persons committed unto his charge by the chief *Officers* of the *Regiment*, and if they be called to justice, he is to bring them to the *Martiall Generall*, who are to be carried from thence to the *Councell of War*. It is also the care to see that all *women*, *boyes*, *servants*, *bread*, and *Aquaviva-sellers*, belonging to the *Regiment* do march in the *Reer*, and not before, or upon the *Flanks*. He is likewise to set such prizes upon *beare*, and *victuals*, as the *Lord Martiall*, or *Serjeant Major Generall* shall appoint, which order he shall receive from the *Provost Martiall* of the *Army*, and to see it duly executed within the Circuit of the *Regiment*; And that the *Sutlers* do not sell their *beare* and *victuals* above the set rate, lest they grate upon the *Souldiers*. After the *Captain* of the *Watch* hath gone the first *Round*, he is to see that the *Sutlers* keep no tipling or disorder in the night, but makethem put out their candle light, and fires; during the time of *Divine Service*, he is to go the *round*, for fear any disorders should be committed in the *Quarters*.

Of a Quartermaster.

IF the *Regiment* be marching with the *Army*, (and not alone) he is then every evening to attend upon the *Quartermaster Generall*, to receive his directions, and to take the place, ground, and houses, appointed by him, for the *Quarter* and *Lodging* of the *Regiment*, who presently is to acquaint, and advertise his *Collonel* of the same, and after to follow his charge. First, he appointeth or prepareth the *Collonels* lodging, and other *Officers* of the *Field* in the *Center* or midst of all the *Quarters*, and neer them himself, and all the other *Officers* of the *Staffe*. After, according to the seniority of the *Captains*, and their marchings to distribute forth their *Quarters* as may be designed, Having thus far acted through the help of the *Constables*, and *Headboroughs* of those places, where the *Regiment* is to quarter, and having drawn forth their *Billers* in a good and orderly way, he is before the *Regiments* entering the *Quarters* to deliver the same to the *Collonel*, or other *Field-officers*, of that *Regiment*, and they to deliver it to the rest of the *Captains*, to direct them to their lodgings, with the perticular *Souldiers* of their *Company*. And during the time that he is about the visiting the distribution of the lodgings, all the *Troops* are to keep watch round

about the place, and to send out to discover, he must also be informed of the Lodgings of the whole *Army* to know whom to give, or whom to receive Supplies in case of necessity.

If the *Quarter* be in the open field, the *Quartermaster General* shall appoint to each *Quartermaster* the place and ground which he shall take, which he is to distribute to the *Serjeants* of every *Company* of the *Regiment*, who are to assist him in taking the depth, length, and breadth of their *Quarters*, with the distances of the *Alarm* place between the head of the *Quarter*, and the *Trench*, and the true distance of the *Streets* betwixt the in-getting of each *Captains* perticuler *Company*.

When an *Army* or *Regiment* shall sit down before a *Town*, or foraging place, to besiege it, they are employed sometimes to be *Foragers* to fetch in provision for the *Army*, or perticuler *Regiments*. Which when they shall be required, they ought to have sufficient *Convoys* and *Guards* both of *Infantry* and *Chavalry* to secure them, who are to be comanded by able *Officers*, and the *Provost Martiall*, or one of his *Assistants* is to go a long with them, to punish such as are exorbitant, or do straggle. It will be expedient to the *Regiment* that the *Quartermaster* upon his Service may be employed twice in a week, to bring in a fresh *victual* to the Souldiers, but not to go twice to one place, lest they be discovered by an enemy, and be way-laid by their forces, who may sometimes prove stronger then themselves to prevent, or to cut them off by way, laying of them secretly in some *Ambushments*. Which being truly considered of, care may be taken accordingly of Supplies in other remote places, free from the danger of the Enemy. To conclude, a *Quartermaster* ought to carry himselfe honestly and carefully in his place, and to be well skill'd in the Art of *Mathematicks*; that he may the better give directions for fortifying and measuring of ground, quartering of his whole *Regiment*, and in-getting of the perticuler Souldiers.

The duty of a Serjeant.

HE that is a *Serjeant* to a *Company*, ought to be well skill'd in the *Postures*, and all *Military Motions*, whereby in the first place he may endeavour to correct the errors of such who handle not the *Arms* in a handsome, or a serviceable way. And secondly, that he may be helpfull to his *Captain*, or other superiour *Officer*. In time of his Exercise, his duty is to draw forth the *files* according to such depths as shall be appointed unto him by his *Captain*, or other superiour *Officer*, and to order them in the drawing up, and joyn-ing together the Souldiers unto such places of honour, as they shall direct him unto. In a single *Company* he leadeth often times a *division*, but ought not always there to march in respect he is concerned to see that the Souldiers march even in their *ranks* at their distance of order in *file*, and open order in *rank*. To which purpose, he ought many times to be upon the *flanks*, and perceiving any Souldier out of order, he may cast in his *Halbert* between their *ranks*, to cause him to march even a breth with his right and left-hand men. He is likewise either in *Field* or *Garrison* to lead his *Squadron* to their *Guard*, and to carry to prison such Offendours as his *Captain*, or other superiour *Officer* shall commit, to the *Provost Martiall*. He is to see that the *Muskettiers* in time of skirmishing present all even a breth, with their *matches* all cockt, giving fire all together in good order, and to direct them how to fall off, and rally again in the *Rear* of their own *divisions*. His duty likewise is to fetch *Ammunition*, *Powder*, *March*, and all other *Materials* for the *Companie*. He is, moreover, every perticuler evening to attend at the place of *Parade*, or at the *Majors* Lodging, to fetch the word, and carry it to his *Captain* *Lieutenant*, *Ensigne*, and *Corporals*, and likewise as soon as he is come unto his *Guard*, he must direct the *Corporals* where to set out the *Perdues* and *Sentinels*, and how to order his *Watch*. He must likewise make frequent *Rounds*, and if he finde a *Sentinell* a sleep in the *Field*, he is to commit him to the hand of Justice, and thus much concerning the duty of a *Serjeant*.

of an Ensigne.

AN *Ensigne* being a *Commission Officer*, in the absence of his *Captain* and *Lieutenant*, is Commander in chiefe of the *Company*, and ought to march upon the head of the same, leading them with a *half-pike*. His *Captain* and *Lieutenant* being present, and upon a *Stand*, his *Colours* ought to rest upon his side, being held by his right or left-hand, and unfurled; upon the *March* his *colours* ought to be shouldered, taking up the corner end of them in his right hand, and to let them be halfe *flying*, the *Pikes* and *Muskets* all conforming unto the same *Posture*. Matching through a *City* for the more grace, his *colours* may be wholly *flying*, being advanced and held up by his right hand, or setting upon his right side. He ought to be a proper man, grave, valiant, and discreet, and to be well skill'd in the *Postures* of the *Pike*; in respect he leads them, and they expect from him to be taught the *Postures* thereof. He ought to be well skill'd in all the lofty figures of the displaying of the *colours* above the head, and to make use of them according to discretion, and command, which is not only a healthfull exercise to his body, but also most becoming to him, or any other Gentleman, or Commander whatsoever, that shall sometimes make use of the same, although condemned through sloth and ignorance, by others, who will not take the pains to learn it. An *Ensigne* upon a *Troop*, lodging the *colours*, or in time of skirmishing may fold them up, and retreat into the second *rank* for the securing of his *colours*, which he ought to stick by, and not to stir from them at such a time, although he hazardeth his last drop of blood, or makes them his *winding-sheet*. When the *General* shall passe by, or any such man of *worth*, he ought a little to waile his *colours*, inclining the head, or narrow end thereof, a little down-ward; but not to bow his knee, or uncover his head. He may sometimes for his ease or recreation upon the *March*, request some Gentleman of knowing trust of the *Pikes* to carry his *colours* for him, untill such time as he shall come again for to take them. In the absence of his *Lieutenant*, when his *Captain* shall exercise the *Company*, he may stick his *colours* in the ground, or deliver them to some Gentleman of the *Pikes*, and fall down himselfe in the *Reer* with a *half-pike* or *cane*, there to be an assistant to his *Captain* in supplying the *Lieutenant's* place, except his *Captain* should command him to the contrary. He ought to have a *Guard* a long with him as well to the lodging of his *colours*, as to any other place. He ought to performe all courteous offices for the Souldiers unto his *Captain*, which will gain him both love and reputation amongst them, they thereby better respecting him, and more courageously following of him.

Of a Lieutenant.

HE that is a *Lieutenant* to a *Company*, ought to be a good and able *Souldier*, and well to understand the duty of a *Captain*; in respect that in his absence he is as *Captain*, and Commander in chiefe, over them. He is likewise to receive all *Orders*, *Charges*, and *Commissions* from his *Captain*, assuming no authority unto himselfe, but in the absence of his *Captain*, he is to see all such *Orders* he hath received duly executed, for the better ease unto him. He is likewise at such times frequently to exercise the *Company* in all their *Military Motions*, *Skirmishings*, and *False-firings* in the *pan*. He is to hold the *Serjeants* and *Corporals* strictly to their duty, causing them to provide all things necessary for the *Company*, and to be assistants unto him where he shall see cause. He is to teach and instruct the Souldiers in the use of their *Armes*, and sometime for their ease, he may command every *file-leader* to draw forth his *file*, and to shew them their *Postures*. By which means he shall do such good service to his *Captain*, that when he shall exercise them himselfe, he may finde them more apter, and readier to fulfill his commands, at which time the *Lieutenant* ought to be in the *Reer*, and to see all things there truly executed according to the *Captains* commands. He is in time of danger and great importance to advise with his *Captain* about the well-fare of this *Company*, for knowing his *Captains* intentions and purposes before hand, he may be the better provided to withstand the furious on-set of the *Enemy*. He ought to have the *Ensigne*, and all other *Officers* of the *Company* as neer him as may be, there being often times urgent business.

to make use of them as occasion shall require. He must neither cashier, nor punish any man in the presence of his *Captain*, but ought to make him acquainted therewith, that he may punish the offendour by committing him either to prison, or cause him to give recompence to the party wronged. To conclude, he ought to know how far his power doth extend either in the presence, or absence of his *Captain*, always demeaning himselfe so, that he may gain the love of all the whole *Company*, by acting those things amongst them as may be just and honest.

of a Captain.

HE that is a *Captain* of a *Company*, ought in respect he leadeth the same, and is chiefe, to appoint unto the *Officers* their severall places, what *divisions* they shall lead, and where they shall march, and according to the number of *files* to make his *divisions* answerable thereto, by dividing his *Musketiers* as neer as he can, the one halfe upon the right of the *Pikes*, and the other upon the left. For they being the *Flankers* ought equally to be ballanced, but if there be an odd *file*, it ought to be contrived, and carried to the right. In the *Pan*, *Battail*, or *Reer*, he must according to the number of his men, order his *Officers* places, and draw them off accordingly in as equall a way as they will afford. He is as well as his own, to know all the severall duties of his *Officers*, and to be a good *Posture-man* himselfe, that when he sees any of his Souldiers handling their *Arms* in an undecent, and slovenly manner, he may the better reprove them for the same. And although many *Captains* regardeth them not, but leaveth them to be instructed by the inferiour *Officers*: yet it is a great deal of honour to him, when his Souldiers shall be taught by himselfe, they more cheerfully, and confidently marching a long with him, when as they perceive that he is thoroughly knowing in all things belonging to his charge. He shall do well to exercise his *Company* sometimes himselfe, teaching them how to fight upon all occasions, whether it be to *Front*, *Reer*, or *Flanks*, or upon surprise of an *Ambuscado*, or any other disadvantage which may befall them, informing them how to fall off and rally again in good order. And at such times he must courageously and wisely behave himselfe, and encourage his Souldiers of hopes of victory, casting off all appearances of fear or danger whatsoever, cheerfully animating his Souldiers to fall on, taking care, and making much of them, and not to forsake them untill such time they may be relieved by others. He is to have a fatherly care of his Souldiers, timely providing for the maimed, wounded, and sick; such helps and remedies as their present conditions requires. He must likewise see that there be no want of *Victual*, *Arms*, or *Ammunition*; he ought not to be covetous, nor keep back his Souldiers pay, but to see them duly paid, visiting and relieving them according to their severall wants and necessities. His care must be to execute justice, appease quarrels, punish offenders; by doing whereof, he will maintain the honour and dignity of his place. He ought to carry a very even hand over his Souldiers, and to be very courteous, and kind unto them, yet with that restriction of familiarity that he come not under contempt. And again, he must not be too rigid, and harsh, caning or beating them, without just cause, lest he incurre their hatred, who secretly, or in time of *battail*, will seek to be revenged of him, endeavouring to kill him, before their enemy. Therefore he ought to be wise and discreet, in his commands and carriage towards them; his place of marching with his *Company*, is some six foot before the first division of *Musketiers*; but if his *Company* be drawn up, he is either upon a *Stand*, or upon the *March*, to be on the head of the *Pikes*, six foot before his *Ensigne*. In time of *battail* although he leads his men up first against the Enemy, yet he is not always tied to be in the *Front*, having often just occasion to remove down into the *Reer*, *Midst*, or *Flanks*, carefully casting his eye upon all parts of the Body thereby preventing the least error or neglect of his Souldiers, directing them what to do, keeping them in good order as long as occasion shall require. Moreover, he ought to be very religious, temperate, and discreet, faithfull in his trust, valiant in the field against the face of his Enemy, and being besieged in either Town, or Fort, (for to preserve his honour) never give his consent for the yielding it up, untill it be past hope that there is no possibility to hold it out any longer.

of

of a Serjeant Major.

His duty is every morning, and evening, or upon any other occasion to attend upon the *Generall, Martiall* of the Field, or *Serjeant Major Generall* of the Army, to receive his Orders how, or in what manner, the *Regiment* shall march, whether in a single *Battalion*, or else in two to be joyned with others. After which he gives order accordingly unto the *Captains* how to draw up their *Companies* & orders them accordingly. At which time of *imbatrelling* or marching, he ought to be as neer the midst of the *Regiment* as he can; for the better regulating of them. He is to place all the Officers according to their *degnity* where they are to lead, & whereto bring up; & which men they shall take charge of to fight, causing the *Drum Major* (after they are all drawn up) & the other *Drummers* to beat a *March*; and to move all at one instant as occasion shall require. He ought to make all the *Divisions* as neer qually a like as possible he can; he must likewise be well versed in the severall drawing up of *Regiments* with their various forms of *Battail*, that according to the condition of the place, ground, number of men, and Orders received from the *Major Generall*, or *Adjutors* of the *Brigades*, he may not shew himselfe a Novice, or one that is to seek, nor bught, he to go dully or slothfully upon his Charge, or place; but to be very ready, quick, and sumbly performing with much ease and readinesse, his *Battalions* and grand *Divisions*. In their drawings up he may be permitted to have pen, ink, and paper, for to take an account of the severall strengths of the *Captains Companies* and to order his men accordingly, and ought to give unto all the Officers of the *Regiment*; notes in writing, of their severall charges and places. In time of fight, or otherwise marching with the *Regiment*, he is to be on horse-back, in regard he is the eyes, hands, and feet thereof; in time of battail he is to see every Officer to perform his charge, and Souldier his duty, forcing and compelling them forward, if in case they turn their backs. He is also to distribute to the *Captains* and other Officers such Orders as he shall receive from his *Collonel*, or other superiour Officer. In marching with the *Regiment*, not alone, but with the Army, he must know from the *Generall, Martiall*, or *Major Generall*, whether the *Regiment* be to march in the *Vanguard*, *Battail*, or *Rear*. He ought to have some knowledge, or information of the Countrey; whether it be long, or streight; thereby judging how to order his marching so, as he may not be disturbed by the Enemies *Horse*, or *Artillery*. Being troubled with *baggage*, if there be any difficult passage, he ought to be there present to prevent such disorders as may happen, giving directions for their placing, and marching as they may not be any hinderance to the *Regiment*, putting them in order again before the *Regiment* shall enter into their *Quarters*; at which time he may give license to the *Captains*, and their *Ensignes*, to take their lodgings, excepting only those who are appointed for *Guardians*, who must enter the *Corps due Guard*, and place their *Sentinels*, untill such time as they shall be relieved by others.

Now if a *Regiment* be to be quartered or lodged either in the Field, or under shelter; if in the Field, he must cause it to be barradoed, or intrenched by the waggons, or other defences of the Field, after which he is to place his *Corps due Guard* round about the *Quarters*, and the *Sentinels* at so neer a distance that they may hear one the other speak, being about 80, or 100 paces off from the *Corps due Guard*, being placed double, a *Pike*, and a *Musket*; and five paces from them, other single *Sentinels* are to be placed which are called *Per-dues*. And in case of an *Alarm* the *Sentinell Per-due* shall retreat to the double *Sentinell*, and in case of necessity, altogether having given fire, are to retreat to the *Corps due Guard*. He must likewise at divers houres of the night visite the *Corps due Guard*, and if an *Alarm* be given in the field, he is to betake himselfe to the *Alarm* place of the *Regiment*, and there to form his *Battalion*, and to send men to double the Guards on that part where the *Alarm* was given, and to give notice thereof to his *Collonel*, or other superiour Officer, if they be present of what passeth. The *Ensignes* ought not to retreat unlessse their *Collonel*, or he give leave; no order at any time ought to be altered, but by him, in respect he giveth none but such as he receiveth from the *Collonel*. It is his duty to speak for *Ammunition*, as powder bullets, march, and for *victuals*, if there shall be any want in the *Regiment*, which provisions ought to be delivered unto him, and he to see it equally distributed unto the *Companies* according unto the proportion given out. And likewise he is to give order what proportion or number of work-men, or commanded men shall be drawn forth to work.

If under shelter, then he is to view the place, both within and without, appointing the places for the *Corps du Guards*, and *Sentinels*, and the way of the *Runners*, that it be free. It will be expedient for him to choose the *Alarm* place, whether the *Companies* upon the *Alarm* given are to repair, being the *Rendezvous* for the whole *Regiment*, being carefull to place sufficient *Guards* both upon the walls, and about the *Gates* for their more security. Which being ended, he may give leave to the *Captains* to go to their lodgings and severall *Quarters*, there to remain untill they shall be called upon duties, for the due performance whereof, he is to cause them to cast lots, whereby they may know what part of the walls may fall to their turn. He is to command the *Companies* to enter the *Guards* about ten, or eleven of the clock in the morning, he is likewise to open, and shut the *Gates* at the rising, or setting of the *Sun*, and to place the *Watches* upon the walls, presently upon the shutting of the *Gates*, and to relieve them upon the opening thereof.

And as he doth receive his directions for marching, imbatallling, viewing of ground, and placing of *Guards*, from the *Serjeant Major Generall*, or *Serjeant Major* of that *Brigade*: so he is to deliver them over to the *Captains* and *Officers* of that *Regiment*, and to call upon them to whom it appertains, to see them duly executed. In the presence of his *Colonel*, and *Lieutenant Colonel*, he is to be an assistant unto them, in seeing all orders, and directions duly performed, and in their absence, he hath the same authority and command as they. He ought after he hath received the word and orders from the *Serjeant Major Generall*, or *Serjeant Major* of the *Brigade*, he presently delivers them to his *Colonel*, and *Lieutenant Colonel*, and afterwards to the *Serjeants* of every *Company*, drawn in a *ring*, according to the Seniority of their *Captains*, which are to come, and attend upon him for the same. In the absence of his superiour *Officers* he giveth the word himselfe, every night he is to visite all the *Guards* of the *Regiment*, commanding them duly to keep the turns of their *Watches* and *Marches*, seeing that one *Captains Company* performe not more duty than another, to the end, that both the honour, and labour may be equally divided among them. And as he hath power to exercise his own *Company* in all the *Military Motions*: so he may exercise the whole *Regiment*, being thereunto required, by his *Colonel*, or *Lieutenant Colonel*, in all their *Distances*, *Facings*, *Donblings*, *Wheelings*, and *False firings*; and or in their absence of himselfe he hath full power to do. To conclude, he ought to be well grounded in all *Military Affaires*, and to be both wise and valiant.

of a Lieutenant Collonel.

HE that is a *Lieutenant Collonel* to a *Regiment*, hath a very honourable place, having power and command over all the *Regiments*, in the absence of his *Colonel*, and may also at such time exercise the *Regiment* in all the *Military Motions*, and is to lead the *Regiment* upon the head thereof; But when his *Colonel* is present, he bringeth up the *Reer*, if they march in one *division*, but if in two, in some places he leadeth the second, as his *Colonel* doth the first; or if in three, as formerly is shewn, he commands the *Vanguard*, the *Colonel* the *Battail*, and the *Major* the *Reer-guard*. His place is not of so great pains and toile as the *Majors* is, therefore, he ought in the drawing up of the *Regiment* to be helpfull and assisting unto him in that perticuler, and in all others where he shall think fit. To conclude, the greatest *Affaires* of the *Regiment* being carried forth by the *Major*, there is the lesse remaining to be spoken concerning him, but that he see all things duly observed throughout the *Regiment*, according unto such orders received from those which are above him.

of a Collonel.

IT concerneth every *Collonel* to take care that his *Companies* be full and compleat, (if it may be) that they be well provided of *Armes*, and to take cognizance what *Exercises* are continually performed by them, communicating *Orders*, and commanding all *Officers* of his *Regiment* what is to be performed by each *Company* respectively, whensoever they shall happen to be upon their *March*.

In the Head of his *Regiment*, is his most honourable, and proper place, and there he ought to be most frequent. He is to be subservient to the *Lord Generall*, *Lord Martiall*, and

Se. jeunir

Serjeant Major General of the Field, to whom he is to pay like respect and observance, as he himself expecteth, (and that justly) from all inferiours to him. For from those his superiour *Officers*, by him are received in charge, all such Orders, as refer to the Place of *Alarms*, *Marchings*, *Imbattailings*, *Guards*, or *Convoys*. Furthermore, it is requisite that every *Collonel* should acquaint himselfe at least once every week, how and in what manner the Souldiers of his *Regiment* have deputed themselves in their severall *Quarters*, by a due and strict examination of the qualities of all such offences, as have occurred, and been committed by the severall and distinct Souldiers under his command, hereby preparing every severall misdemeanour for a readier hearing before a *Councell of War*, or *Court Martiall*, and this is easily effected by convening the *Captains*, or other *Officers* under him at such convenient times, as may suit with his occasions, every *Collonel* being bound to make his appearance at each *Councell of War*, as Assistant to the *Lord Martiall*, and *President* of the said *Councell*, for the hearing and determining of all such propositions and matters in question relating to the *Army*.

In all matters of *Advice* and *Counsel*, but more especially when any *Stratagem*, *Siege*, or intended *Battail*, is in agitation to be put in action, the *Collonel* ever as one of the *Primary Field-Officers* is summon'd to consult with the *General*, and with all freedom to deliver his opinion in all things that shall be there discussed, for the best advantage (as he shall conceive) for the designs in hand, how weighty and important soever, and to be ready to go upon any such service as shall be cast into his charge to be executed, by the *Major-part* of the said *Councell*, and to expresse his obedience to his *General*, although it be a service that corresponded not with his own opinion at the first, but being cleared by the large number, to be more conducing to the good of the *Designe*, courageously to undertake it and faithfully to performe it.

In the quartering of his own *Regiment*, which is always ordered for *Quarter* in two grand *Divisions*; regard is to be had that his own *Lodgings* be ever taken up in the most equall place between his grand *Divisions*, that so he may with more facility and celerity dispense and import his command to either Party. What commands soever shall descend unto him in charge from his superiour *Officers*, as relating to the *Guards*, disposing of *Marchings*, appointing *Imbattailings*, ordering of *Quarters*, &c. He is carefully to see executed. He must do justice unto all without partiality, so far as he exceed not his proper Authority, and at all times to be diligent in suppressing of *Murmurs*, even in their first growth by a discreet punishment of the principall offenders, for prevention of further mischief and inconvenience.

of Guides.

M*Ans* with the right use and knowledge of them, are great helps towards the finding out of the best and most convenient ways. Skillfull and expert Inhabitants of the Countrey, are most proper to be elected for *Guides*, and it is necessary, for their better encouragement, and the *Armies* suddain and necessary use of them, to have them listed in Souldiers pay. For the finding out of the fittest and ablest persons for this employment, it is most especially the duty of the *Wagon Masters*, who are to see and enquire certainly, that they be men known and practised in all passable *By-paths*, *Crosse-ways*, &c. That they be able to give an accompt of the distance of places, of the evennesse, and streightnesse of them, whether they be plain, or crooked, hilly, or stony, and difficult for passage; what *Rivers*, *Hedges*, *Ditches*, and *Bridges*, lye in the way, and which way (if there shall be severall ways) is the safest and shortest, which the neerer or farther, to, or from the *Enemies Quarters*, which more probable for their approaches, as likewise for *Quarter*, what *Forrage*, what *Water* is to be had, and how convenient the way is for *Baggage*. If it shall happen that these *Guides* may be cholen partly out of the Souldiers, and partly from the Countrey-men, and so any scruple, jar, or difference happen in opinion, such *Officers*, and others as are best skill'd in those parts and places, are either to reconcile the difference, or from the most probable intelligence, to conclude upon the most convenient passages. In respect of the danger and great hazards, if not utter ruine, that the *Guides* sometimes do, and often may draw the Souldiers into, by treachery and false play, they are many times caused to ride halter'd about the neck, to put them in mind of capitall punishment, if they shall

mislead the Party they guide, but in case they discharge their trust faithfully, and ably, they ought to be as well rewarded for the encouragement, as other wise to be punished for the terror of others.

of Scouts.

AN active Enemy is always watchfull, and diligent to apprehend every opportunity that may make for his advantage, and therefore it concerns every *Commander* by way of *Counter-mine*, as it were, to be carefull, that he rightly and fully informe himselfe of their ways and courses, for prevention of his own danger, in case of suddain assaults, and the better infesting of his Enemy. And to this end, he must make choise of such as are approved for their valour and fidelity, discretion and vigilancy, not probable to be corrupted with gain, or daunted through fear. These men, are not only to take direct, plain, or high ways, but also by private, and unsuspected passages, and scouring as they scout all places whatsoever, that are accessible, and when they have made diligent observation in all places, to informe of nothing but what they can give the *ocular* proof of, lest by their error and mistake, the whole *Army* possibly may be led into an irreparable ruine, and whosoever is the *Conduct* or *Officer* of these *Scouts* (for one, and an able one, they must have always with them) must be exceeding carefull of his reputation, that he informe of nothing more then what he can justifie from his own eyes, or eares, and if he informe further, to informe them also that that information is but from report, that it may be considered of accordingly, and his Repute preserved intire.

of Spies.

OF all men, these are, at all times necessary for an *Army*, and in all *Armies* of all men they will deserve to be most certainly and liberally rewarded, to the intent, that they may at all times cheerfully and faithfully undertake any employment of the greatest trust, hazard, or danger. And he that will make choise of able and trusty men in this kind, must, after diligent observation, and weighing of their dispositions and courage, select them out of his own Souldiers, who under pretence of some discontent for want of pay, &c. may thereby with lesse suspicion receive entertainment from the Enemy, and (if it be possible) to be lifted with the *Horse*, whereby they may gain the fairer Opportunities in *Field*, or *Garrison*, to give certain intelligence of all *Designs* and *Occurrences* in the Enemies *Quarters*.

Before their departure from you, let them take their severall instructions (for the more you have the better, so that that they be design'd for severall places, and unknown unto each other) both for times, and places of conveyance, which places must be strictly observed, and duly searched for such informations, as your *Spies* shall convey thither, and thither let your answers, and advices be re-conveyed for their further instruction.

Sometimes there may arise matters of such importance and consequence, that it will not only be convenient to certifie by letter, but most necessary to make appearance in person, and there to consult and advise together, if perhaps the Enemy shall be resolved to fall upon some of the opposite *Quarters* suddainly, &c.

For *Cursary Spies*, and present Intelligence, the people of meanest rank, and quality, are the fittest Instruments; as common *Peasants*, *Pedlars*, *Sellers* of *Strong-waters*, or *Tobacco*, and the like, who may passe unsuspected, and with more security effect your purpose.

There are yet another sort of *Spies* of another nature, who are denominated *Double*, who being chosen to this *Office* upon great experience of their trust and constancy, may in some cases be allowed to informe the enemy aright, in some such Affairs of yours, as may not be prejudiciall to you, but to *insinuate* and *winne* believe upon the contrary Party; and hereupon let them secure themselves into the private service of some of their *Prime Officers*, whence they shall (as being better acquainted) more easily discover, and more certainly informe of the Enemies proceedings and intentions.

CHAP. XXIV.

of Military Watches.

HOW necessary these *Watches* are in all *Armies* is evident to all men; the grand and chiefest care whereof, for order and direction, resteth in the *Serjeant Major*, who issueth out such precepts therein to the *Captains*, or *Companies*, as he himselfe before received from his superiour *Officer*, and according to the said precepts received, whether it be in *Garrison* or *Field*, the work and duty required, is to be performed either by *Squadrons*, or full *Companies*, having respect unto the strength or weaknesse of the Place to be guarded, and in such places as are most likely for the Enemy to make his approaches in, and that there they be carefull to fortifie the *Guard* above other places of lesse concernment; which must be observed by the *Major*, in surveying the *Guards*, and *Guard Places*, in his walking of the grand *Round*, and so, according as his discretion shall see fit, to take from the stronger places of *Guard* such Souldiers as may supply the defects of the weaker.

The appointment of perticuler *Guards* unto perticuler *Captains*, is in the power of the *Major*, or otherwise, He commandeth the *Serjeant* of each *Company* to attend him at his *Quarter*, at any certain hour of the day as he shall think fit, where every one is to do duty upon the *Guard* that night, taketh his lot in order, (which lots are shuffled together in an Hat) which directeth him upon what *Guard* to attend that night. This being done, all the *Serjeants* that have their direction for the duty of the *Guard*, are to make a *Ring*, or *Circle*, according to their degrees in Seniority. To the Senior of all which *Company* of *Serjeants*, the *Major* giveth the word privately in his ear, who after the same manner passeth it to the next, and so from Man to Man unto the youngest, who whispers it in the ear of his *Major*; who sends it back again in the former manner for Securities sake, untill it come to the Senior *Serjeant* again, who then leaves it in the care of his *Major*, which preventeth all mistakes for each perticuler *Company*.

The *Guards* being thus set in order, the *Officers* relieved ought to informe the *Officers* of the *Relievers*, of all the severall duties of their severall *Guards*, &c.

Every *Commander* in Chief of that perticuler *Squadron*, which he is appointed unto, leadeth up his own *Squadron* from the *Parade* to their appointed *Guard*, to which, when they approach, the *Officer* in Chief delivers the word to the *Corporall* or his *Lance-prizadoe*, and they to their Superiour *Officers*.

The manner of relieving is by planting a *Guard* of *Pikes* next to the *Relievers*, and adjoining to them in the *Reer* a *Guard* of *Muskettiers*, through whom the *Relievers* are to passe, and the *Relieved* to march back to their *Quarters*. After all things thus set in order, the *Captain* of the *Guard* in person, by strict injunction commandeth every man to his duty, from which no man either *Officer* or other is to depart without an especiall License, and in all *Alarms* to stand close, and quietly to their *Arms*, expecting further instruction and command what they are to do. And all this time, and constantly a *Sentinell* is appointed to guard the Entrance into the *Main-Guard*.

Every *Officer* and Souldier in a *Regiment*, is worthy of Honour, Pay, and Encouragement, according to his Merit and Seniority; and to this end, there ought to be a perfect List of the names and number of all perticuler Souldiers and *Officers* in every *Squadron*, which List or Catalogue is to remain in the hands of the severall *Corporals*, or *Lance-prizadoes*, which *Corporals* are diligently to see what defects there are of all severall necessities in their *Corps du Guard*, and to be carefull that they be continually supplied; which he must do, by information to his *Major*, and (in case of his absence or neglect) to his *Captain*, who may informe the Governour, that all wants of *Fire*, *Ammunition*, or *Lights* be made good, and compleated.

The *Corporals* according to order and precept given to them, are to dispose of the severall *Sentinels*, as well *Pikes* as *Muskettiers*, and to have an especiall care, that they keep their *Muskets prim'd and laden*, and their *Match cockt and lighted*, with their *Pan* guarded, which must be observed by their often visiting the severall *Sentinels*, to see that all things be in due order, and with silence, to the end that the *Sentinels* may always be heard, as often as occasion is offered.

The Office of every *Sentinell* after he is placed upon his duty, and in his due *Posture*, (according as is above declared) is to enquire of every passenger, or other that shall but stir, who goes there? yea, though it be the *Captain* himselfe, and howsoever the remotest *Sentinell* from the *Corps du Guard*, is to permit him with his *Retinue* to passe; yet he is bound to have an eye upon them, till he approach the neereft *Sentinell* to the *Corps*, who upon the like demand, is answered. The *Captain* of the *Watch*, which latter *Sentinell* commands him to stand, and thereupon with a loud voice calls forth his *Corporall*, the *Sentinell* not stirring from his place, or *Posture*, untill the *Corporall* with his *Sword* drawn shall approach with a *Guard* of *Muskettiers*, who are to be all arm'd, and appointed as the *Sentinels* ready to present; whereupon the *Corporall* with one only *Muskettier* advancing, and perceiving him to be the *Captain* of the *Watch* indeed, is to give him the *word* in his eare, having respectively first cast down the point of his *Sword*, afterwth receiving further instructions from him, he conducts him to his farthest *Sentinell*. But if it shall appear that he be not the *Captain*, or the *Corporall* knowing him not justly to be so, by a just suspicion, He may then detain him (although he shall give him the *word*) and then he shall further demand the *word* of some other attending him, from whom having received it, he may more safely permit them to passe; but of all others whatsoever shall attempt a passage he is to receive the *word* from them, and not to deliver it to them.

The *Captain* himselfe having done the duty in person of passing the first *Round*, upon his return, he is to send forth others upon the like duty, such as he shall out of his discretion choose from his *Main-Guard*, and may most confide in, to whom he is to impart the *word* at their setting forth upon the duty, and not before, with strict admonitions, and full instructions what they are to do, and what way to take.

Now if he shall be supplied with men enough upon his own *Guard*, he may at the same time command out severall *Rounders* to be taken severall ways; who are diligently to observe their directions given them, and to be very vigilant in the observation of all things in their passage, both by the eye and the eare, and to admonish the *Sentinels* (in case of neglect) that all things be more carefully lookt unto in their duty. And of these *Rounders* likewise (as before) the fore-most *Sentinell* demands, *Who goes there?* When being answered satisfactorily, as by the name of the *Round*, or *Friends*, he permits them passage to the neereft *Sentinell*, who having stoppt them there takes a further accompt, what, and who they are. Which is done by calling forth his *Corporall*, who placing the point of his *Sword* at one of their breasts, takes the *word* privately, and so passes them by conduct to the furthest *Sentinell*. But if there shall happen a mistake in the *word*, the *Corporall* is either to secure them with himselfe, or by *Guard* to transerre them to the *Main-Guard*.

Such as shall walk the *Round*, are to take a strict accompt of all they meet, what, and who they are, and in case of deficiency, of answering justly on the one side, or suspicion of the other; they are to secure and guard them to the *Captain* of the *Watch*.

Now setting a side those *Queries* which some do make between *Rounders* and *Counter-Rounders*, if they meet, who shall give or take the *word*; the best and safest course is, for them all that before the *word* be either given or taken, they go together to the neereft *Corps du Guard*, and there to give the *word*, after which they are to passe upon their duty again; and so having finished the *Round*, and returning to the *Captain* of the *Watch*, he taketh accompt of them of all things that they have done and observed in their duty and course upon the *Round*, and thus the *Captain* still supplies the *Rounds* successively by such others as he shall take by seniority and dispose off for the like service.

Furthermore, that all disorders, irregularities, and such persons as shall cause the same in a *Town of Garrison*, may be found out and rectified, and that all dangerous accidents by fire, or otherwise may be prevented; the *Captain* of the *Watch* commandeth out a *Guard* of *Fire-locks*, or *Muskettiers*, to view the *Streets*, and all suspicious and irregular persons as they take, they are to bring to the *Main-Guard* of this *Guard*, which is always conducted by a *Serjeant*, and is called the *Patrouille*, happen to be *Muskettiers*, and not *Fire-locks*, then they are to be every one provided of such an Instrument as may cover the lighted *Matches*, and keep them from discovery. From these also, as from the *Rounders*, the *Captain* of the *Watch* takes full accompt of all their passages and observations on their duty.

When at any time any suddain approach shall be made, or any *Enemy* discovered, the

Sen-

Sentinell (who is to be firm and constant to his *Place* and *Posture*, till he shall be relieved) forthwith by *firing* gives the *Alarm*, and immediately seconds it by crying with a loud voice, *Arme, Arme*. When the *Alarm* is thus given, the other two *divisions* immediately led by their *Officers*, are orderly to march up to the *Captain* of the *Main-Guard*, to the intent, that all *Guards* of the *Garrison* may with expedition be made good, and it is necessary that these instructions be given them indeed by the *Serjeant Major*, when he shall give the word to the *Minor Serjeants*, who must likewise informe their chiefe *Officers* of it, and from them the *Souldiers* are to be charged and acquainted therewith, that so upon all occasions they may not be ignorant of this part of their duty, but ready to perform it.

The duty of a *Sentinell*, is to stand in his *Place* and *Posture*, a full houre, and no more, at which time the *Corporall* or (in case of his absence) his *Lans-paz-adoe* is to relieve him, and not only him, but all the *Sentinels* that are out upon duty, relieving the farthest *Sentinell* first (who falls in the *Rear* of the rest) and so all the others backward in the like order, and then conducts the relieved *Sentinels* back to the *Guard* again.

At an early hour of the morning appointed for beating up the *Revally*, the two *Sentinels* next unto the *Guard* are to retreat into it.

At the time appointed, in the morning for opening of the *Gates*, the *Serjeant Major* attended with a sufficient *Guard*, repaires to the *Governour*, or place elsewhere allotted, and there, receives the *Keys*, which being done, he is to unlock first that *Gate* which is most remote from danger of the *Enemy*, and the rest in order answerable, but if it happen to be in place and time of imminent danger, the *Major* commandeth forth a party of *Souldiers* conducted by an able *Officer* to go first, and make diligent search for discovering of *Ambuscadoes*, which may happen to be in any close suspected places, as *Lanes*, *By-ways*, *Hedges*, ruinous *Cottages*, *Churches*, *Pits*, or *Hallow-trees*, *Woods*, *Gardens*, and all such like *Inclosures*, at which time he openeth not the *Main-Ports*, but only the *Wickets*. And except upon command to the contrary which is not usual, both the *Guards* and the *Watches* at the *Gates*, are to be kept night and day, and all persons upon them to continue upon their duty untill they shall be relieved by order.

Upon the discharging of the *Watch*, to the end, that every *Officer* and *Souldier* may have notice, to make speedy repair to their severall *Guards*, each severall *Drum* first beats a *Troop*, and afterward a *March* in the *Main-Guard*. Hereupon, it is to be supposed, the *Relievers* are advanced toward the *Main-Guard*, where the relieved are to be drawn off, and to make a *Stand*, expecting till the *Relievers* shall come up; which being done, the *Relieved* then are to troop home-ward, and after that they have attended and seen their colours lodged, they are to disband, and not before.

And now, further, to satisfie the expectation of the *Lovers* of the *Art Military*, it shall not seem unseasonable here to declare somewhat concerning the manner of *Field-Watches*, or *Vigils de Champe*, denoted unto us by the *Expert* and *Ancients*, under these three *Notions*. The first are *Castra temporanea*, *aleger ad placitum*, pitcht only for the present, and may perhaps alter and change it's *Station* in a day, or an houre, according to the pleasure and judgement of the *Generall*, and *Commanders* in chief. Secondly, There are *Casira*, A select, or constant *Camp*, so called, because of their intentions of continuance in the besieging of a *Castle*, or *Town*, &c. untill they shall have taken the same, or by some other necessity, or further advantage, forced to raise their *Siege*. The third, and last, called *Castra*, Such a *Camp* as is pitcht before, or neer some *River* side, to oppose and frustrate the *Inursions* of the *Enemy*, who otherwise might this way break in for the infesting or taking of a *Countray*. Now, concerning such *Watches*, or *Guards*, which shall relate unto these severall *Camps*, both in regard of the severall and most convenient places for securing the *Camp* by *Sentinels*, and *Per-dues*, they are to be primarily appointed and ordered according to the discretion and command of the *Masters* of the *Field*, whether *Generals*, or *Majors* of *Brigades*, and afterwards the *Serjeant Majors* and *Captains* of *Regiments* according to their commands and relieved order, are to designe them for the aforesaid place.

To enlarge the severall *Arguments* and *Disputes* that might further arise, in point of *Field-duties*, relating hereunto, would be too tedious, and to little purpose; in regard that whosoever shall but diligently observe what hath before been set down concerning the duty of *Watches* in *Garrisons*, and *Fortresses*, may sufficiently be able to apprehend and performe all

all manner of duties that shall concern this *Field Service*, provided that he be carefull to adhere to the directions of the *Field-Officers* in all points, and diligent to observe the manner of managing of all things according to their instructions. And therefore to avoid prolixity and fruitlesse disputes, I referre the Reader to what hath been above related.

CHAP. XXV.

The ordering of a private Company, unto a Funerall Occasion.

When any *Commander* or *Souldier* of worth shall be deceased, a private *Captain* that would shew respect and honour, by *marching* a long with his *Company* attending the *Corps* to the place of *buriall*, must order his *Souldiers* after this manner.

They being summon'd by beat of the *Drum*, to meet at their usuall place of *Rendezvous*, they may be drawn up according to the usuall manner, having a *Van-guard*, *Battail*, and *Reer-guard*, being thus ordered, and each of the *Souldiers* having either in his *hat* a *black feather*, or *ribbin*, the *Captain* may draw them off, and order them to their *long-march*; moving them away in an orderly manner unto the place of him that is deceased, and there make *Alt.* After which he may command the *Muskettiers* in the *Van* to open to the right and left outward to such convenient distance as the *Pikes* may move up between them, and take possession of their first ground, and those *Muskettiers* may *face* about, and move down cleer of the *Pikes*, and after close their *files* inward to order, and *face* to their *Leader*.

Now being in two *divisions*, let them so continue with their *Arms* ordered, untill such time as they shall perceive the *Corps* to be brought forth into the *Street*, then the *Captain* may *face* them all about, and move them some three *Pikes* length before the *Corps*, after which he may command his *Muskettiers* to performe their *Funerall Posture*, which is to have their *Muskets* under their left arme with the *But-end* upward, their *Rests* likewise on that side *trailing*. After which the *Pikes* are to *face* again to their first *Front*, and to lay the narrow end of their *Pikes* down upon the ground, after *facing* about to the left, and and bringing up the *But-end* of their *Pikes* on their right side, conforming themselves with the *Muskettiers* in their *Funerall Postures*. In the next place, the *Ensigne* strips his *colours* off from his *Staffe*, and ties them about his right *Waist*, putting a *black Ribbon* towards the very end of his *Staffe*. he after *faceth* to the *Body* of *Pikes*, standing in the *Reer* of them, and *trailing* his *Staffe* in the same *Posture*, next followeth the *Captain*, having in his hand a *half-pike*, or *leading-staffe*, conforming himselfe likewise to his *Funerall Posture*. Thus being all ready to *march*, and rightly *faced* toward that place where the *Corps* are to be *interred*, are after this manner following to lead and to bring up.

The first *division* of *Muskettiers* which was the *Reer-guard*, is led by the *Lieutenant*, the next *division* of *Muskettiers* that was formerly the *Van-guard*, is led by the second *Serjeant*, the *Body* of *Pikes* is led by the eldest *Serjeant*, he *trailing* a *half-pike* upon the head of them, the *Ensigne* bringing it up, and the *Captain* 12 foot short of him bringing up the *Reer* of the whole *Company*. And after him the *Ministers* *marching* just before the *coffin*, and in the *Reer*, and next unto it the neereft kindred, and after them those that are invited to the *Funeral*.

Having thus stated the manner and order of the *Military Part*, with all others belonging thereunto, for any ordinary *Funerall Occasion*; I shall in the next place proceed to shew their order upon the *March*, and how each *Arms* ought to be disposed before the *Corps* enter into the *Church*, with the rest of the *Train*.

All persons being ordered as before expressed, the *Drums* being covered with *black-bays*, and placed betwixt the second and third *ranks* in each *division*, and all being ready to move, the *Drums* may begin to beat their *Funerall March*, and the *Lieutenant* leading them away with the *But-end* of his *Pattison* upward and *comported*, the rest following, and *marching* in a leasurable, and slow way a long together, untill they come within a hundred foot of the *Church-doore*, or place where the *Corps* are to be *interred*, there making *Alt.* After which let the *Muskettiers* in their *ranks* *file* to the right and left, not advancing ground, and *face* in opposition, making a *Guard* for the rest to passe through, and *resting* their *Muskets*,

Muskets, or putting the *Butt-end* thereof to the ground, with the *Barrel* towards them (which is a conformity to the *Pikes* being ordered.) In the mean time, let the *Pikes* advance their *Arms*, and immediately after move forward betwixt the *Guard* of *Muskettiers*, and let their *ranks* afterward *file* to the right and left, making also a *Guard*, their *Pikes* being ordered, and they, as the rest, *facing* in opposition. Then let the *Captain* who brings up the *Reer* of all his whole Body move forward, with the rest to the *Church-doore*, then falling off in respect of ordering his *Company*, the rest of the *Train* marching into the *Church*.

After which the *Captain* may cause them all to *face* to the *Church*, or to their *Leader*, he standing then before the *Church-doore*, commanding them to *rank* again as they were. After every *Leader* may draw off his *file*, and set their *Arms* a part in each *file* by themselves, and go in to hear part of the *Sermon*, if there should be any such order before-hand from their *Captain*, placing *Sentinels* to look to their *Arms*. And when *Sermon* is almost done, they ought to go forth of the *Church*, and draw forth the *files* by some little warning of the *Drums*, to be in readinesse to answer such directions as they shall receive from their *Captain*. Who may, if he have conveniency of room, draw all his *Muskettiers* into a *Ring*, and the *Pikes* in like manner on the out-side of them, and as soon as the *Souldiers* have notice (being all ready, and presented) that the Body is laid down in the grave, they may upon warning of the *Drum*, give one *volley* of *shot* altogether, and after make ready again, performing the same twice over more. After which, the *Ensigne* may put his *colours* upon his *staffe*, and *surle* them up, then the *Pikes* may be drawn up again into one Body, and the *Muskettiers* into another, and falling in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*, they may *troop* away. And a little before the place of *lodging* the *colours*, they may make *Alt*, and the *Muskettiers* may *flueve* up by the out-side of the *Pikes* from the *Reer* *fil*ing to the right and left, making a *Guard* for the *colours* and *pikes* to *march* through them, and being cleer, and the *colours* lodged, they may *face* about again to the right, and give another *volley* of *shot*; but if there should be such a streight of ground, that the *Muskettiers* cannot be drawn into a *Ring*, then they must be otherwise disposed of by making them into two *ranks*, the one on the one side of the *Street*, and the other of the other side, *facing* them either in opposition, or in an oblique manner; if in opposition, they must present very low, and give *fire* three times altogether as before, with one *volley* after another; if *oblique*, the one *rank* is to be *faced* towards the upper end of the *Street*, and the other towards the lower end, and so may *fire* with lesse danger to each other, the *Pikes* to be *filed* away to the right and left, behinde the *Muskettiers* before they were thus *faced*. And again, where they have not length of ground to contrive the *Muskettiers* into two single *ranks*, they may *fire* altogether, as they stand at *order*, *mouning* up the *Muzzels* of their *Muskets* into the aire, without offending each other. Therefore according to the conveniency of the ground, it must be the discretion of every *Commander* to order his men accordingly to performe his three *volleys* of *shot*, in the most *gracefull* way, which being ended they may all returne to their *Quarters*. And thus much may suffice for satisfaction to any *Commander* in ordering his single *Company* to any *Funerall Occasion*, marching alone of it selfe.

CHAP. XXVI.

The Ordering of a Regiment, to a Funerall Occasion.

WHEN *Companies* are to march in a *Regimentall* way, care must be had that the *Regiment* be first drawn up according to this rule. The *Pikes* to be in one Body and the *Muskettiers* equally divided to flank that Body; after which let the *Major* make his *divisions*, appointing the places of every *Captain*, and *Lieutenant*, where they shall lead, and where they shall bring up. After that they may move away towards the place, or lodging of him that is to be *interred*, and there make *Alt*, opening the *Van-guard* of *Muskettiers*, and *facing* them to the *Reer*, then let the Body of *Pikes*, and them interchange ground, that the *Pikes* may *march* next the *Hearse*, in manner, as before exprest of a private *Company*, whose smaller Bodies take rule from the greater. Then let the *Lieutenant Colonel* lead the *Regiment*, and the *Colonel* bring it up, and so in like

like manner in every *division*, the *Bringers-up* are to lead, and the *Leaders* to bring up. All *Officers* and their *Arms* being thus reversed, the *Front* becomes the *Reer*, and the *Reer*, the *Front*, they must move slowly away, and before the *Corps* passe into the *Church*, there must be ground reserv'd, that after the *Muskettiers* have first made a *Guard*, the *Pikes* may move through them, and may also in like manner *file* in their *ranks* as the *Muskettiers* did, joyning to them, and making a *Guard* in like manner of each *Arms*. After which, the whole *Train* may passe through in an orderly manner into the *Church*, the *Souldiers* in the mean time attending without untill *Sermon* be passed over. And being all in a readinesse, they may give three severall *Peals*, or *Volleys* of *shot*, according to such warnings as shall be given them. After which, the *Souldiers* being *ranked* again as they were; if they have conveniency of ground, the *Major* may cause the *Captain* to draw off their *Companies*, and troop home to their severall *Quarters*, according to their best conveniency. But if they have not room it will be most properest for the *Major* to command the *Muskettiers* to stand, and first to *rank* the *Pikes* again as they were. Then let the *Drums* beat a *Troop* up on the head of the *Pikes* in the *Reer* of the *Colours*, and let the *Ensignes* and *Pikes* first troop away, through the *Guard* of the *Muskettiers*, who being cleer of them, and being led by the *Collonel*, and other *Officers*, there appointed, the *Muskettiers* may also

rank again in like manner, and fall in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*, following them untill they come unto a convenient place, or ground,

for the *Captains* drawing off their *Companies*, as they shall

receiue order from their *Collonel*, *Lieutenant*

Collonel, or *Major*; And here I will

conclude my Discourse con-

cerning the Exercising of

the *Infantry* in all their

Military Motions,

and *Exer-*

cises.

FINIS.





The CONTENTS of the Chapters.

The first Booke.

A Discourse of the Postures, and the handling of Arms, page 1	Divisionall doublings to the right Flank, p.30
Several reasons why the Pike is the more honorable arms, p.2	Intire doublings to the right Flank by Wheeling, <i>ibid.</i>
The postures of the Pike, <i>ibid.</i>	A divisionall doubling to the right Flank by Wheeling, p.31
The Postures of the Musket, p.3	Of Inversion and Conversion, p.32
The postures and charges of the Pike, to be performed in a shorter way, all things acted in order, and nothing done twice, p.4	The words of command for Ranks Ranking and Files Ranking to the Front, they being 12 abreast, & 6 deep, p.33
The Postures of the Musket collected in a brief way, p.5	Ranks Ranking into the Front by Countermarch, p.35
There is also a conformity of posture with the Musket, to those of the Pike, and words of command to be given, as may in many things be received by both arms. p.6	Files ranking into the Front by wheeling, <i>ibid.</i>
The use of the postures of the Pike, <i>ibid.</i>	Ranks ranking, or files ranking at one and the same time, into Front, Reer, and Midst, p.36
The use of the postures of the Musket, p.7	Of files ranking into Front, Reer and midst, p.37
How a Muskettier shall perform the Sencinel posture, <i>ibid.</i>	Of files ranking by wheeling, <i>ibid.</i>
The manner and way to do the Funerall posture, <i>ibid.</i>	Of Ranks filing, or of files filing, or of inversion with their severall sorts and kinds, p.38
The redument of a Musket from the Funerall posture, p.8	Ranks wheeling into the Flanks, p.40
The Souldiers desire to know every perticular place of Dignity, as they stand in rank and file. p.8	Of files filing, or Ranks filing to both flanks, and the midst at one and the same time, <i>ibid.</i>
Reasons for the places of dignity both in rank and file, for the first four in a file 8 deep, p.9	Of ranks wheeling to both the Flanks, p.41
Reasons of the place of the second four as they stand in rank and file, the file being 8 deep, p.10	Of ranks wheeling to the midst of files p.42
Other reasons to cleer it further to the Souldier, <i>ibid.</i>	Of ranks wheeling to both flanks, and into the midst, at one and the same time, <i>ibid.</i>
Reasons given for the last Table of every perticular place of Honour, and Dignity, as they stand, <i>ibid.</i>	Of Countermarches with their severall sorts, p.43
Reasons likewise to be given for the Table 12 a breast, and 12 deep, p.11	Intire countermarching of files, p.44
Brief Reasons to be given of the Dignity of the places of a rank 10 a breast, and of a file ten deep, p.12	Divisionall Countermarching of files, p.45
What distance is, and the reasons for the first beginning of the same, with all their severall uses, <i>ibid.</i>	Intire Countermarches of Ranks, p.46
The severall sorts of distances which are fit and proper for the Souldier to be exercised in, p.13	Divisionall Countermarches of the right and left halfe ranks, p.48
Words of command for the opening of ranks and files to all their distances, with their closings again, <i>ibid.</i>	Of Wheelings with their severall uses, p.49
The use of each perticular distance, and at what time to be used, p.14	Intire Wheelings, <i>ibid.</i>
Directions of the way and manner of drawing up a private company, p.15	Divisionall Wheelings, p.50
Severall reasons given for the placing of the Serjeants after this manner, p.17	Of filings, either for delight or service, p.51
Reasons given for the placing the Serjeants and Drums of lesser Companies, p.18	Severall filings to be performed with any number of men, p.52
A description of a Body of men throughout, with all their severall parts and kinds, p.19	The way to make every man in a file six deepe, according to succession, a file-leader, by doublings, not using one word of command twice, p.53
Directions to all such as shall desire to exercise a Foot company, & admonitions to the Souldiers to be exercised, p.21	The way to make every man in a file six deep file-leader, according to dignity, by a doubling, not using one word of command twice, <i>ibid.</i>
Of the severall kinds of offacings, and their use, with the words of command to performe the same, p.22	The way to make every man in a file eight deepe file-leader by succession, and that by doubling, not using one word of command twice, p.56
The words of command for facings, p.23	The way to make every man in a file eight deep, a file-leader according unto dignity by doubling, p.58
The varieties of Doublings, with their parts and uses, p.24	Figures of Battail to be performed by single files, with some admonitions to those that shall practise themselves herein, p.57
The words of command for Intire Doublings to the Front, p.25	Military experiment upon a file six deep, branching forth eight severall figures of Battail, with their redument, p.59
Divisionall Doublings to the Front, p.26	Words of command to produce the first 8 figures of Battail, with their redument, p.59
Intire doublings to the Front by Wheeling, p.27	Words of command for the second 8 figures of Battail with their redument, p.60
A divisionall doubling to the Front by wheeling, <i>ibid.</i>	Words of command for the third 8 figures of Battail, with their redument, p.61
Intire Doublings to the right Flank, <i>ibid.</i>	The way to make 12 severall figures of Battail with a file 10 deep, with their redument, p.62
	Twelve severall figures of Battail with a file 12 deep, with their redument, p.63

The second Booke.

Concerning the Artillery and the Military Gardens, together with the Private Meetings; in and about the City of London, p.67
 The first Exercise of four files six deep, p.68
 A doubling consisting of 16 in number, every one differing from the other, and not reduced untill the last word of command, *ibid.*
 Eight several countermarches with their reduction, p.69
 Ten several wheelings with their reduction, *ibid.*
 Six figures of battail with several firings thereunto belonging, p.70
 The second Exercise with four files six deep, p.73
 Eighteen several doublings with their reductions, *ibid.*
 Twelve several countermarches with their reduction, p.74
 Twelve several wheelings with their reductions, p.75
 Several plain firings upon this Exercise of 24 men, with figures of battail, belonging to the same, p.76
 The third Exercise with four files six deep, p.80
 Thirty several words of command, of Inversion and conversion, *ibid.*
 Next followeth several figures of battail, with firings, upon the same, for the performance whereof, p.82
 The fourth Exercise consisting of four files eight deep, p.88
 The fifth Exercise with four files eight deep, p.94
 Thirty several doublings with their reduction, *ibid.*
 Plain firings, and figures of Battail, p.95
 The sixth Exercise with four files eight deep, p.100
 Thirty doublings by countermarches with their reduction, *ibid.*
 Plain firings, and figures of Battail, p.101
 The seventh Exercise consisting of 64 men, eight files eight deep, p.105
 Two and twenty several doublings by wheelings, with their reduction, *ibid.*
 Several firings, and figures of Battail, with 64 men, p.106
 The eighth Exercise consisting of 64 men eight files eight deep, p.110
 Several figures of Battail, p.112
 The ninth Exercise consisting of 64 men, eight files, eight deep, p.117
 Eight several countermarches with their reduction, p.116
 Ten several wheelings with their reduction, p.117
 Plain firings, and figures of Battail, *ibid.*
 The tenth Exercise consisting of 24 Files being six deep, according to the first drawing up of a private Company, p.121
 Eight entire several doublings with their reduction, *ibid.*
 Eight several countermarches with their reduction, *ibid.*
 Eight entire doublings by wheelings with their reduction, p.122
 Plain firings and figures of Battail, *ibid.*
 The eleventh Exercise with 24 files six deep, p.127
 Eight countermarches with their reduction, *ibid.*
 Eight several wheelings with their reduction, *ibid.*
 Plain firings and figures of Battail, p.128
 The twelfth Exercise consisting of 24 files six deep, p.132
 A doubling to make every man a File-leader by dignity, *ibid.*
 Several wheelings with their reduction, p.133
 Plain firings and figures of Battail, *ibid.*

The third Booke.

Concerning the drawing up of Regiments, with their several numbers, forms, manner and ways, p.139
 The manner of drawing up a Regiment consisting of six companies, containing in it a Collonel, a Lievt. Colonel, a Major, & three Captains, every one one having 108 men in a company, and the three Field-officers 144, which makes compleatly up 756 men, whereof two thirds are Muskettiers, and one third of Pike, the Files being six deep, p.140
 The reasons follow for the placing of the Captains, their Colours, and their Lieutenants, after the manner before set down, p.142
 More perticuler reasons for the placing of the Captains, and Lieutenants, of the first grand Division, *ibid.*
 Reasons for the placing of the Officers of the second grand Division, p.143
 The ordering of a Regiment to the long march, with the placing of the Officers, and the leading of carriages, p.144
 The first Exercise of a Regiment in the plainest and easiest way, p.146
 Doublings belonging to a Regiment, p.150
 Four several wheelings with their Reduction, *ibid.*
 Countermarches not fit to be used in the exercising of Regiments, *ibid.*
 Several firings to be performed upon the former figure, and how to be managed by the several Officers, p.152
 The manner of drawing up a Regiment, consisting of seven companies, containing in the four Captains, 12 files of Muskettiers, and six of Pikes, in each of their perticuler companies, and in the three Field-officers, 16 files a piece of Muskettiers, and eight of Pikes, which amounts to the number of 864 men, p.153
 The manner of drawing up and placing the Officers of a Regiment, consisting of eight companies, having in it a Col. a Lieutenant Colonel, a Major, and five Captains, their number of men in each company, being equall with the former Regiment, they amount unto 972 men, p.158
 How to make the figure of a Ring, with its use and service, p.160
 The manner of drawing up a Regiment, consisting of ten companies, having in it seven Captains, and three Field-Officers, being in each perticuler company, the former numbers, which in all amounts unto 1198 men, p.162
 The manner both of the drawing up, and the order of the longmatch of Col. *Rainsborough* his Regiment, bringing up the Reer of the foot of the Army, under the command of the Lord Gen. *Fairfax*, at their first marching through the City of London, on the seventh of August, 1647. p.164
 A third way of drawing up a Regiment of ten companies, after the manner used amongst the Swedes, p.166
 The way of drawing up a Regiment consisting of 12 companies, the nine Captains, having 18 Files in each company, and the three Field-officers every one of them 24 files, whereof, there are two thirds of Muskettiers, and one of Pikes, in each perticuler company, amounting in all to 1404 men, p.169
 The manner of drawing up a Regiment, according to the Swedish Brigade, p.170
 The manner of drawing up a Brigade, or *Terris*, being a third part of an Army, according to the practise of the *Netherland*, under the command of the Prince of *Orange*, p.171
 How to draw up an Army of 12 Regiments of Foot, and three of Horse, the Foot amounting unto 18664 men, and the Horse unto 3000; in all 14664 men, p.174

The Contents.

The severall duties belonging to the Foot in a Regiment,
as followeth by degrees from a private Souldier unto a Col-
lonel of the same: and first of a private Souldier, &c. p.176
Of Military Watches, p.187

The ordering of a private company, unto a Funerall occasi-
on, p.190

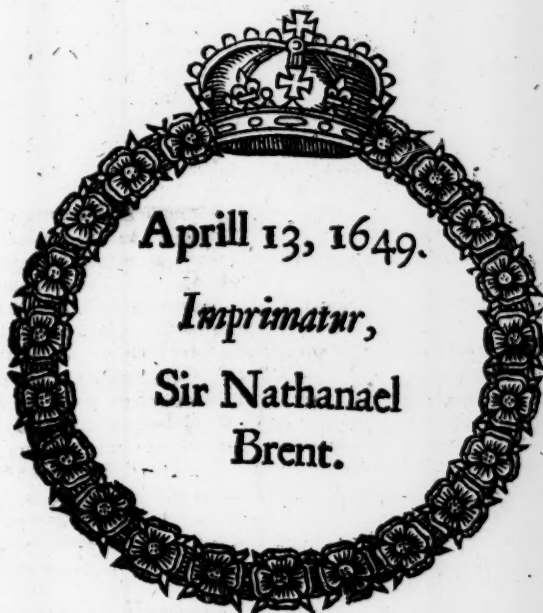
The ordering of a Regiment, to a Funerall occasion, p.
191

Errata.

Page 5 line the last read right side, p.18.l.41.r.eldest Serjeant, p.19.l.8.r.otherwise, p. *ibid*.l.11.r. long March. Every
p.22.l.14. by their leader, p.24.l.7.r. in the p. *ibid*.l.36.r.censue, *ibid*.l.38. *dele* or the half-files, p.32.l.12.r. not, p. *ibid*.
l.13.r.l.p.33.l.6.r.outward, p.43.l.38. r.marking, p. *ibid*.l.46.of files, p. *ibid* r.or. p.45.l.34.r. and faced again to the front,
p.46.l.39.r.file, p.49.l.11.r. *Chorean*, p. *ibid*.l.23. r.gain, p.52.l.9.r.ranks. p. *ibid*.l.27.r.right for left, p. *ibid*.l.28. *dele* in
the rear of the Muskettiers, r.before the pikes, p.55.l.40. *dele* s, *ibid*.l.42. *dele* s, p.56.l.42.r.eight, p.56l.7. *dele* as have,
p. *ibid*.r.they. p.74. *dele*, l.33.p.104.l.13.r. they stand, p.139.l.49.r.forms, p.140.l.13. put in 3. p. *ibid*.l.53.r. from. p.144.
l.13. *dele* long, p.145.l.29.for good r.guard, p. *ibid*.l.34.r.thus, p. *ibid*.l.13.r.rest, p.146.l.15 r.147.p.l.152.15.r.giveth, p.
153.l.29.r.bring them, p. *ibid*.l.29. r.where, p.158.l.40.r. fifth, p.159.l.50. *dele* and, p.171.l.40.r. Captain, p.174.l.25.r.
the eldest, p.180.l.24.r. in hurting, p.188.l.53.r. and if they, p.189.l.51.r.to. In Major Hayne's *Ogdoosick* correct
these few faults, line 22. read *Genius*, *ibid*.line 30. *dele* s, *ibid*.l.34. *dele* s, in column 2, l.8. r. Of the *ibid*.l.28, r., for a.

In the Dedication the last line, *dele* the liberty.

Cc 2



1739
1649
8740



The Copie of a LETTER, written by the
Honourable, the *Militia* of the City of
London, to Sir Nathanael Brent.

Honoured Sir:



He bearer hereof wil present you
with a TREATISE of THE
COMPLEAT BODY OF THE
ART MILITARY: Which
being approved of by diverse
of the most experienced Com-
manders amongst us, we desire for the Publike good
of the Nation, that you will give an allowance of it
for the Presse with expedition.

Sir,

Your affectionate friends,

*Guild-Hall, London,
Aprill 11, 1649.*

Isaack Penington:

Sir John Wollastone:

John Dethick:

Philip Skippon:

Robert Manwarring:

Owen Row:

William Underwood:

Matthew Sheppard:

Robert Tichborne:

Thomas Noel:

Mark Hildersley

Daniel Taylor:

THE COMPLEAT BODY OF THE ART MILITARY:

Exactly compiled, and gradually composd for the
Foot, in the best refined manner, according to the practise
of the *Modern Times*.

Divided into Three BOOKS.

The First, containing the *Postures* of the *Pike* and
Musket, with their *Conformities*, and the *Dignities* of *Ranks* and *Files* :
Their manner of joyning to the compleating of a *Body* : their
severall *Distances*, *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Counter-*
marches, *Wheelings*, and *Firings*.

With diverse *Experiments* upon single *Files*.

The Second, comprehending twelve *Exercises*.

Viz. { Three with 24 }
 { Three with 32 } Men.
 { Three with 64 }
 { Three with 144 }

The Third, setting forth the drawing up and exercising
of *Regiments* after the manner of *Private Companies*, with the forming
Brigades, and *Armies*, the placing of *Cannon* and *Artillery*,
according to the practise of severall *Nations*, *Armies*,
and *Commanders* in Chief.

Together with the duties of all private *Souldiers* and *Officers* in a
Regiment, from a *Sentinell* to a *Collonel*.

As also the duties of the Military Watches.

Lastly, directions for ordering *Regiments* or *Private Companies*
to *Funerall Occasions*.

Illustrated with Varietie of *Figures* of *Battail*, very profitable and
delightfull for all *Noble* and *Heroick Spirits*, in a fuller manner
then hath been heretofore published.

By RICHARD ELTON, Serjeant Major.

Cant. 3. 8. *They all handled the Sword, and are expert in War.*

L O N D O N :
Printed by ROBERT LEYBOURN, in *Monkswell*
Street neer Creeplegate, M D C L.



To the Mirrour of Chivalry , and Honour of all
Martiall Discipline , the most Victorious
THOMAS LORD FAIRFAX
His Excellency , Captain Generall of all Military
Forccs for the Parliament of ENGLAND;
All Health and Happines, here
and hereafter.

Most eminent, and Illustrious
SIR,
May it please your Excellency,

THe Glory of all Arts is Action ; the Honour of all Action is
Vertue; the Crown of all Vertues is Perfection : the Excel-
lency whereof, (according to the perfection of Humanity)
is so essentiall in Your Excellency , that You are become
at once the Wonder and the Honour of *Europe*, neither can
that immortall Fame of Yours be conceal'd from the rest of
the habitable World) who shall from Age to Age record, and from Antiqui-
ty to Infantry relate those matchles Victories, and unimitable Atchievments,
which the Bounty and Blessing of Heaven hath enrich'd your Hand, and
beautified your name withall. In all whose Honorable and succesfull Under-
takings, I had an aime at no greater happinesse, then to have been the least
Part in so noble an Employment under your Excellency, towards the per-
fecting of the welfare and happinesse of this Kingdom , and Common-
Wealth, had not the Military Affairs of this Honorable Metropolis unavoid-
ably engaged and obliged me to attend the Service of their own *Militia*.
And therein my Lo: I have spared neither diligence, nor Study, that might
conduce to the great work of Arms, then in Embrio, now in perfection, ex-
cepting only opposition and Envie, which the greatest Honours never yet
were free from : A part of which perfection hath always flowed from the
industry of the Officers, and practise of the Students of that Warlike Univer-
sity, wherein, although I have not (as a member thereof) with such dexter-

The Epistle Dedicatory.

ty as *Cadmus* sent out well experienced Souldiers in a Day, yet have I not layn so idle, as *Lepidus*, and wish to be warm'd more from the Sun, than my own labours, of which the effects are now upon the publick Test, but more formidably your Excellencies: to whose Patronage and Protection I have presumed to devote this eldest Son and First-born of all my forepast Studies, Practise and Employment in the gradation of Military Affairs. All the following sheets, which relate to that Heroick Subject, such as they are, and in such a dresse, as now they have put on, submissively and primarily present themselves, with all their worth and beauty (if any be discernable within them) unto Your Excellency as to their tutelar Angell, and most Orthodox Warriour, that either Pole can boast of. In confidence, therefore, of your *Excellencies* native Candor towards all Ingenuity, (and more especially that, wherein your own transcendent, and unparallel'd Honours are more perspicuously and really delineated, then all the vain and empty Glory of the dull and Phlegmatick Pretenders to Chivalry can be Map'd, or Landskip'd by the effeminate hand of Flattery) this late abortive, in full shape, due proportion, and, (if Truth deceive me not) in just maturity, hath broken from the wombe of my seven yeers endeavours, to see the Light both of the censorious and judicious World, and in that Light it cannot but live, if your *Excellencies* goodnesse shall vouchsafe to foster it, and must not die, except your displeasure please to wound it. And whether this shall live or die: I shall not further aspire at any loftier pitch of Honour, than to have Commission, the liberty to subscribe my self

Your Excellencies

most humbly devoted Servant

Richard Elton.



The Right Honourable, the judicious and grave
Trustees and Guardians of the Militia of the
 Honourable City of L O N D O N.

The Lord Major, *Isaac Pennington*, *Sir John Wolla-*
ston Knight; *Thomas Atkins*, *John Fowke*, *Wil-*
liam Gibs, *Thomas Foot*, *Christopher Packe*, *Row-*
land Wilson, Aldermen of the City of London;
 Major Generall *Philip Skippon*, *Colonel Francis*
West, Lieutenant of the Tower, *Col. John Penn*,
Col. Edmund Harvey, *Francis Allen*, Major *Rich-*
ard Salway, *Gregory Clement*, *Col. Owen Row*,
Col. Robert Tichborne, *Col. Matthew Shephard*,
Col. William Underwood, *William Wyberd*, *John*
Deathicke, *John Strange*, *Daniel Tayler*, *Col. Ri-*
chard Turner, *Col. Nathaniel Camfield*, Lieut. Col.
Doyley, Master *Maurice Getbin*, Captain *Nath-*
Lacy, Major *Edmund Waring*, *Col. Robert Man-*
waring, *Col. John Heyes*, *Thomas Arnold*, *Samuell*
Moyer, *Thomas Noell*, *Stephen Eastwick*, *Richard*
Shute, *Mark Hildersly*, *James Russell*, *Tempest Mil-*
ner, Captain *Blackwell senior*, *John Pocock*.

Right Honourable, Honourable; and ever to be honour'd Heroes:

W hose Honors joyntly, and severally are all sprung more from your just
 deserts, than ambitious desires; whose provident industry for this
 Citie and Kingdoms security, shall more eternize your Names
 unto Posterity, than your magnificent opulencie can make you after
 Death survive, and flourish in your hopefull issue. Since it al-
 ways seem'd good in your Eyes, (even from my first initiation into your Mili-
 tary Service, (more out of an in-nate humanity of yours, wherewith your Ho-
 nours

The Epistle Dedicatory.

honours abound, than from any merits of mine own, which I acknowledge but mean) still to number Me for one and the same, both in degree and service, in your Noble and Martiall Employments, notwithstanding the many changes occasioned by the necessity of our Times, when so many erratick stars have shot from their Hemisphere, yet that you have been ever pleased, to continue and fix me in the same Constant Orbe, wherein I first moved as Serjeant Major, under my Honorable Col. John Belamy sometimes a deserving Member of your Honorable Society, and as if all this unusuall Bounty and Honour had been yet too litile, since you were further pleased, after a deliberate and serious perusall of this ensuing Tract, The Compleat body of Military Art, to compleat me so much more your Servant by obligation, in approving and commending both my name and labours to the Press, thereby to make me more eminent, if not more usefull to the world. If I say after all these liberall variety of your Honours favours, I should pretermitt them as ingratefull; or neglect them as forgetfull; I might deservedly be rendered stigmatiz'd unto Futurity, with an indeleble brand of infamy. But I have neither so slightly studied your Honours, nor so easily read over my self, as to make so high a Breach upon Humanity or Ethicks. Accept therefore. (Right Honourable and the rest) this oblation and sacrifice of my Gratitude with as much equanimity, as it adresses it self unto you with humility. It hath but newly kist the triumphant Hand of our victorious Cæsar, the very Prince and Master of War, from whose glorious Tent, it hath taken flight, to rest within your warlike walls, where it was begotten, born, and bred; and where it shall (spight of Envy) dwell, and inherit as legitimate (if your Honours deign to harbour it) till Trophies lie forgotten, and Time shall be no more, what remains is only my daily Orizon for all your Honours happinesse, with the subscrib'd Attest of my faithfull duty in the Progressse of your Military service, to which I stand in duty and conscience obliged, and shall (God willing) perform to the utmost faculties and endeavours of

Your Honours

most strictly engaged Servant,

Richard Elton.



To the truly valiant, and expertly accomplish'd Officers and Commanders in warlike Affairs, his fellow Souldiers of the Honourable Exercise, and Military Meeting in that Martiall

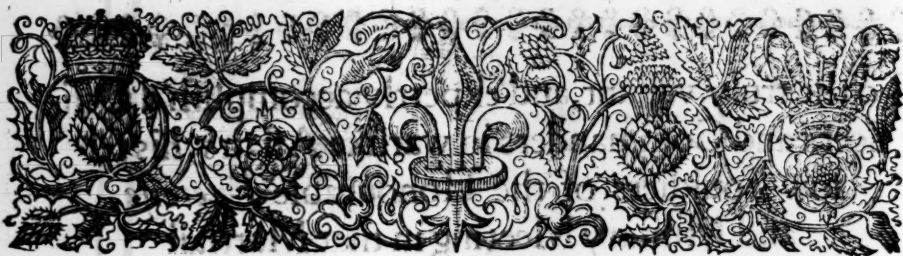
A R E A adjoining to Christ-Church
L O N D O N.

Major *John Haynes*, Captain *William Johnson*,
Captain *Henry Potter*, Master *Richard Hobby*,
Captain *John Hynde*, with the rest of those worthy Leaders and Souldiers of that our Society,
Respect and Greeting.

Honour'd S I R S , and my much endeared Friends :

IT is not my lowest happiness, nor my meanest Honor, that one and the same Climate owns our Nativities, one and the same City allow'd our Freedoms, one and the same Society honours our Employment, and I hope one and the same affection shall ever unite our Relations. When I cast up the revolution of time wherein we have exercised together, and for so many yeares contemplate your free and forward choise to honour me in the primary places of Direction and Discipline, but more especially that remarkable honour of your respect and favour, in the unanimous Election of me to be your Commander in Chief, upon one of your grand and publike Days of your drawing forth into the Champaigne, where your severall Exercises were the sole Object of that Days admiration, and the subject of future Times applause. I must of necessity conclude my self your Debtor, beyond the hope of satisfaction. Nor can the knowing world but confess, that even in your private Academy, as able and as learned Souldiers have commenc'd renowned Commanders; (excepting the two publique Gardens Artillery, and Military) as in any warlike *Gymnasium*, that this our *Island* can report off for her own; yea, and to whose valour and discretion she owes as much for her honour, and her safety. My earnest desires are, that your Resolves, and Exercises in this Art, may never be retarded, but heightened to that glorious pitch, that you may be able to send forth knowing Souldiers for all honorable and lawfull Engagements of war, whether Forreign or Domestick. Towards which I humbly offer here my talent, which comes unto you as the latest Emissary from the honorable *Militia*, to whom it hath but now prostrated it's service; and the best Orator of my grateful acknowledgment of your many and undeserved favours towards me, for which I shall, in the most inviolable bonds of friendship, ever expresse my self

Your observant Servant R. E.



To the impartial and judicious
R E A D E R.

IF upon the first view of the Frontispiece or Title, thou mayst haply lay by the Book, as having already perused variety of Auteurs relating to the same Subject, and apply that of the Wise man, There is no new thing under the Sun, I must reply with the Philosopher with reverence to the Preacher, and say, that *Ars longa, vita brevis*, and that all the expert and learned in this art have written before, and what succession shall dictate to the Ages to come, will be too little to leave nothing new to perfect it, so long as there are those *Ratiocinia plurima*, which the same wisest King complains off, those many strange stratagems forged in the heart, and anvil'd in the Brain of man to bring his ambitious and illicite Designs about: and so long as there are his new inventions to offend, there must be our new preventions to defend that Right He would abridge us off. The sad and heavy truth of these productions, our own times have given us testimonies large enough off, and those have partly occasioned the first conception of this Child of War, but the importunity of friends have now mid-wiv'd it into the world, lest if it should have come forth a Post-humall piece, after the Death of the Parent, it might not perhaps have been born with perfect Symmetrie, and due proportion in all the limbs of it's Body: as it is now shap'd, it is in thy hand to breed up for thy own service: and I may modestly say, it will read thee some new Lectures, that thou wilt confess have hardly yet been heard in the School of War, nor ever taught in our Age but by

Thy well wishing and well meaning

Friend

Richard Elton.



To the *Ambour*.

HAd thy *Compendium* seen the light when first
 Our *English* Nation Foes began to thrust
 Alter the heart-blood of our Liberty,
 To prick it's vitall veine; our misery
 Had been increast by it, so far as Arr,
 With Resolution joynd, could play it's part.
 Hadst thou led forth this Warriour at that time
 Thou hadst been guilty of this very crime,
 Of jynning nerves and sinew's to the Arme,
 Of those who sought this Nation to great harme.
 What strength's a number without discipline?
 And in what volumes more then this of thine?
 Happy we were in that Obscurity
 Of this thy Track; but not that from the eye
 Of *Englands* friends 'twas hid: might there have been,
 A view of it on this side of the Screen,
 What aid should we have had? yet fiercer blowes
 To strik this Screen a side: we may suppose
 The Quarrell would have changed; who should see
Elton's Compendium, have th' immunitie,
 And franchise of it's use, well we might
 Fight to enjoy, this that doth reach to fight.
 He that shall look on thy Conformities
 Of *Ranks* and *Files*, the severall Dignities:
 How these compos'd as Members do complear;
 A *Marshall-Body*, fashions it so neat,
 As that each part is fixt in's proper place,
 And not *Chast* together; but a face
 Of distance, order's seen; he would soon say
 The like's not extant at this very day;
 And well may I sound forth the very fame,
 Who have beheld the book, to which the name
 Of *Elton's* set; It's for thy lasting prayse
 Which will survive the ancient of thy days;
 And for the honour of this Commonweal,
 That it hath bred one who by wound can heal,
 That's skilfull to destroy, and thereby saves,
 Our life of *Freedom*, keep it from the Graves,
 The Enemies have digged; that it's Memory
 (When therein laid) might not be seen in Story.
 I Face about thy *Facings* to behold;
 And face again, when once I do unfold

The work of others, to thy gallant Mode,
 And there my thoughts do rally: for there is shew'd
 Such *Wheelings*, *Donblings*, *Facings*, that report,
 So loud the worth of no man in that sort.
 As these do thine: Thy *File-experiments*,
 Are pleasurable, and breeds discontents,
 In none, but those, who'd be superlative,
 In *Marshall Art*: let them forbear to strive
 Thee to excell: For who can go beyond
 Perfection? thereat every man must stand
 And exercise his *Genius* got so far.
 Among the *Planets* let us fix this Star
 Of *Military Art*, and round about
 Twelve places *Exercises*: Then *Mars* look out
 With glorious *Splendor*, and in blood would wade,
 For to maintain the rest are retrograde.
 Yemen *Stratagical*, if ye would view,
 These Signes below, ye must speak it as true
Astrology; that those above are bright,
 But *Mars* array'd in these of greatest light,
 And wonder not to see a Man of War,
 Of so much beauty as to want a scar
 In Discipline; Order is the shield
 Keep off advantages, often win the Field
 As well as *Valour*: who can suffer rout
 That's on thy side? let him but face about
 That fears to be o'come, and well observe
 Thy *Stations*, *Motions*, eye where thy *Reserve*
 Doth stand, where Intervals are made
 Where Cannons play: and he may drive a Trade
 Of buying Courage; and by these Figures cast
 On which side Conquest will triumph at last.
 And if in Battell life is dispossess
 Of it's possession, (house of *Clay* the best)
 By entry of force, tenure arbitrary
 Thou hast *Mars* cloth'd in *Sable Military*,
 For to attend thy forced Funerall,
 This is the sequel of thy manly fall;
Elton I'll leave thee at the very Grave,
 But living: and when dead thou wilt sure have
 Breath in the Body of this work, a Gaile
 Unto posterity thy worth to saile.

Collonell *John Backstead*.

An Ogdocostick on his much esteemed Friend the AUTHOR.

Barriff did bravely, Barriff's dead, yet lives;
His Worth'll worke, his Name a being gives;
Excelling Elton, this of thine is such,
That after Ages shall applaud as much
Thy fame; this thy *Rhinoceros Theory*,
Will teach a *Practique*, raise thy *Memory*
When thou art dead, and lend thy *Living Name*
A Room i'th *Golden Kalender* of Fame.
What thou hast here with *Skilfull Study* done,
I'th *Basis* once by *Barriff* was begun,
Onely begun, he fram'd a *Preparation*.
I saw it when it was in *Agitation*.
And surely had e're this attain'd it's *Birth*;
Had not he been translated from the *Earth*.
How new are thy *Designes*? How full of *Worth*?
How well approv'd? with what *Rare Art* set forth?
Th' *Ingenious Reader* that shall over-look,
And view, with single-sighted *Eye* thy *Book*,
Must say, that *Writers* all of th' *Art of War*,
Of thee, both *Foreign*, and *Domestique*, far
Come short. Well may that *Body* be compleat,
Where such a *Genuine Genius* has his Seat.
This *Art* thou hast compiled so exact,
So gradually compos'd throughout thy *Traict*
That well, the compleat *Body* of that *Art* thou know'st
It's styl'd, where every *Member*, and each part
Of all *Three Books*, in manner best refin'd,
On him looks lovely; That to read's inclin'd,
Far bee't, & far from me, the thought to flighe
Th' *Offensive*, or more just *Defensive* fight.
Bequeath'd to us by *Souldier's* head, & hand,
Though both with us, or sprang from *Foreign Land*;
Yea, or the *knowing Skill* of those that Thrive
In *Mars*, his *Methods*, and do now *Survive*.
I much commend them all, *Praise* worthy men;
Yet thee extoll must most of all my *Pen*.
Plenty of *Postures*, and many *Motions*,
Various *Figures*, and *Delightfull Nations*,
Of these large *Volumes*, I have seen, but who
Such *Regimentall Forms* as thine can show?

JOHN HAYNE.

Machivell, Arkham, Hexham, Weymouth, Ward,
Alban, Bingham, Foberis, Cruso, Gerrard,
An I divers other, honour'd Sons of War,
Their famous, learn'd *Traictates* extant are;
Where we may read rare *Castrametations*
With deep *Sir Archemick Demonstrations*
Of the *Persians, Thebans, and Athenians*,
Of *Lacedemons, and Tannians*,
With grave *Grecian, and Italian Writers*,
Brave *Romans, and Macedonian Fighters*,
Accomplish'd *Achievements of Illyrians*,
Actings of th' *Asians, and Europeans*,
Models of Marching, and levying Forces,
Incamping, Trailing, Drilling Discourses
Of both *English-and, Low-countrey Spirits*,
Whose *valorous valour, Honour merits*,
Bellona's Bleeding Battails, day and night
Both *Ancient and Modern* I might recite,
With *Distances, Doublings, Wheelings, Facings*,
And *Fronts, Reer, Wings, Midst, and other placings*:
Though with *Minerva*, mighty *Mars* conspire,
With their conjoynd *Cunning, Craft, and Tre*,
Where's thy *Peer, Maritall, or Military*,
Private *Practiser* or *Artillery*?
Thine *Initiation*, yet is fresh in Mind,
When by thy selfe, thou wert at first Assign'd
For *Christ Church meetings*, and entertained
Friendly. Which is weekly still maintained.
Thy little then, thence so much acquired
Knowledge of Arms, is far and neer admired.
What though the *Ignoramus Dolishman*
Do scosse, or *Momus* spit what Spire he can,
It matters not; here's no *conceited froth*,
Tis *Solid Substance*, and *Experience* both,
True *Discipline* display'd no *Painted Puffe*,
No *Emptie, Inped, or Bumbasted Stuffe*,
Heroicks all that love the *Warlike way*,
These *Expert Exercises* read, then say,
Doubtlesse you will, for you shall finde it true,
Elton thou dost Excell, Elton Adieu.

Serjeant Major.

Colonell John Baskin

Ad amicum charissimum *Richardum Elton*, Subchiliarchum,
in hoc suo opere præclaro.

MArtius hèn, nimium vere fuit Anglia Campus,
Et non una, rubet, ferrallibus Allia saxis;
Sic ut defleret nostros, vel Hibernia Casus.
Decolor erubuit Tharissis, vitreosque crudere
Mutavit fluctus, caruerunt arva Colonis;
Non aliter Cadmi pubes, simul edisa sulcus
Emicuit, stringunt gladios & pectora ferro:
Donec qua cunas dederat, dat terra sepulchrum.
Ergò quid obductum jam recrudescere valens
Quid male sopitus iuvas, hèn, renovare favillas
Et licet infidum & fallax, turbare serenum.
At non ista tibi mens est, qua nempe venena
Describit, succos, & adhuc ignota novercis
Gramina, non ideo facit, ut Locusta perita
Disceret hinc staman properata obrumpere vitæ
Palmas alii trabeas, sellasque curules,
Electi candoris æquos, & nominis ærum
Facient, at noster, quanto præstantior Author
Ipso victor ovans, ducit, de Marte triumphos
Pila Latinorum cedant, Graeque Saxissæ,
Gesæque Gallorum, Rostrato Belga corvino,
Nec fidas, nec Maure tuis phætrato sagittis,
Exemplar petat hinc, ambit quicunque Trophæa.
Non posthac dubio, nuncet victoria pennæ
Cui saveat, totus iactantior explicet alas
Certa, ille, qui te sequente, se addicere possit.

Ovans. posuit & Composuit,

Henricus Potter

Eidem Ejusdem.

WHat make we thronging our *Eucommion's* here
Before thy Book, racking the Readers care
To gloss thy Work, for we can do no more,
Let him read thee, read thy *Polemick* store
There, he shall know thee better, than Poësie
Can render thee, or the choicest fancie
Reach too, though dropt from *Homer's* learned quill,
Or thee by culminate *Persuassu* Hill
There, both the *Scriptur's*, were they here agen
Might discipline their valours, and their men
Of War, by a new method teach to spare
More, the Conquering *Cæsar* now in War:
There the bold *Macædon* might learn to gain
An other World, and keep it with less pain
Let *Europe* rise, and learn to war by thee,
They'd make the World in time one Monarchy.
If Poets, that the Acts of Heroes sing
Be crown'd with Bays, let them the *Lawren* bring
And wreath thy Temples; this thy Work will tell
The World, Thou hast done best, though many well.

To the worthy Author his honor'd friend Serjeant Major Richard Elton.

TO give thee prayse according to thy skill,
I want both *Virgils* verse and *Homer's* quill. **M**
Experimentall knowledge of thine art,
Commands my *Muse* to sacrifice her part.
To thy *Compendious* Body: so compleat,
It may be term'd a *Lezbian* squires feat.
Such sure defence was ne're in *Ajax's* shield,
As *Mars* and *Pallas* met in *Elton's* field.
Heroick art; indeed, that doth unite
In one, a number numberlesse to fight.
As if one hand did guide them all; say more:
Ne'r were such *Principles* in Print before.
The mighty *Whale* hath not so nimble motion,
As many smaller fishes in the Ocean:
But many times would brush against a rock,
And break himselve in pieces by some knock:
Wer't not for th' little *Musculus* his friend,
That swims before and safely him attends.
A multitude that put on spear and shield,
If want this *Musculus* must loose the field:
But *Musculus* their friend, their eyes, their guide,
Thou keep'st them safe, though rocks on every side.
That shew'st them *Distances* both broad and long,
Facings and *Doublings* in our English tongue.
Thy *Counter-marches*, and thy *Wheelings* are
Fit for the mighty King of *Swedens* War.
Thy experiments with *single files* descry,
Mars and *Minerva* joyned dexterously.
But when thy many *Maniples* I see,
Drawn from on *Cohorts*, in thy four times three
Composed Exercises, private Companies
In regimentall forms, placing Artilleries,
Cannons both great and small; denominations,
With the prime *Artists* of their severall nations
Duties how private Souldiers may excell,
Though Iain *Perdu*, or set as *Sentinell*.
Minors and *Majors* too, do not refuse
To learn your duties; oh! that 'twere in use
Amongst all Souldiers: Lust should make no man bleed,
Would day nee'r saw so tragicall a deed.
Variety of figures when we mark,
The *Romane* writers surely were it'h dark.
But thou enlightenest them and all the earth,
By forming sundry *Stars* in this new birth.
The *Heathens* God of War, which heretofore
(How er' great *Greece*, and *Rome* did him adore.)
But an apprentice was so short of thee
The master of their trade, and now made free.
Fame blow aloud from every Marshall heart,
Here's one impales a Kingdome; by his art
Teacheth what's *Modern*, and of ancient dayes
Make him a garland of your greenest Bayes,
Adorn'd with richest trophies: quickly, too;
For he deserves a deeper dy then blue.
Elton T'el on thy name shall never dy,
Tis Anagram'd in Souldiers memory.

John Hinde, Captain.

In honorem RICHARDI ELTONIS.

SI vir sit quisquam militaris, doctus, & acer,
Hic ELTON certo carmina cerne mea.
Qui res conjungit varias, concordia libri,
Ut justo belli fulmine Turca flect.
Respice RICHARDI Xisti certamina belli
ELTONIS; studio te colit, ornat, amat.
Munera fac igitur capias hac fronte remissa
Carmina, quin meritis inferiora tuis.

Johannes Hinde Captain.

To his Honored Friend the worthy Authour.

AN Army without rule a tumult is,
Great Powers have come to nought because of this.
But (Friend) hee'l see who doth thy labour read
Confusion methodiz'd, and ordered.
And he that studies thee, in thee shall finde
A martiall hand, rull'd by a peacefull minde.
Thy Book doth teach the use of Arms and then
Thy example how to lay them down again.
War is good Physick; but tis no good diet:
'Tis the best art to study to be quiet.
And in a safe wel-grounded peace to rest
Of all the Postures in thy Book's the best.

The good Centurion.

THere is a Fort impregnable, a Tower
Whose top's in Heaven; which neither force nor power
Can scale or undermine, within's no guilt
It's wall'd with brasse, and on a Rock tis built:
Time cannot starve, nor treason make it yield:
Good conscience is a Feast, and Faith's a Shield.
Hee's the best Souldier who hath learn'd this art
To keep with diligence his life, his heart.

William Clark Captain.

For his intimate and worthy Friend the Author
Major, *Richard Elton*.

Should *Art* with *Valour* strive, 'twere hard to say,
Which of the twain should bear the bell away;
But both conjoyn'd succeeding consequence:
Some makes discovery of eithers Excellence
Art under-valued: by power or will
Craves valour; its assistant conforming still
To Reason, Judgment, Experience, and Skill.

Where *Valour* breaking forth, to its ut-moſt length
Unfurnished of Judgment, Skill, or Strength:
Is tearm'd Fool-hardneſſe, and oft recants
The lack of that which ſhould ſupply its wants
Thy Book my deereſt Friend (both comprehends)
Valour b'ing taught by *Art*, *Art* force extends
To Reason, Judgment; and Heroick Ends.

Lo, in one Volume, here thou doſt explain
What Germany, Italy, Netherlands or Spain
Can render us; and to our doors haſt brought
What many thouſands have ſo deerly ſought:
Nay, without flattery thou doſt out-vye
In this thy Body of th' *Art Military*
The exacteſt method, yet produc't to th' eye,

Not underval'ing thoſe whoſe love and merit
By private acts declare a publick ſpirit;
Whoſe ſtudy, charge, delight and induſtry
Are the ſupporters of arms art, deny
From whence as from the Ocean doth flow
Thoſe Rivolets that make us perfect grow
In this rare art to encounter with the fo.

Then ere I leave thee, give me leave to ſay
To any he that ſhall thy book ſurvey
Love, *Art* and *Valour*; center in thy breaſt
Love, *Art*-commands; and art obeys *Love's* Heſt:
Valour attending both; who can deny
But *Elton's* Work may to poſterity
The name of *Elton* keep in memory.

Ex animo tuo, Armis & Artibus bellicibus, bene-
cupiens utriusque Horti Stratiotici & Militaris Officia-
lium unus,

Johannes Hunnings.]

For his much respected Friend, and old fellow
Souldier, Major RICHARD ELTON.

E*Ncomiums* cannot add unto the *praise*,
Of those that much deserve, their Works will rayse
Themselves a *Name*, as this *great Work* of *thine*,
(With no small pains) the which thou makest to shine,
Renowned Elton ; loe in *these* I finde
Bellona's Casket opened, and the minde
That *Mars* himself enjoy'd, for what *thou* know'st
That others may obtain ; therefore let all
Who do desire to learn *Rules Mars* all
Peruse this *Compleat body*, where they'll finde
That which delights the *Fancy*, please the *Minde*
In *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Wheelings*, with their *Distance*
Both *Open*, *Close*, to us, *he* gives assistance
He doth direct new *Figures* for to rayse
(*Preceding times* knew not, but *these* our days)
New *Forms* of *Battal* shown, with each their *Firings*
With *Rules* to guide in *Onsets* and *Retirings* :
Thus have we *Elton's* skill here brought to light
Which none can it obscure, no, not dark night
Of *Envies* rage, can blur what he hath done,
But *he* shall shine as glorious as the *Sun*.

Thomas Walker Captain.

To my honoured Friend, Major
Richard Elton.

Your Book needs not my *Plaudit*, it to sell,
It is enough if but your name it tell :
Who sees its Front, and doth it understand,
Must needs condemn himself or prayse your hand.
More could I say and would, but more to say
Were to light candles to the Sun-shine day :
For such as read and do it not advance
Of Envy do it or of Ignorance.

John Brett Captain.

*To the Authour his much valued Friend,
Major Richard Elton.*

L Et them that undertake to prayse a book,
Nor on the Title, but the matter look,
To ground their judgment on: For to commend
The Work, because th' Author is our Friend
Is an obsequious flattery, and doth yield
Some favour of the Court, none of the Field
From depth of knowledge, then, we ought to rayse
The high expressions of deserved prayse
But then, with equall knowledge if we can
Judge and declare the merits of a man,
The envious will say, when we have shown
The Authors worth, we publike our own:
But let those *Moms* talk. This work of yours
(Heroick *ELTON*) all assaults endures,
And all convinceth of Detractions part;
And shortly will the Ignorant convert;
And make them Souldiers too: so sweet and plain
Your *Demonstrations* are that they will gain
Myriads of men now to bear *arms*, that bore
Nothing but onely shapes of men before
Of Cock-braind *Militasters* store there are
That do pretend skill in the book of War;
Can Military Discipline express
In words of art, and windy flourishies;
Big looks and language lowder than the *Drum*:
As knowing more than your *Compendium*,
When silly Vapours, they nere read or saw
More than the Statutes of the Martiall Law
Such, now, must cast the feathers of their pride;
And here (if docible) be edified
Here's the true art of *Arms*. *Jehovah* grant
That, as 'tis like we shall no Souldiers want
The Practise of it onely may extend
To settle Right and Peace. That's Wars true end.

Abraham Stanion Captain.

To

To the worthy Authour of the Art Military.

T'Was said of old, that *arms* do silence *Laws*
And learning, by their rude illiterate *aws*:
The Proverb lyes, for courting in one sheet,
The Souldier and the Scholler here do meet;
The Sword and Pen: *Mars* doe's himself commense
Doctor of *War*; and doe's not more incense,
Then teach to fight; and by his learned *Bands*
An *Areopagus* midst of *Athens* stands;
And by a new found happy union
Parnassus, and the *Campaigne* are made one,
Whence quickly tutor'd from that sacred Rise:
The Souldier may descend and exercise.
Till now we did but butcher Victories,
And were but sloven Deaths-men; whil'st our eyes
Were wanting to our hands, we fell upon
A Miscellaneous Execution:
So that it griev'd the slain, that they must die
Without a method, and disorderly:
But now we have attain'd the handsome skill,
By order, method, and by rule to kill;
From which we owe the beauties of our death,
The features of our wounds to you, whose breath
Formed into this, your polemick word:
Makes you th' *Amanuensis* of the Sword.
And as when *Cadmus* Serpents teeth did sow,
A crop of armed men from thence did grow:
So from this learned issue of your brains
We may behold to spring; well order'd *Trains*
Of exact *Myrmidans*: and as at the found
Of *Orpheus* harp, all the unweildy found
Of *Lions*, *Bears*, and *Tygers*, learn't to meet
Well order'd measures with obedient feet;
Such is your book, at whose most sober word
The hand, the foot, the Musket, Pike, and sword:
Those livelesse lumps of steel, do act, and use
Obediently the Motions you infuse.
We read the *Persian* chivalry was such,
As teaches Elephants in a slender touch;
Of brideling art, most orderly to storm
Liking their strength: like bears into a form.
So the rude multitude, whose strength would be
A ruine to themselves, through Anarchy,
Bad Masters, but good servants are made good
By you, most regularly to let blood.
Order's the soul of things: then souldiers are
The body; but your book the soul of *War*.
Mars thus conjoynd with *Phaebus* (some may fear)
(Sans Thunderbolts) will transcend *Jupiter*.

Hor. mil. Meng.

Sam. Jervis Captain.

To my Ingenious Friend, Major
RICHARD ELTON.

Rich fems best prayse Themselves; 'tis understood
The Bush is useles where the Wine is good.
How do they erre, who with their looser Rime
Prophane thy Prose, and with the adulterate Lime
Of wit erect, some Parapet, or Port
To raise their Fancie equall to Thy Fort.
This Crime's collaterall mine; who strive to raise
And mix my Ivy with thy glorious Bays
Whose Branches in thy learned Book do spread
Themselves in Garlands to impale Thine Head.
How durst I then draw one Excentrique Line
Or thus Intrench upon this Work of Thine?
This Work of Thine; whose well composed Page
Shall strike amazement in the amulous Age
Such as their Captive judgements shall surprize
And force their eares do Homage to their eyes.
Imperious Style! which can at once advance
Our towring thoughts; and strike them in a Trance.
How happily hast Thou Improv'd thy Parts
Who art Proficient both in Arms and Arts!
Mars and Minerva who are counted two
Divided essences both joyn in You,
Whiles Practick and the Theorick Arts appear
In You their Center, and their proper Sphear.
But stay! Thy Prayse (Dear Friend) needs heer no more
Than Gold in Peru, or a Map on shore.
They that would know thee better, let us look
Upon these Leaves, and read Thee in Thy Book.

William Short Captain.

To

To his ever honoured Friend Major
TO RICHARD ELTON

Many have fanci'd to themselves, that this
Is the Worlds leaden age, and think it is
Far worse with all mens wits, then with the time
That they live in, but clearly from this crime
Thou hast redeem'd us, no man ever writ
Better of Marciall Discipline, for it
Thou rightly hast display'd, in th' Compleat Body
Of th' famous and renown'd Art Military.
Here did I finde, that which did please me better,
Then could another Indie's, every letter
To me's an Orient Pearl, and all thy words
Are silver Mines, in short thy book affords
So vast a treasure, that I dare fore-tell
It will long flourish without parallel.
The postures of the Pike and Musket, thou
Dost teach with their conformities, and how
The dignities of Ranks and Files, must be
Stated, in giving each his due, degree
Of Martiall Honour, with their sev'ral Motion
As Facings, Doublings, Wheelings, and quaint Notions
Of Firings, who ever yet did see
Such Motions (ELTON) as are done by thee
It caus'd my admiration when I found,
How thy luxuriant wit, disdain'd bound,
Did vary it's Experiments, upon
A single File, hence I went viewing on
To thy twelve Exercises, thy setting forth
The drawing up of Reg'ts, (a thing of worth
Neer to be rightly valu'd) forming Brigades,
Placing artillery, with other aides
To Martiall Discipline, but heer's too much
To out-vie all our ancients had but such
Brave rules been taught Achilles, sure less far
Then twice five years had end'd the Trojan War.

William Johnson Captain.

To

To his much honored and ever renowned Friend
Richard Elton, Serjeant Major.

Anagram { *RICHARDUS ELTON,*
I HELD ARTS CROWN.

Distich. { *To honour Art, and eke my Name renown,*
Mars condescends to say, I held Arts Crown.
Acrostichon.

R ich in thy *Art*, brave *ELTON*, lo thy *Fame*
I s crown'd above to eternize thy *Name* :
C an this thy *Work* be carped at? let none
H ave such a Thought ; (tis *Momus* carps alone :)
A way, away, let *Silence* be the word,
R ead, ere thou censure; this *Work* doth afford
D elight and *Skill* even to the knowingst men,
U nto the weaker sort, lo here thy *Pen*
S uch *Rubis* lays down, in *Battail*, and *Retreat*,
E ach one is made (as this thy work) compleat.
L eave then thy *Work*, with us; now thou hast done :
T he *Fame* thereof doth crown thee *Mars* his Son.
O f all that merit worth, or *Art* would gain,
N one holds the *Crown*, but *Elton*, by his pain.

John Walker Lieutenant.

To his much honor'd friend Serjeant Major *Richard Elton*.

I F Authors ancient, and of modern days,
I justly by us deserved have much praise,
Who of the *Military art* have writ ;
And for to honour them it was thought fit.
Then much more thou (brave *Elton*) who hast shewn,
Such skill in these thy labours; as yet none
E're saw before : for hereby men may learn,
A skilfull *Artist*, rightly to discern :
Here thou hast taught us how to use alike,
The Postures of the *Musket* and the *Pike* :
How every man his place may truly know,
And how of Files a Body great doth grow.
But why do I endeavour for to show,
Thy worth, my pen to do it is too slow :
I only can admire thee, and will leave it,
To some brave *English Homer*'s pens to do it.
Then *Fame* by them, thy glory loude shall raise,
And trumpet out thy just deserved praise,
That so the World, may at no time forget,
How by thy worth thou hast advantag'd it.

Richard Hobby.

On the COMPLEAT BODY of the ART MILITARY: compos'd
by my Good Friend Major RICHARD ELLON.

I Was no Poet born; nor ere could *meant*
the *Muses* sacred *Hill*; or reach their *Fount*,
o' *Swamp* thereof: and come a Poet thence.
Prithce, my *Genius* then, tell me, from whence
is it, I have this my new whiffing *Gale*
for *Memoirs*? it is hence? men fail
seldome of such a *Trade-Wind*, when they passe
the Point of *Mars*: is, or *Bellona's* place?
Or, can't one tho he would, enight so nigh
(*) *Marshall Verses*, but he shall *versifie*?

The Influence came from that *pure breath* that bid
thee write; and, from the fertile *blasts* that did
blow from that *Quarter* of the World, where those
of *Good Deserts*, are *Honour'd*, not with *Prose*:
but *measur'd*, *scann'd lines*; and, *Voices* that
cantune it, and their *Numbers* *modulate*.
Wherein is held a *crime*, to talk about
Meriting Works, and not to *Rhyme-it-out*.
'Tis thence, Go forward now, and *Wamble forth*
this *Book's* rich *Contents*: and therein is 's worth.

The *Pike's*, and *Musket's Postures*, with their (b) *Use*:
and necessary *Motions* which conduce
as *Media's*: to attain them: Those *Ways* best,
most ready, safe, short, easie, comeliest.
(c) The *Pikes*, and *Muskettiers* conformity
in *Posturing*. *Places* of *Dignity*,
ordained so, that all the *parts* are deck'd
with men of *equall worth*, and *like respect*.
And to *ex-body* them; the *joyning Files*
Rank-wise, (effecting *Ranks*) the *Band* compiles.

Due Distances, whereby just *PARALLEL*
Rank keeps to *Rank*, and *File* to *File*: as well
when they do *Open*, *Close*, *Move*; as when they *Stand*,
and save their *Even-ning*, *Straightning Post-command*.
Faceings no more, nor fewer than you see
th' *in-ner*, and *out-ter Sides*, and *Angles* be-
Lengthning, or *Strengthening Doubling Files*, or *Ranks*;
Battell, *Front*, *Rear*, *both*; one, or both the *Flanks*.
(d) *Daunce-like Counter-Marches Wheelings* (e) *precise*.
Furings that *SERVE* to *MASTER* *Enemies*.

Practice on Single Files: and *bodyed*
four sev'ral Numbers, each is three times *Led*.
The *Drawing-up*, and *Exercising* due
to *Regiments*; The *Forming Brigades* too,
and *Armies*: *Placing* their *Artillery*.
Duties of all the *Private Souldiery*,
and *Officers* to *Colonels*. The *Charge*
of *Military Watches*: and, their large
Commission. Then, to *order Companies*,
and *Regiments* at *Funerall Obsequies*.

These all are but the *Heads* (of such things, as
our *Major ELLON* in his *Volume*, has
Completely Bodied:) sent to *ex-viva*
(like *Writs* of *Chear*) a *Souldiers* appetite,
to a large *Banquet*; where, thou maist suffice
thy greatest *Lust* after such *Exercise*:
Where all the *Flowers* of other *Gardens*, *Fields*,
and *Meadows*, are; and, that whereby it yields
a *Perfect Florilegium* of the *Art*
unto our view, *He doth the Rest impart*.

Seldom have *Archetypes* of this Nature been
perused by any, but who have been impuls'd
to put to their *Approbation*, or *Commendatory*
Verses. Witnesse the *Books* of *Sir Thomas Kel-*
ly, *ward*, *Barry*, and not a few more.

(a) *Files* call'd by *Grecians*, *Σχιζαι*; by *Romans*,
Vexillones: Possibly from an old fashion of
writing the *Words* of a *File* (not to the
side of but) *under* one another.

(b) How much, concerning the right *Handling*
& true *Use* of (that famously successful engine
for *Arrows*) the *Bow*, was laid-down in that
Job, spoken of *2 Sam. 11. 18*, I ken
not. But, *Bows* and *Arrows* would be of speci-
all Service in the hands of our meely *defensive*
Picquiers. For by these *Feathery* weapons they
might annoy those, who by *fiery* ones (too oft
directing destructive *Bullets* against subjective
Stand's) have shamefully had low abundance
of *Proper-ness*. And I remember, I have read
(in the *Book* call'd *London's Artillery*) of some
fights, where *Archers* have put *Gun-men* to flight.
(c) A Metonymy so generally approved, that the
Name *Picquiers* (or, *Pike-men*) is rarely heard
given to them: though those who carry *Mus-*
quets, are commonly call'd *Mousquetiers*.

I speak freely. To bid the *Company*, after
every *Motion*, to *even Ranks*, and *straighten*
Files, speaks no less than the *Commander*
extream fond: Or, them very *whorward*. Me
thinks, they are *Shaming-words*.

(d) We read of (*Πύρρῳ ὁππῶστερ*, *Saltatio*
Pyrrobica) A *Dance* in order of *Battell*, taught
by *Pyrros* to his *Souldiers* (*Plin. lib. 2. cap. 36.*)
Without doubt the *Motions* were not unlike
those at the *Caran*, *Laconic*, *Macedonian* *Evo-*
lutions. Yet, I can't but think that in those days
they were more nimble at them than in these;
and did 'em *Galliard-like*, frolickly. From the
Noise (which *durant* motions, their *Armes*
made;) the *Dance* was epithetized *Bellie-epa*.

(e) *Wheelings* are the most *Nice* *Motions* of all;
and (if they may be so express'd) *Sollicitous*
Co-agitations. That *Angular-man* who is at the
Hinge of the *Motion*, moving so much slower
than the other (*Corner*) end of the same *Rank*
(to which, he ever-and-again casts an eye) he
hath a larger compass to fetch, than he; The
intermediat men being in like manner obse-
quious; And the *Followers* (in *Files*) accurately
pacing after their *Leaders*.



THE COMPLEAT BODY OF THE ART MILITARY:

The First Book.

CHAP. I.

A discourse of the Postures, and the handling of Arms.



That will be a compleat Souldier, must first begin to learn the use of his *Arms*, laying that down in his thoughts for his first foundation. But this hath beene the neglect of many in our times, who have strived to know high thoughts in the *Art Military*, before they can well performe their *Postures*. Therefore, my advice shall be unto all such that desire to thrive in this Art, that they will not *soar* too high; but first learn the *A, B, C*, thereof, after which they may proceed by degrees to pronounce to the Souldier with boldnesse their proficiencie therein. He therefore that with safety, ease, and delight desireth to handle his *Arms*, must set times apart frequently to practise himselfe therein. And here I cannot but much blame the Officers of our *Trained Bands in London*, of two great neglects: the first, in making men *File-leaders* either out of respect, or favour they bear unto them; or else because one man hath a better *Buz-coat* than another: I speake not this to encourage any man to come slovenly habited when he shall march forth with his *Captain*, but rather advise all Souldiers to fit themselves with the best array they can, and could wish all the *Serjeants* in drawing up their *Files*, to pitch upon such Gentlemen to be *File-leaders*, as may take charge of his *File*, and shall be able, willing, and ready upon all convenient times, to instruct and teach his *File* in all their *Postures*, and neat handling of their *Arms*, which if carefully observed, they would reap the benefit of much ease to themselves and the private Souldiers: readinesse in the performance of the *Postures* would much redound to the honour of the Captain that shall lead them. But for the farther satisfaction of the ingenious Souldier that shall enquire what *Posture* is, I shall briefly resolve them thus.

Posture, as I conceive, is a *garbe* or *figure* that a man stands in, in the handling of his *Arms*; which he useth for the better grace and becoming of them. What *Posture* is.

There are severall motions belonging to each *Posture*, which some call *Postures*, but they much deceive themselves, as shall appear clearly unto them (by the survey) as they shall be set down in order. And first, we will begin to set down the *Postures* of the *Pike*.

CHAP. II.

Severall reasons why the Pike is the more honourable Arms.

First I shall begin to set down the *postures* of the *Pike*, before the *postures* of the *Musket*, for these reasons following, as conceiving: First, They are the more honourable *Arms*, in respect the *Colours* flying upon the head of them, and upon the drawing up of the Company there is the most properest place for the *Captain* to be, either upon a *Stand* or upon a *March*, provided he have ground sufficient to *March* them all abreast. If upon a *Stand* the *Captain* shall have occasion to engage against an *Enemy*, thither his *Officers* may repair unto him upon the head of the *Pikes*, there to receive directions. And if the *Captain* shall cause the *Serjeants* to draw off part or all the *Muskettiers* from the *Body of Pikes* to fire against the *enemy*, the *Gentlemen* of the *Pikes* in the mean time stands undauntedly to undergoe all the cruell shot of the *Cannon* from the contrary part for to preserve their *Colours*, who are likewise a place of *Rendezvous* for the *Muskettiers* to repair unto when they shall retreat from fight. Farther, it hath been the ambition of many *Gentlemen*, both in *Holland*, *France*, and in these our late unhappy Wars in *England*, to trail *Pikes* with severall *Commanders* whom they shall thinke fit. And lastly, to conclude all, that the *Pike* is the more honourable *Arms*, it is so in respect of its antiquity, for there hath been the use of the *Pike* and *Spear*, many hundred years before there was any knowledge of the *Musket*, as in many *Histories* you shall finde. And so for present, I wil conclude this discourse of the *Pike*, desiring the *Muskettiers* to have a favourable censure of me: for I intend not by it to perswade all *Souldiers* to the handling of the *Pike*, and none to be *Muskettiers*, for that cannot be, I should rather advise all *Captains* that have occasion to raise their *Companies* to have two thirds of *Muskettiers*, and but one of *Pikes*: that is to say, if they should have 18 *Files*, to cause twelve of them to carry *Muskets*, and the other six *Files Pikes*. And in my judgement they shall performe the better service unto any *Nation* where they shall be employ'd; and I shall farther desire the *Souldiers* (especially those that be of low stature) to handle and take delight in the use of the *Musket*; for it is an exceeding great honour to him so to handle his *Musket*, as that he doth it with ease and in a comely manner, and he that shall become expert therein; I have often observed this commendation to follow him, by the report of others; Such a one is a good *Muskettier*, and an able *Souldier*; concluding thereby, he that will take the pains to be a good *Muskettier* certainly cannot be idle, but hath gained something more to make him capable of such praise. To conclude, I shall desire the *Gentlemen* of the *Pikes*, and the *Gentlemen* of the *Muskettiers* to goe hand in hand in love like dear brothers, and neither of them to envie each other, and in so doing, God will give a blessing to all their undertakings. But now, fearing I have dwelt too long upon this discourse of the *Arms*, I shall next proceed to set down, first the *postures* of the *Pike*, then the *postures* of the *Musket*, with all the words of command tending to their *Motions*, after collect them in order in a brief way, and then set forth unto you the equality of number that the one *Arms* hath with the other, in the *postures* as followeth.

CHAP. III.

The Postures of the Pike.

THE *Pike* lying on the ground, the first word of command will be, stand to your *Arms*.

Handle your *Pike* } to your { Open Order,
Raise up your *Pike* } Close Order.

Charge with the But end of the *Pike*, at the inside of the right foot, your *Pike* in the left hand, drawing your *Sword* over your left arm.

Charge to the { Front } Flank, { Order your *Pikes*, and put
 { Right } up your *Swords*.
 { Left }
 { Reer }

This way of charging to the *Horse*, I have set down, as being practised sometimes amongst us

us in our private meetings, but I conceive it to be of little use to receive a desperate charge of the *Horse*, for by these charges the Souldiers are in so lame and weake a *posture*, that the *Horse* cannot choose if they come on with a full *career*, but beare the *Pikes* and *Pike-men* down to the ground: Therefore in my opinion the best way of opposing the *Horse charge* is that which we learned of our ever honoured *Captain, Major Henry Toller*, in the *Military Garden*; which was, *Files* closing to the midst to their *closest Order*, insomuch that there was not above half a foot *intervall* of ground between *File* and *File*, the *Pikes* *Porting*, and after closing their *Ranks* forwards so close, that they locked themselves one within another, and then charged on. Which in my judgement is so secure a way from *routing*, that it is impossible for any Body of *Horse* to enter therein: and farther, to my best remembrance, I never could meet with any Souldier that hath been abroad upon any service that ever saw any charging of the *Pikes* at the *Foot*, therefore I will further proceed.

From { Advance, }
Shoulder, }
Port, } Your { Order as you
Order { Comport, } Pike. } were.
Trail, }

From your Or- { Front, }
der charge to the { Right, } Order as you
{ Left, } were.
{ Reere, }

Advance { Shoulder }
your { Port } Your { Advance as
Pike. { Comport } Pike. } you were.
{ Cheek }
{ Trail }

From your Advance { Front, }
charge to the { Right, } Advance as
{ Left, } you were.
{ Reer, }

Shoul- { Port }
der { Comport } Your { Shoulder as
your { Cheek } Pike, } you were.
Pike. { Trail }

From the Shoulder { Front, }
charge to the { Right, } Shoulder as
{ Left, } you were.
{ Reere, }

Port your Pikes { Cheek } { Comport
Comport your { Trail } your } as you
Pikes, } Pikes } were

From the Comport { Front, }
Charge to the { Right, } Comport as
{ Left, } you were.
{ Reer, }

Check your { Trail your } Check as you
Pikes. { Pikes, } were.

From the Check { Front, }
charge to the { Right, } Check as you
{ Left, } were.
{ Reer, }

Trail your Pikes { Front, }
from your Trail { Right, } Trail as you
charge to the { Left, } were.
{ Reer, }

{ Order your Pikes, }
{ Lay down your Pikes. }

Here is to be observed by this *Method* an endeavouring to performe all the *postures* of the *Pike*, from each particular *posture*, only shortning it by degrees, leaving out what was before commanded untill we come unto the *Trail*. Yet notwithstanding I spared not the charges, but have shewn them from every *posture*, in their due order. Next followeth the *postures* of the *Musket*, wherein, in answerableness to the *Pike*, I shall lay them down in full, and afterwards contract them in a shorter way.

CHAP. IV.

The Postures of the Musket.

THE *Musket* lying on the ground, the first word of command will be, as to the *Pike*.

Stand to your Arms,	{	Take up your Rest,
Take up your Bandslayers,		Put the string of your Rest about
Put on your Bandslayers.		your left wrist.
Take up your Match,	{	Take up your Musket,
Place your Match,		Rest your Musket.

Here the Souldier may perform the *Saluting Posture*, if he shall finde any occasion so to doe, for the honouring of his friend, or any Gentleman of worth.

{ Poysse your *Musket*,
 { Shoulder your *Musket*,
 { Un-shoulder your *Musket* and *Poyse*,
 { Joyne your *Rest* to the outside of your *Musket*.

{ Open
 { Cleere
 { Prime
 { Shut } your pan.

{ Cast off your loose *Corns*,
 { Blow off your loose *corns*, and bring about
 { your *Musket* to the left side.

{ Trail your *Rest*,
 { Ballance your *Musket* in your left hand.

{ Finde out your *Charge*,
 { Open your *Charge*,
 { Charge with powder.

{ Draw forth your *Scouring-stick*,
 { Turn and shorten him to an *Inch*.

Charge with *Bullet*.

{ Put your *Scouring-stick* into your *Musket*
 { Ram home your *Charge*.

{ Withdraw your *Scouring-stick*,
 { Turn, and shorten him to a *handsfull*,
 { Return your *Scouring-stick*.

{ Bring forward your *Musket* and *Rest*,
 { Poysse your *Musket* & recover your *Rest*.
 { Joyn your *Rest* to the outside of your *Musket*.

{ Draw forth your *Match*,
 { Blow your *Cole*.

{ Cock } Your *Match*.
 { Fit }

{ Guard your *Pan*,
 { Blow the *ashes* from your *Cole*.

{ Open your *Pan*,
 { Present upon your *Rest*,
 { Give fire brest high.

{ Dismount your *Musket*, joyning the *Rest*
 { to the outside of your *Musket*.
 { Un-cock, and return your *Match*.

{ Cleere your *Pan*,
 { Shut your *Pan*.

{ Poysse your *Musket*,
 { Rest your *Musket*.

{ Take your *Musket* off the *Rest*, and set
 { the *Butt* end to the ground,
 { Lay down your *Musket*,
 { Lay down your *Match*.

{ Take your *Rest* into your right hand,
 { cleering the string from your left
 { wrist,
 { Lay down your *Rest*.

{ Take off your *Bandiliers*.
 { Lay down your *Bandiliers*.

Here endeth the *Postures* of the *Musket*, from the taking of them up from the ground, to make ready, and the proceeding in them to the laying of them down again. Now if the Souldier will take his *Rest* into his right hand, for to be a support and help to him in his march, he must observe the following words of command.

{ Lay your right hand upon the *Butt* end of your *Musket*,
 { Lay your left arme over your *Musket*.

{ Shift your *match* between the fingers of your right hand,
 { Take your *Rest* into your right hand, cleering the string from your left wrist.

{ Return your *match*, and take your *Rest* into your right hand, 'twill cause
 { you to be in a fit capacity for to march.

The *Musket* being shouldered, you may proceed in these words of command, to recover the *Rest* into the right hand.

CHAP. V.

The *Postures* and *charges* of the *Pike*, to be performed in a shorter way, all things acted in order, and nothing done twice.

THE *Pike* lying on the ground, the first word of Command will be,

{ Stand to your Arms.

Raife up your *Pikes* } to your { Open Order,
 } Order,
 } close Order.
 From your close Order { Front
 charge to the Horfe. { Right
 } Left
 } Reer } Recover your *Pikes*, and put up your *Swords*,
 Advance } your *Pikes*, { Charge to the Front.
 Port }
 Shoulder your *Pikes*, { Charge to the right.
 Comport your *Pikes*, { Charge to the left.
 Cheeke } your *Pikes*, { Charge to the Reer.
 Trail }

After lay the narrow end of the *Pike* to the ground, face about to the left to your first Front, and move forward with the *Butt end* of your *Pike* on your right side in your *Funnyall Posture*. After face about to the right, raise up your *Pike*, face then again to your first Front, you may lay down the *Pike* to the ground and march from your *Arms*, having ended all the *Postures* and *Charges* in their due courses. And here Fellow Souldier, whoever thou art, thou maist perceive that there are no more then eight *Postures* of the *Pike*, and four *Charges*, that is to say, to the Front, Reer, and both Flanks. There are some would fain have another *Posture* added to these, which they call the *Lazie Posture*, which sometimes I have perceived upon a stand, that then the *Pike-man* lets slip his *Pike* from the shoulder, untill the *Butt end* rest upon the ground, then laying his right arme over it, he stands in an il-favour'd *lazie way*. Such *Postures* as these are not fit to be ranged among the former; but rather to be condemned, in regard the Souldier will be apt enough to finde out such *Postures* as these of himselfe, if not prevented by the discretion of the carefull Officers; for upon a stand the Souldiers properest *Posture* is to Order his *Pike*. And thus much in briefe concerning the *Postures* of the *Pike*.

CHAP. VI.

The Postures of the Musket collected in a briefe way.

According to my former promise I shall endeavour to give the best satisfaction I can to the *Muskettiers*, as well as to the *Pikes*, that there is an answerableness of number in the proper *Postures* of the *Musket* to them of the *Pike*: and they are eight (as I conceive) and may be proceeded on in order from the taking up, to the laying down of the *Musket*, and nothing acted twice: the words of command for the *Postures* followeth,

The *Musket* lying on the ground, the words of command will be as afore.

{ Stand to your *Arms*,
 { Handle your *Arms*.

Now you are to take notice that in taking up the *Bandsliers*, putting them on, taking up the *Rest*, putting the *string* about the left wrist, the taking up of the *Match* placing of it, the taking up of the *Musket*, these, or the like are no *Postures*, but motions to the first *Posture*. Therefore I will proceed upon them all in order as they lie, leaving out the words of command tending to the *Motions*.

- 1 Order your *Musket*,
- 2 R-4 your *Musket*,
- 3 Poyle your *Musket*,
- 4 Shoulder your *Musket*,
- 5 Ballance your *Musket* and *Rest* on the right with the *barrell* upwards.

- 6 Trail your *Rest*, and ballance your *Musket* on the left side with the *barrell* downwards,
- 7 Recover your *Musket*, and performe your *small Posture*.
- 8 End this *perform your Funerall Posture*.